

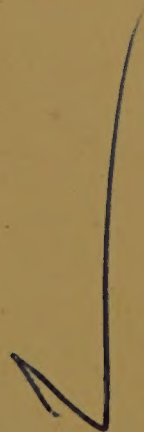
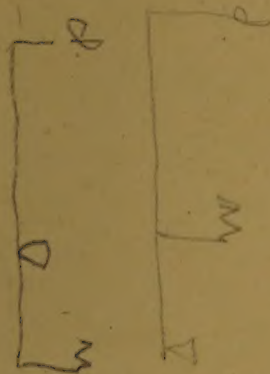
Shakespeare

Salvino

Salvino

p. 126

P. Campbell



66
1
2
1
1
2
4
1
3
2
5
3
4
7
2
2
3
8
13
15

Clarendon Press Series

EASY SELECTIONS
ADAPTED FROM XENOPHON

WITH A

VOCABULARY

NOTES AND MAP

BY

J. SURTEES PHILLPOTTS, B.C.L.

Head Master of Bedford School

Editor of 'Selections Adapted from Xenophon'

AND

C. S. JERRAM, M.A.

Late Scholar of Trinity College, Oxford

Joint Editor of the 'London Series of English Classics'

PRELIMINARY PART

SCENES FROM THE ANABASIS

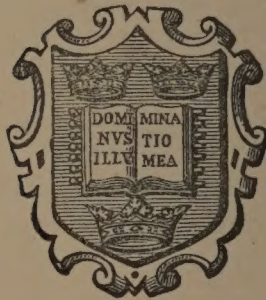
Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

MDCCCLXXXVIII

[*All rights reserved*]

London
HENRY FROWDE



OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS WAREHOUSE
AMEN CORNER, E.C.

PA4494

A25

1888 a

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE object of such adapted Selections as these has sometimes been misunderstood. It has been supposed that the aim is to save boys' thought; the real aim is the reverse. It is to get boys to think and to use their minds on the language at a stage when otherwise they would either have had their attention confined to Grammar or Delectus-work, or have had to struggle at translating authors whose style is really beyond them. Such a struggle does not, I believe, educate the boy or make him think. He is simply baffled and bewildered by having too many difficulties thrust on him at once, and either buys a word for word translation, or simply looks out the words without trying to connect them and discover a meaning. The essence of good teaching seems to me to lie in presenting to boys an infinite succession of problems carefully graduated according to the exact stage of their progress. Power is what we want; and the feeling of getting on, the feeling of doing something with one's knowledge, the pleasure of following a connected story—all this awakens interest, makes brain and heart work with eye and ear, intelligence with memory, and gives in fact that sense of power which is one of the chief sources of power itself.

These 'Easy Selections' are adapted for boys who are only just beginning Greek. They are somewhat graduated, so that the beginning is made still easier than the rest; in the first hundred lines there are no augmented tenses, in the first three hundred none which are not specially explained in the notes. All through, the words are, as far as possible, put in the order in which they should be taken; the sentences are very short, and there is a Vocabulary containing not only all the words, but all the more difficult forms of words used.

The whole is intended as a Preliminary Part to 'Selections

13920

Adapted from Xenophon¹, which has now reached a third edition. Since those 'Selections' were published I have been so much engaged with other work that I should never have been able to complete this Preliminary Part without the welcome assistance of Mr. Jerram, who I found had already prepared an edition of the Anabasis on his own account. At my suggestion he kindly gave up this for an 'Adapted' edition, to act as a First Greek Construing-book. Besides his knowledge of the Anabasis, he brought to the work the freshest acquaintance with the actual wants of boys beginning Greek, from his experience in directing the classical teaching of a large preparatory school. Though I am responsible for the plan of the book, the main burden of the work has fallen on his shoulders, and if these 'Easy Selections' should in any way meet the wants of teachers, I hope the credit will be given where it is due. We owe thanks to Mr. Beuttler for preparing the first draught of the Vocabulary.

J. S. PHILLPOTTS.

Jan. 1877.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THE principal change in the Second Edition is that the First Chapter has been made still easier than before. This improvement has been effected, not by altering the text (which might have caused inconvenience in schools where the former Edition was already in use), but by additions to the notes. The verb-forms are the great stumbling-block to beginners, and throughout the first 300 lines every such form likely to cause any difficulty has been 'parsed.' The aim of these Easy Selections is to enable a boy to

¹ If variety is desired, the 'Stories of Rhampsinitus and Marathon' (Rivington, 2nd ed. 1877) may be used as a bridge between the two.

begin construing at once, without the intervention of any Greek Reader or Delectus. At the request of the boys themselves the book was introduced into a form, where many had begun their Greek Grammar but two or three weeks previously; and the experiment was found thoroughly successful. Should it be thought that a reading-book is out of place at so early a stage, it must be remembered that by the time boys begin Greek, the chief difficulties of translation from a foreign language have been already mastered in Latin, if not in French as well. With Grammar and Vocabulary a boy can begin construing almost as soon as he knows the alphabet. The need of constant reference to the Accidence to help him in this task makes an intelligent boy look upon his Grammar as a friend rather than as a foe; whereas, if he learns paradigms alone for several weeks or months, he soon loses the interest of novelty in disgust at the dryness of the method. The standard of accuracy need not be lowered, but the required amount of accuracy may be achieved as completely with a more ready co-operation on the part of the learner. After all, we educate *non scholae sed vitae*; and if, as we profess, our chief aim is to develope intelligence, we cannot afford to dispense with the exercise of it at any stage.

The First Edition was not stereotyped, on purpose to leave room for alterations. Several minor additions are now introduced, and the whole has been most carefully revised and corrected. Should any errata still have escaped detection, the Editors will be greatly obliged to any one who will send a line to either of them.

J. S. PHILLPOTTS, GRAMMAR SCHOOL, BEDFORD.

C. S. JERRAM, WINDLESHAM, SURREY.

July, 1878.

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
SECT. I. The March towards Babylon	I
Notes	107
„ II. The Battle of Cunaxa and its Results	14
Notes	118
„ III. Beginning of the Retreat	20
Notes	121
„ IV. The March to Kurdistan	29
Notes	126
„ V. The March through Armenia	44
Notes	136
„ VI. Trapezus and Sinope	57
Notes	145
„ VII. Sinope to Chrysopolis	72
Notes	155
„ VIII. Concluding Scenes of the Retreat	84
Notes	164
Vocabulary	179
Grammatical Register	233
Map shewing the route of the Greeks.	

DATES OF GREEK AND PERSIAN HISTORY.

	B.C.
Cyrus the Great founds the Persian Empire	559
Subdues Croesus and Asiatic Greeks, and takes Babylon	546-538
Cambyses his son succeeds	529
Darius I (Hystaspes)	521
Ionian towns revolt from Persia	500
Sardis burnt by the Athenians	499
First Persian Invasion of Greece. Marathon	490
Xerxes succeeds to the throne	485
Second Persian Invasion. Salamis	480
[Athenian Ascendancy	480-430]
Artaxerxes I succeeds	465
Peloponnesian War begins	431
Darius II (Nothus) succeeds	424
Tissaphernes made Satrap of Asia Minor	413
Tissaphernes makes treaty with Sparta	411
Cyrus the Younger , son of Darius, supersedes Tissaphernes	407
Artaxerxes II (Mnemon) succeeds to the throne	405
Peloponnesian War ends. Athens taken by Lysander	404
Cyrus rebels against his brother Artaxerxes	401

EXPEDITION OF CYRUS.

Departure from Sardis	March 6th	401
Arrival at the Maeander	„ 9th	„
„ Celaenae	„ 20th	„
„ Caystri Pedion	May 1st	„
„ Tyriaeum	„ 8th	„
„ Tarsus	June 6th	„
„ Issus	„ 28th	„
„ Myriandrus	July 6th	„
Through the Arabian Desert	Aug. 8th—13th	„
Battle of Cunaxa	Sept. 7th	„

THE RETREAT.

		B.C.
The Greeks begin their Retreat	Sept. 8th	401
Truce made with the king	„ 10th	„
Arrival at Sittace	Oct. 11th	„
Murder of the five generals	„ 29th	„
They cross the mountains into Kurdistan	Nov. 20th	„
Enter Armenia	„ 29th	„
First fall of snow	Dec. 6th	„
In the Armenian villages	„ 18th—21st	„
Arrive at the Harpasus	Jan. 19th	400
First view of the sea	Feb. 1st	„
Arrive at Trapezus	„ 13th	„
„ Cotyora	April 13th	„
„ Sinope	June 24th	„
„ Heraclea	July 1st	„
„ Chrysopolis	Aug. 7th	„
The Greeks take service with Seuthes	Dec. 5th	„
They join Thibron, the Spartan general	March 5th	399

SUCCEEDING HISTORY.

Agesilaus is made king of Sparta	398
He defeats Tissaphernes at Sardis	395
Battle of Coronea	394
Peace of Antalcidas	387
Philip becomes King of Macedon	359
Philip prepares Greek expedition against Darius III (Codomannus) King of Persia, but dies. Alexander succeeds Philip	336
Battle of the Granicus	334
Defeat of Darius at Issus	333
Final defeat at Arbela. Alexander takes Babylon	330
Death of Darius	331
Persian Empire completely subjugated	328

SELECTIONS FROM XENOPHON.

CHAPTER I.

THE MARCH TOWARDS BABYLON.

The two brothers. Their father dies. Artaxerxes succeeds.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται παῖδες δύο, καὶ πρεσβύτερος μὲν ἐστὶν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κῦρος. Δαρείος δὲ ἀσθενῶν, καὶ ἤδη μέλλων θανεῖν, βούλεται ἀμφοτέρω τῷ παῖδε παρ-εῖναι. ὁ μὲν οὖν πρεσβύτερος πάρ-εστι. Δαρείος δὲ κελεύει τὸν Κῦρον ἀνα-βαίνειν 5 ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς ἐστὶ σατράπης. ὁ δ' οὖν Κῦρος ἀνα-βαίνει, ἔχων τριακοσίους ὀπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων. ἀνα-βαίνων δὲ λαμβάνει Τισσαφέρνην σὺν ἑαυτῷ ὡς φίλον. ἀνα-βὰς δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἔτι ἐστὶν ἐν τοῖς βασιλείοις, ὅτε ὁ μὲν Δαρείος τελευτᾷ Ἀρταξέρξης δὲ γίγνεται 10 βασιλεύς.

Cyrus is disgraced. He courts popularity, intending revolt.

Ἐπειτα Τισσαφέρνης δια-βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον, φάσκων τῷ Ἀρταξέρξει ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος ἐπι-βουλεύει αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ Ἀρταξέρξης πείθεται τε καὶ συλ-λαμβάνει Κῦρον καὶ

15 βούλεται μὲν ἀπο-κτεῖναι αὐτὸν, ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἐξ-αιτησαμένη
αὐτὸν ἀπο-πέμπει πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀπ-
έρχεται, καὶ ἤδη μισεῖ τὸν ἀδελφὸν, καὶ βουλεύεται ὅπως
βασιλεύσει αὐτ' ἐκείνου. καὶ Παρύσατις τε ἡ μήτηρ φιλεῖ
τὸν Κῦρον μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα Ἀρταξέρξην· καὶ
20 ὁ Κῦρος αὐτὸς χαρίζεται τοῖς Πέρσαις, ὅσοι ἀφ-ικνουῦνται
παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς αὐτὸν, ὥστε καὶ οὗτοι γίνονται μᾶλλον
ἐαυτῷ φίλοι ἢ βασιλεῖ. χαρίζεται δὲ καὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις
τοῖς παρ' ἐαυτῷ, ἵνα ὧσιν εὖνοι· καὶ ἐπι-μελεῖται αὐτῶν, ἵνα
ἔχωσιν ἐμπειρίαν τοῦ πολεμεῖν· καὶ ἀθροίζει στρατιώτας
25 τῶν Ἑλλήνων λάθρα, ὅπως λάβῃ βασιλέα ἀ-παρά-σκευον.

Cyrus collects officers and troops secretly.

Συλ-λέγει δὲ στράτευμα ἐν Χερρονήσῳ ὧδε. Κλέαρχός
ἐστι φυγὰς Λακεδαιμόνιος· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, γενόμενος φίλος
τούτῳ τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, παρ-έχει αὐτῷ πολλὰ χρήματα. ὁ δὲ
λαβὼν τὰ χρήματα συλ-λέγει στράτευμα, καὶ συλ-λέξας
30 πολεμεῖ τοῖς Θραξὶ βοηθῶν ταῖς πόλεσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
αὗται δὲ αἱ πόλεις παρ-έχουσιν αὐτῷ χρήματα εἰς τὴν τρο-
φήν τῶν στρατιωτῶν. τοῦτο δὲ τὸ στράτευμα τρέφεται
τῷ Κύρῳ λάθρα. ἔπειτα ὁ Κῦρος κελεύει Πρόξενον τὸν
Βοιώτιον καὶ ἄλλους συλ-λέγειν στρατιώτας, φάσκων ὅτι
35 βούλεται στρατεύεσθαι εἰς Πισίδας· οὗτοι γὰρ πολεμοῦσι
τῇ ἐαυτοῦ χώρα. καὶ οὗτοι ποιοῦσιν οὕτως.

Cyrus begins his march. Tissaphernes warns the king.

Κῦρος δὲ ἤδη βουλόμενος ἀνα-βαίνειν ἀθροίζει τό τε
βαρβαρικὸν καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα. καὶ κελεύει
τόν τε Κλέαρχον καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους, λαβόντας τὰ ἐαυτῶν
40 στρατεύματα, παρ-εῖναι αὐτῷ εἰς Σάρδεις. οὗτοι οὖν

ἀφ-ικνουῦνται. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα, καὶ φοβούμενος τὸ πλῆθος τῆς παρασκευῆς, πορεύεται πρὸς βασιλέα ταχὺ, ἔχων πεντακοσίους ἱππέας. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἀκούσας παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος ἀνα-βαίνει, καὶ αὐτὸς ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζεται. Κῦρος δὲ ἔχων τοῦτο τὸ 45 στράτευμα ἀνα-βαίνει ἀπὸ Σάρδεων, καὶ ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας ἐπὶ τὸν Μαίανδρον ποταμόν.

Menon and Clearchus join. A halt. A review.

Τούτου δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὸ εὐρὸς ἐστὶ δύο πλέθρα· γέφυρα δὲ ἔπ-εστι τῷ ποταμῷ ἐπι-κειμένα πλοίοις ἑπτὰ. καὶ διαβὰς τὸν ποταμόν ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας εἰς Κολοσσάς. 50 καὶ ἐνταῦθα μένει ἡμέρας ἑπτὰ· καὶ Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς πάρ-εστιν, ἔχων χιλίους ὀπλίτας καὶ πεντακοσίους πελταστὰς. ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Κῦρος ἐξ-ελαύνει εἰς Κελαινὰς, πόλιν τῆς Φρυγίας. ἐνταῦθά ἐστὶ βασιλεία Κύρῳ καὶ παράδεισος μέγας πλήρης ἀγρίων θηρίων, ἃ αὐτὸς θηρεύει ἀπὸ ἵππου, 55 ὅταν βούληται γυμνάσαι ἑαυτὸν τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος μένει τριάκοντα ἡμέρας· καὶ Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος φυγὰς πάρ-εστιν, ἔχων ὀπλίτας χιλίους καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ τοξότας. καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ποιεῖ ἐξέτασιν καὶ ἀριθμὸν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν τῷ παραδείσῳ. 60 καὶ γίνονται ὀπλίται μὲν μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ δις-χίλιοι.

Arrival of Cilician Queen. Another review.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει εἰς Κεραμῶν ἀγορὰν, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν εἰς Καῦστρον πέδιον, καὶ μένει ἡμέρας πέντε. ἐνταῦθα Ἐπύαξα ἡ γυνὴ τοῦ Κιλικῶν βασιλέως ἀφ-ικνεῖται παρὰ 65 Κῦρον· καὶ δίδωσι Κύρῳ χρήματα πολλά. ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει εἰς Τυριαῖον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἡ Κίλισσα δεῖται

Κύρου ἐπι-δείξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ· ὁ δὲ αὖθις ποιεῖται
 ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ.
 70 κελεύει δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ταχθῆναι οὕτως, ὥς εἰώθασι
 τάττεσθαι εἰς μάχην. τάττονται οὖν ἐπὶ τεττάρων· καὶ
 Μένων μὲν ἔχει τὸ δέξιον κέρας, Κλέαρχος δὲ τὸ εὐώνυ-
 μον, οἱ δ' ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔχουσι τὸ μέσον.

Review. Manœuvres. Orders to charge.

Ὁ δὲ Κύρος θεωρεῖ πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς βαρβάρους· οἱ
 75 δὲ παρ-ελαύνουσι τεταγμένοι κατὰ τάξεις· εἴτα δὲ θεωρεῖ
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας, αὐτὸς παρ-ελαύνων ἐφ' ἄρματος, καὶ ἡ
 Κίλισσα ἐφ' ἄρμαμάξης. πάντες δὲ ἔχουσι κρανὴ χαλκᾷ
 καὶ χιτῶνας φοινικίους καὶ κυνημίδας καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας ἐκ-
 κεκαλυμμένας· παρ-ελαύνει δὲ πάντας, ἔπειτα δὲ στήσας
 80 τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, πέμπει τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ
 τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων. καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς προ-
 βαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ὅλην τὴν φάλαγγα ἐπ-ιέναι. οἱ
 δὲ λέγουσι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἤδη ἡ σάλπιγξ
 σημαίνει, οἱ δὲ προ-βαλλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπ-έρχονται.

The mock-charge terrifies the barbarians.

85 Ἐκ δὲ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται, προ-ιόντες θᾶπτον σὺν
 κραυγῇ, χωροῦσι δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς· πολὺς δὲ φόβος
 γίγνεται τοῖς βαρβάροις. καὶ ἡ τε Κίλισσα φεύγει ἐκ τῆς
 ἄρμαμάξης, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς φεύγουσι κατα-λιπόντες τὰ
 ὄνια· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες σὺν γέλῳτι ἔρχονται ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς.
 90 ἡ δὲ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ
 στρατεύματος θαυμάζει. Κύρος δὲ ἤδεται ἰδὼν τοὺς Ἕλ-
 ληνas οὕτω ῥαδίως φοβῆσαι τοὺς βαρβάρους. Ἐντεῦθεν
 ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμοὺς πολλοὺς εἰς Ταρσοὺς τῆς Κιλικίας,
 καὶ μένει ἡμέρας εἴκοσιν.

*The army refuses to proceed. Clearchus holds a meeting
with his men.*

Ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκ ἐθέλουσιν ἰέναι πρόσω· ἥδη 95
γὰρ νομίζουσι τὸν στόλον εἶναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα. πρῶτος δὲ
Κλέαρχος βιάζεται τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας ἰέναι· οἱ δὲ
βάλλουσιν αὐτὸν λίθοις, ὥστε οὐ δύναται προ-ἰέναι. ὁ δ'
οὖν Κλέαρχος συν-άγει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας· καὶ πρῶ-
τον μὲν δακρύει πολὺν χρόνον· οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες θαυμάζουσιν 100
τε καὶ σιωπῶσιν. εἶτα δὲ λέγει τοιάδε·

*Speech of Clearchus. i. 'You compel me to choose between
betraying the cause of Cyrus and deserting you.'*

“ Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι ἄχθομαι ἐπὶ
τοῖς παρ-οὔσι πράγμασι. Κῦρος γὰρ ἐγένετο ξένος ἐμοὶ,
καὶ ἐτίμησέ με φεύγοντα ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος, καὶ ἔδωκέ μοι
πολλὰ χρήματα. ἐγὼ δὲ λαβὼν ταῦτα ἑδαπάνων οὐκ εἰς 105
ἑμαυτὸν ἀλλ' εἰς ὑμᾶς. καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπολέμησα πρὸς
τοὺς Θρᾷκας, καὶ ὠφέλουν τοὺς Ἑλληνας μεθ' ὑμῶν.
ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει με, τότε λαβὼν ὑμᾶς ἐπορευόμην,
ἵνα ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀντὶ τῶν πρὸς ἐμὲ εὐεργεσιῶν. ἐπεὶ
δὲ ὑμεῖς νῦν οὐ βούλεσθε συμ-πορεύεσθαι μοι, ἀνάγκη μοί 110
ἔστιν ἢ προ-δόντι ὑμᾶς χρῆσθαι τῇ Κύρου φιλίᾳ, ἢ προ-
δόντι αὐτὸν ἀπ-ιέναι μεθ' ὑμῶν.”

ii. *'I choose the former alternative.'*

“ Εἰ μὲν δὴ δίκαια ποιήσω, οὐκ οἶδα· ἀμφοῖν δὲ
φίλοιν ὄντων, αἰρήσομαι οὐ Κῦρον ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς· καὶ, ἐπεὶ
ὑμεῖς οὐ θέλετε ἔπεσθαι ἐμοὶ, ἐγὼ ἔψομαι σὺν ὑμῖν. 115
νομίζω γὰρ ὑμᾶς εἶναί μοι καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ
συμμάχους· καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν οἶομαι ἂν εἶναι τίμιος, ὅπου

ἀν ᾧ· ἄνευ δὲ ὑμῶν οὐκ ἂν δυναίμην οὔτε ὠφελῆσαι φίλον,
οὔτε ἀλέξασθαι ἐχθρόν. ἴστε οὖν ἐμὲ ἰόντα, ὅποι ἀν καὶ
120 ὑμεῖς ἦτε.” ταῦτα εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες
ταῦτα ἐπ-ήνεσαν αὐτόν· παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος
πλείους ἢ δις-χίλιοι λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα ἐστρατοπεδεύ-
σαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ.

*Clearchus pretends to break with Cyrus. Second address to
the soldiers. i. ‘Cyrus is justly angry with us all.’*

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος μετ-επέμπετο τὸν Κλεάρχον· ὁ δὲ οὐκ
125 ἤθελεν ἰέναι, πέμπων δὲ αὐτῷ ἄγγελον ἔλεγε θαρρεῖν περὶ
τούτων· ἐκέλευε δὲ τὸν Κῦρον μετα-πέμπεσθαι αὐτὸν
δεύτερον· Κύρου δὲ μετα-πεμψαμένου, πάλιν οὐκ ἤθελεν
ἰέναι. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συν-αγαγὼν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἔλεξε
τοιάδε· “Νῦν οὖν, ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, οὔτε ἡμεῖς ἔτι
130 ἐσμὲν στρατιῶται τοῦ Κύρου, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι μισθοδότης
ἐστὶν ἡμῖν. ὅτι δὲ νομίζει ἑαυτὸν ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑφ’ ἡμῶν εὖ
οἶδα· ὥστε οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐλθεῖν παρ’ αὐτόν, καίπερ μετα-
πεμπόμενόν με. αἰσχύνομαί τε γὰρ ὅτι ἔψευσμαι αὐτόν,
καὶ δέδοικα μὴ διὰ τοῦτο ἐπι-θῇ μοι δίκην, ὅτι νομίζει
135 ἡδικῆσθαι ὑπ’ ἐμοῦ.

*ii. ‘We are therefore in an awkward position. What is
to be done?’*

Ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ οὐκ εἶναι καιρὸν ἡμῖν καθ-εύδειν, ἀλλὰ
βουλευέσθαι ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν ἤδη. καὶ ἕως τε μένομεν
ἐνθάδε, δεῖ ἡμᾶς σκέψασθαι ὅπως ἀσφαλέστατα μένωμεν·
καὶ εἰ ἤδη δοκεῖ ἡμῖν ἀπ-ιέναι, δεῖ βουλευέσθαι ὅπως
140 ἀσφαλέστατα ἀπ-ίωμεν, καὶ ὅπως ἔχωμεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
ἄνευ γὰρ τούτων οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε ἰδιώτης ἄξιός ἐστιν
οὐδενός. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος χρήσιμος μέν ἐστι φίλος τού-

τοῖς, οἷς ἂν φίλος ᾦ, χαλεπώτατος δὲ ἐχθρὸς, οἷς ἂν ἐχθρὸς ᾦ· ἔχει γὰρ δύναμιν καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν, ἣν πάντες ἡμεῖς ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· 145 ὥστε καιρὸς ἐστὶ λέγειν ὅ τι τις νομίζει ἄριστον εἶναι.”

The army send to Cyrus to ask his intentions. His answer.

Μετὰ ταῦτα συμ-βουλευσάμενοι πέμπουσιν ἄνδρας σὺν Κλεάρχῳ, οὗ ἡρώτων Κῦρον ὅ τι βούλοιο ποιεῖν. ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “Ἀκούω Ἀβροκόμαν, ἐχθρὸν ἄνδρα, εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ Εὐφράτῃ ποταμῷ· βούλομαι οὖν ἐλθεῖν πρὸς 150 τοῦτον· καὶ ἔὰν μὲν ᾗ ἐκεῖ, τιμωρησόμεθα αὐτόν, ἔὰν δὲ φεύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ βουλευσόμεθα τί χρὴ ποιεῖν ἐκ τούτων.” καὶ οἱ μὲν πεμφθέντες ἀν-αγγέλλουσι ταῦτα τοῖς στρατιώταις· οἱ δὲ ὑπ-ώπτενον μὲν ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος ἄγοι αὐτοὺς πρὸς βασιλέα, ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει ἔπεσθαι αὐτῷ. ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ 155 ἐνταῦθα ὁ Κῦρος φανερώς εἶπεν ὅτι ἄγοι τὸ στράτευμα ἐπὶ βασιλέα.

March into Cilicia. Cheirisophus joins. Two captains desert.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξ-ελαύνει εἰς Ἰσσοὺς ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς Κιλικίας· καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐξήκοντα νῆες ἐκ Πελοποννήσου παρ-ῆσαν Κυρῷ. παρ-ῆν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος Λακεδαιμόνιος 160 ἐπὶ τῶν νεῶν, ἔχων ἑπτακοσίους ὀπλίτας. αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν παρὰ τὴν Κύρου σκηνήν. Ἀβροκόμας δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον ὄντα ἐν Κιλικίᾳ, ἀνα-στρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀπ-ήλαυνε παρὰ βασιλέα· εἶχε δὲ, ὥς ἐλέγετο, τριάκοντα μυριάδας. ἐν-τεῦθεν Κῦρος ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ Συρίας εἰς Μυριάνδρον, πόλιν 165 οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ Φοινίκων ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ· καὶ ἐνταῦθα Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκὰς, στρατηγὸς, καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς ἐμ-βάντες εἰς πλοῖον ἀπ-έπλευσαν.

Generosity of Cyrus.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὄχοντο, πάντες ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος διώξοι
 170 αὐτοὺς τριήρεσι. ὁ δὲ συγ-καλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
 εἶπεν· “Ξενίας καὶ Πασίων ἀπο-λελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς. ἀλλ’
 οὐκ ἀπο-δεδράκασιν (οἶδα γὰρ ὅπῃ οἴχονται), οὐδὲ ἀπο-
 πεφεύγασιν (ἔχω γὰρ τριήρεις, ὥστε δύνασθαι ἐλεῖν τὸ
 ἐκείνων πλοῖον). ἀλλ’ οὐκ ἔγωγε διώξω αὐτοὺς, οὐδὲ
 175 κακῶς ποιήσω τοὺς φίλους, οἳ ἂν βούλωνται ἀπ-ιέναι.
 ἀλλὰ ἴτωσαν οἱ ἄνθρωποι, εἰδότες ὅτι κακίους εἰσὶ περὶ
 ἡμᾶς, ἢ ἡμεῖς ἐσμὲν περὶ ἐκείνους.” καὶ ὁ μὲν Κῦρος εἶπε
 ταῦτα· οἳ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἀκούοντες τὴν Κύρου ἀρετὴν,
 συν-επορεύοντο αὐτῷ προθυμότερον ἐκ τούτου.

Cyrus declares the real object of the expedition.

180 Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξ-ελαύνει ἐπὶ τὸν Εὐφράτην
 ποταμόν· καὶ ἐνταῦθα μετα-πεμψάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο πρὸς βασιλέα
 μέγαν εἰς Βαβυλῶνα· καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα
 τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ πείθειν αὐτοὺς ἔπεσθαι. οἳ δὲ
 185 στρατιῶται ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ οὐκ ᾔθελον
 ἵεναι, εἰ μὴ Κῦρος δοίῃ αὐτοῖς πλείω χρήματα. οἳ
 δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπ-ήγγελλον ταῦτα Κύρῳ· ὁ δ’ ὑπ-έσχετο
 δοῦναι. οἳ μὲν δὴ πλείστοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὕτως ἐπεί-
 σθησαν.

*They cross the Euphrates, and enter Arabia. Description of
 the desert. Hunting wild animals.*

190 Δια-βάντες δὲ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν πορεύονται διὰ
 τῆς Ἀραβίας. ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ ἡ γῆ ἦν πεδίου ἀπαν
 ὁμαλὸν, ὥσπερ θάλαττα· δένδρον δὲ οὐδὲν ἦν. θηρία δὲ

ἦν παντοῖα· πλείστοι μὲν ὄνοι ἄγριοι, πολλοὶ δὲ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες καὶ δορκάδες. οἱ δὲ ἵππεῖς πολλάκις ἐδίωκον ταῦτα τὰ θηρία. καὶ οἱ μὲν ὄνοι, ἐπεὶ 195 τις διώκοι αὐτοὺς, προ-δραμόντες ἕστασαν· ἔτρεχον γὰρ πολὺ θάπτον τῶν ἵππων· καὶ πάλιν, ἐπεὶ οἱ ἵπποι πλησιάζοιεν, ἐποιοῦν ταυτόν· καὶ οὐ ράδιον ἦν λαβεῖν τοὺς ὄνους. τὰ δὲ κρέα τῶν ἀλισκομένων ὄνων ὅμοια ἦν τοῖς ἐλαφείοις κρέασι, ἀπαλώτερα δέ.

200

Ostriches. Bustards. Scarcity of food.

Στρουθὸν δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβεν· οἱ δὲ ἵππεῖς ταχὺ ἐπαύοντο διώκοντες. οἱ γὰρ στρουθοὶ ἐξ-έφευγον πρόσω, χρώμενοι τοῖς μὲν ποσὶ πρὸς τὸ δραμεῖν, ταῖς δὲ πτέρυξιν αἰρομέναις, ὥσπερ ἰστίοις. τὰς δὲ ὠτίδας δυνατὸν ἦν λαμβάνειν, εἴ τις ταχὺ ἀν-ισταίῃ αὐτάς· πέτονται γὰρ βραχὺ, ὥσπερ 205 πέρδικες, καὶ ταχὺ ἀπο-κάμνουσι φεύγουσαι. τὰ δὲ κρέα αὐτῶν ἥδιστα ἦν. καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ἐρήμῳ πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπ-ώλετο ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· οὐ γὰρ ἦν χόρτος· καὶ ὁ σῆτος ἐπ-έλιπεν αὐτὸ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ οὐκ ἐδύναντο πρίασθαι.

210

Forced marches. Energy of Cyrus' staff.

Πολλάκις δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἤλαυνε τοὺς σταθμοὺς πάνν μακροὺς, ὅποτε βούλοιτο ἀφ-ικέσθαι ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. καὶ δὴ πότε αἱ ἄμαξαι οὐκ ἐδύναντο προ-χωρεῖν διὰ τὴν στενοχωρίαν τε καὶ τὸν πηλόν. ὁ οὖν Κῦρος ἐπι-στὰς σὺν τοῖς περὶ αὐτὸν ἀρίστοις ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας 215 συν-εκ-βιβάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ σχολαίως ποιεῖν τοῦτο, ἐκέλευσε τοὺς κρατίστους τῶν Περσῶν συν-επι-σπεῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. ἔνθα δὴ ἴδοι ἂν τις μέρος τι τῆς εὐταξίας αὐτῶν· ρίψαντες γὰρ τὰς πορφυρᾶς χλα-

220 μύδας ἔσπενδον δραμόντες κατὰ τοῦ λόφου, οὗ ἔτυχον ἑστηκότες. εἶχον δὲ καὶ πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας καὶ ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας· ἔνιοι δὲ εἶχον καὶ στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις καὶ ψέλια περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· ὅμως δὲ σὺν τούτοις εἰς-πηδήσαντες εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐξ-εκόμισαν τὰς ἀμάξας.

Traces of the king's troops. Treachery of Orontes.

225 Ἐντεῦθεν πορευομένοις αὐτοῖς ἵχνια ἵππων ἐφαίνετο καὶ κόπρος· ὁ δὲ στίβος εἰκάζετο εἶναι ὡς δις-χιλίων ἵππων. οὗτοι προ-ιόντες ἔκαιον καὶ χιλὸν καὶ τὰ ἄλλα ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ χρήσιμα. Ὀρόντης δὲ ἀνὴρ Πέρσης, συγγένης ὢν βασιλεῖ, ἐπι-βουλεύει Κύρῳ· οὗτος δὲ εἶπεν ὅτι, εἰ
230 Κῦρος δοίῃ αὐτῷ ἱππέας χιλίους, κωλύσειεν ἂν τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων ἱππέας τοῦ καίειν τὸν χιλόν. ταῦτα δὲ ἐδόκει τῷ Κύρῳ εἶναι ὠφέλιμα, καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγεμόνων. ὁ δὲ Ὀρόντης γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ βασιλέα, λέγων ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων πολλοὺς
235 ἱππέας.

Orontes is discovered and arrested.

Ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν δίδωσι πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὡς ᾤετο. ὁ δὲ λαβὼν δίδωσι Κύρῳ. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀνα-γνοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν συλ-λαμβάνει Ὀρόντην, καὶ συγ-καλεῖ εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν ἑπτὰ τοὺς ἀρίστους τῶν Περσῶν. καὶ
240 ἐκέλευσε τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὺς ἀγαγεῖν ὀπλίτας, τούτους δὲ ἐκέλευσε θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα περὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ σκηνὴν. οἱ δὲ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα, ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρις-χιλίους ὀπλίτας. παρ-εκάλεσε δὲ καὶ Κλέαρχον σύμβουλον· ὁ δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἐξ-ἦλθεν, ἐξ-ἡγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ
245 Ὀρόντου, ὡς ἐγένετο. ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν τοῦ λόγου ᾧδε·

Cyrus conducts the trial. 'Twice already has Orontes turned traitor to me.'

“Παρ-εκάλεσα ὑμᾶς, ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως βουλευόμενος σὺν ὑμῖν πράξω ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι περὶ Ὀρόντου τουτουῖ. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ ἔδωκε τοῦτον ὑπήκοον εἶναί μοι· ἐπεὶ δὲ κελευσθεὶς ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οὗτος 250 ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ, ἐγὼ προς-πολεμῶν αὐτῷ ἐποίησα παύσασθαι τοῦ πολεμοῦ, καὶ ἔλαβον δεξιὰν καὶ ἔδωκα.”

“Μετὰ ταῦτα,” ἔφη, “ὦ Ὀρόντα, τί ἡδίκησά σε;” ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδὲν ἡδίκησε. πάλιν δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἡρώτα, “Οὐκοῦν ὕστερον ἀπο-στὰς εἰς Μυσσοὺς κακῶς 255 ἐποίεις τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν;” ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντης πεποιηκέναι ταῦτα. “Οὐκοῦν,” ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, “ὕστερον ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος βωμὸν πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι πιστὰ, καὶ ἔλαβες ταῦτα παρ’ ἐμοῦ;” ὁ δὲ Ὀρόντης ὁμολόγει καὶ τοῦτο. 260

'This is now the third time. What shall we do with him?'

“Ἄρ’ οὖν,” ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, “ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ’ ἐμοῦ νῦν τὸ τρίτον ἐπι-βουλεύεις ἐμοί;” ὁ δὲ Ὀρόντης εἶπεν ὅτι οὐδὲν ἡδίκηθη. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Κῦρος ἡρωτήσεν αὐτόν· “Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν γεγενῆσθαι ἄδικος περὶ ἐμέ;” “Ὁμολογῶ,” ἔφη ὁ Ὀρόντης. πάλιν ὁ Κῦρος ἡρώτησεν αὐτόν· “Βούλει οὖν 265 ἔτι γενέσθαι τῷ μὲν ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ πολέμιος, ἐμοὶ δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός;” ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο, “Οὐδὲ εἰ γενοίμην σοι φίλος, ὦ Κῦρε, σοί γ’ ἂν ποτε δόξαιμι εἶναι.” πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος εἶπε τοῖς παρ-οὔσιν, “Ὁ μὲν ἀνὴρ λέγει τοιαῦτα· σὺ δὲ πρῶτος, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἀπό-φηναι τὴν σεαυτοῦ γνώμην 270 περὶ τούτου.”

Orontes disappears from the scene.

Κλέαρχος δὲ εἶπε τάδε· “Ἐγὼ συμβουλεύω ἀφανίζειν τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα ὥς τάχιστα, ἵνα μηκέτι δέῃ φυλάττεσθαι τοῦτον, ἀλλ’ ἵνα σχολὴ ἢ ἡμῖν εὖ ποιεῖν τοὺς φίλους.”
 275 οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἔλεγον ταῦτά. μετὰ ταῦτα ἅπαντες ἀναστάντες ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τοῦ Ὀρόντου ἐπὶ θανάτῳ· εἶτα οἱ πρὸς τοῦτο τεταγμένοι ἐξ-ῆγον αὐτόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ὀρόντης εἰς-ηνέχθη εἰς τὴν Ἀρταπάτου σκηνὴν, τοῦ πιστοτάτου τῶν Κύρου σκηπτούχων, μετὰ ταῦτα οὐδεὶς
 280 πώποτε εἶδεν αὐτὸν οὔτε ζῶντα οὔτε τεθνηκότα· τάφος δὲ οὐδεὶς αὐτοῦ ἐφάνη πώποτε.

News from the king's army. Cyrus encourages his Greek soldiers.

Ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος ἐξ-ελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας σταθμοὺς τρεῖς. τῇ δὲ ἐπ-ιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ αὐτόμολοι ἤκουτες παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπ-ῆγγελλον Κῦρι περὶ τῆς
 285 βασιλέως στρατιᾶς. Κῦρος δὲ συγ-καλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐθάρσυνεν αὐτοὺς, λέγων τοιάδε. “ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, οὐ διὰ τοῦτο ὑμᾶς ἄγω, ὅτι ἀπορῶ ἀνθρώπων βαρβάρων, ἀλλ’ ὅτι νομίζω ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἀμείνονας πολλῶν βαρβάρων. γένεσθε οὖν
 290 ἄνδρες ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς ἔχετε. εὖ γὰρ ἴστε, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἐλοίμην ἂν τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἀντὶ πάντων ὧν ἔχω. ἐγὼ δὲ, εὖ εἰδὼς εἰς οἶον ἀγῶνα ἔρχεσθε, διδάξω ὑμᾶς. οἱ μὲν γὰρ πολέμιοι ἔσονται πολλοὶ, καὶ ἐπ-ίασι πολλῇ κραυγῇ· ἐὰν δὲ ἀνά-σχησθε ταῦτα, οὐδὲν ἄλλο φοβερὸν
 295 ἔσται· καὶ γὰρ αἰσχύνομαι δὴ λέγων ὥς δειλοὶ εἰσιν οἱ ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἄνθρωποι. ἐὰν δὲ ὑμεῖς ἄνδρες γένησθε καὶ εὐτολμοι, ἐγὼ ποιήσω τοὺς μὲν βουλομένους ἀπ-ιέναι

οἴκαδε ζηλωτοὺς τοῖς οἴκοι· οἴομαι δὲ πολλοὺς ὑμῶν αἰρή-
σεσθαι παρ' ἐμοὶ μένειν.”

An objector silenced. Fresh promises.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης τις παρ-ὼν εἶπε τῷ Κύρῳ· “Καὶ μὴν, 300
ὦ Κῦρε, λέγουσί τινες ὅτι νῦν ὑπ-ισχνεῖ πολλὰ διὰ τὸν
παρ-όντα κίνδυνον· ἐὰν δέ τι εὖ γένηται, οὐ μεμνήσεσθαί
σέ φασιν· ἔνιοι δὲ λέγουσιν ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ βούλοιο, δύναιο
ἂν ἀπο-δοῦναι ὅσα ὑπ-ισχνεῖ.” ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἀπ-εκρίνατο·
“Ἄλλ' ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρώα, πρὸς 305
μὲν μεσημβρίαν μέχρι οὗ διὰ καῦμα ἄνθρωποι οὐ δύνανται
οἰκεῖν, πρὸς δὲ ἄρκτον μέχρι οὗ διὰ χειμῶνα οὐ δύνανται
οἰκεῖν· οἱ δὲ τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φίλοι ἄρχουσι πάσης τῆς
ἐν μέσῳ χώρας. ἐὰν δὲ νικήσωμεν, δεῖ ἡμᾶς ποιῆσαι
τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους ἄρχοντας τούτων. δώσω δὲ καὶ 310
ἐκάστω ὑμῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων στέφανον χρυσοῦν.” οἱ δὲ
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα αὐτοί τε ἦσαν πολὺ προθυμότεροι, καὶ
ἐξ-ἡγγελλον ταῦτα τοῖς ἄλλοις.

Doubt whether the king will fight. Numbers on both sides.

Ἐνταῦθα Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον· “Οἶει, ὦ Κῦρε,
τὸν ἀδελφὸν μαχεῖσθαί σοι;” “Ναὶ,” ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, 315
“εἴπερ γε ἐμός ἐστιν ἀδελφὸς, οὐκ ἄνευ μάχης ἐγὼ
λήψομαι ταύτην τὴν ἀρχήν.” ἔνταῦθα δὴ ἀριθμὸς
ἐγένετο, τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων ὀπλῖται μύριοι καὶ τετρα-
κόσιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ δις-χίλιοι καὶ πεντακόσιοι, τῶν δὲ
μετὰ Κύρου βαρβάρων δέκα μυριάδες ἐγένοντο. τῶν δὲ 320
πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι μυριάδες· καὶ
παρὰ τούτους ἦσαν ἑξακίς-χίλιοι ἵππεῖς, ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης
ἦρχεν. ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος ἐξ-ελαύνει σταθμὸν ἕνα παντὶ

τῷ στρατεύματι συν-τεταγμένῳ· ὥςτο γὰρ βασιλέα
 325 μαχεῖσθαι ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ βασιλεὺς οὐκ
 ἐμάχετο διὰ πολλῶν ἡμερῶν, οἱ Ἕλληνες ὥοντο αὐτὸν
 οὐκ ἐθέλειν μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος ἐπο-
 ρεύετο ἀμελέστερον.

*Library of the University of Michigan
 Dept. of Classics
 Sept. 10, 1890*

CHAPTER II.

beginning

BATTLE OF CUNAXA AND ITS RESULTS.

The king is coming! Preparations for the battle.

Τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπορεύετο καθ-ήμενος ἐπὶ
 τοῦ ἄρματος, καὶ ἔχων ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει πρὸ ἑαυτοῦ. καὶ
 ἤδη ὁ σταθμὸς, ἔνθα ἐμελλεν ἀνα-παύεσθαι, πλησίον ἦν.
 τότε δὴ Πατηγύας, ἀνὴρ Πέρσης, προ-φαίνεται ἐλαύνων
 5 ἀνὰ κράτος· καὶ εὐθὺς ἐβόα, λέγων ὅτι βασιλεὺς προς-
 ἔρχεται σὺν στρατεύματι πολλῷ, παρ-εσκευασμένος ὥς εἰς
 μάχην. ἔνθα δὴ πολὺς τάραχος ἐγένετο. Κῦρος δὲ κατα-
 πηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄρματος ἐν-έδυν τὸν θώρακα, καὶ ἀνα-βὰς
 ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας· ἔπειτα δὲ
 10 ἐκέλευσε καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐξ-οπλίζεσθαί τε καὶ καθ-
 ἵστασθαι εἰς τάξιν. οἱ δὲ εὐθὺς καθ-ίσταντο· καὶ
 Κλέαρχος μὲν ἔσχε τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας πρὸς τῷ Εὐφράτῃ
 ποταμῷ, Πρόξενος δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον· Μένων δὲ ἔσχε τὸ
 εὐώνυμον κέρας τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Κῦρος δὲ ἔσχε τὸ μέσον·
 15 καὶ ἱππεῖς ἦσαν σὺν αὐτῷ ἑξακόσιοι, ὀπλισμένοι θώραξι
 καὶ κράνεσι· Κῦρος δὲ εἶχε τὴν κεφαλὴν ψιλὴν.

II

Near approach of the enemy. Their array.

Καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι οὐπω
ἐφαίνοντο. ἡνίκα δὲ δείλη ἐγίνετο, ἐφάιη κονιορτὸς
ὥσπερ λευκὴ νεφέλη· ὕστερον δὲ ὥσπερ μέλαινά τις
νεφέλη ἐφαίνετο ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ πρόσω. ὅτε δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι 20
ἐγίνοντο ἐγγύτερον, τάχα δὴ καὶ χαλκός τις ἔλαμπε, καὶ
αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις κατ-εφαίνοντο. καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς
μὲν λευκο-θώρακες ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων,
ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων γερροφόροι· ἐχόμενοι δὲ ἦσαν ὀπλίται
σὺν ξυλίνοις ἀσπίσιν. πρὸ δὲ αὐτῶν ἄρματα ἦν, πολὺ 25
ἀπ-όντα ἀπ' ἀλλήλων· ταῦτα δὲ τὰ ἄρματα εἶχε δρέπανα
ἀπο-τεταμένα ἐκ τῶν ἀξόνων, ὥστε δια-κόπτειν τὰς τάξεις
τῶν Ἑλλήνων.

III

Tactics of Cyrus frustrated by Clearchus.

Οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι προσ-ῆσαν σιγῇ καὶ βραδέως. καὶ ἐν
τούτῳ Κῦρος, παρ-ελαύνων σὺν τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ καὶ ἄλλοις 30
τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσιν, ἐκέλευε τὸν Κλέαρχον ἄγειν τὸ
στράτευμα κατὰ τὸ μέσον τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι βασιλεὺς
εἶη ἐκεῖ. “Ἐὰν γὰρ τοῦτο,” ἔφη, “νικῶμεν, πάντα
πεποιήκαμεν.” ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος οὐκ ᾔθελεν ἀπο-σπάσαι
τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλω- 35
θείη ἐκατέρωθεν· ἀπ-εκρίνατο δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ, “Ἐμοὶ,”
ὦ Κύρε, “μελήσει ὅπως ταῦτα καλῶς ἔχῃ.” καὶ ἐνταῦθα
ὁ Κῦρος ἔτι παρ-ελαύνων κατ-εθεᾶτο τὸ στράτευμα, ἀπο-
βλέπων εἰς τε τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ εἰς τοὺς φίλους.

IV

First appearance of Xenophon. Prosperous omens.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ Ἀθηναῖος, ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ 40
στρατεύματος καὶ προσ-ελθὼν αὐτῷ, ἤρετο εἴ τι παρ-

αγγέλλοι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν λέγειν πᾶσιν ὅτι
τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ εἶη. λέγων δὲ ταῦτα, ἤκουσε θορύβου
ἰόντος διὰ τῶν τάξεων, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος εἶη. ὁ δὲ
45 Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν ὅτι σύνθημα παρ-έρχεται δεύτερον
ἤδη. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἤρετο ὅ τι εἶη τὸ σύνθημα· ὁ δὲ
ἀπ-εκρίνατο, ΖΕΥΣ ΣΩΤΗΡ ΚΑΙ ΝΙΚΗ. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
εἶπε, “Δέχομαι τὸν οἰωνόν, καὶ τοῦτο ἔστω.” εἰπὼν δὲ
ταῦτα ἀπ-ήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ μέσον πρὸς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ τάξιν.

V

Victorious onset of the Grecian right wing.

50 Καὶ αὐτίκα οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ἐπαιάνιζον, καὶ προ-
ήρχοντο ἀντίοι τοῖς πολεμίοις. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι φοβού-
μενοι ἐκ-κλίνουσι καὶ φεύγουσι. καὶ ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ
Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον μὲν κατὰ κράτος, ἐβόων δὲ ἀλλήλοις
μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλὰ ἔπεσθαι ἐν τάξει. τὰ δὲ ἄρματα
55 ἤδη ἦν κενὰ ἡνιόχων, καὶ οἱ ἵπποι ἔφερον αὐτὰ διὰ τε
τῶν πολεμίων καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες,
ἐπεὶ προ-ίδοιεν τὰ ἄρματα, δι-ίσταντο. ὀλίγοι δὲ καὶ
κατ-ελήφθησαν ἐκ-πλαγέντες· ἀλλὰ οὐδὲ οὗτοι ἔπαθον
οὐδέν, οὐδὲ ἄλλος οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπαθεν οὐδέν ἐν
60 ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ· ἐλέγετο δὲ τις τοξευθῆναι ἐπὶ τῷ εὐ-
ωνύμῳ.

VI

Cyrus defeats the king's guard of six thousand.

Κῦρος δὲ ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας διώκοντάς τινας τῶν
πολεμίων, καίπερ ἠδόμενος καὶ προς-κυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς
βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ αὐτὸν, ὅμως οὐκ αὐτὸς συν-
65 ἐδίωκεν· ἀλλὰ ἔχων τοὺς σὺν ἑαυτῷ ἑξακοσίους ἱππέας
ἐσκόπει ὅ τι βασιλεὺς ποιήσοι. καὶ γὰρ ᾔδει ὅτι ἐκεῖνος
ἔχοι τὸ μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος. καὶ βασιλεὺς
δὴ τότε, ἔχων τὸ μέσον τῆς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιᾶς, ὅμως ἔξω

ἐγένετο τοῦ εὐωνύμου κέρατος τοῦ Κύρου. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδείς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐμάχετο αὐτῷ, ἐπ-έκαμπτεν ὥς 70 κυκλώσων τοὺς Ἑλληνας. ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος ἐλαύνει ἀντίος, καὶ νικᾷ τοὺς ἑξακισ-χιλίους τοὺς πρὸ βασιλέως τεταγμένους· καὶ ἀπ-έκτεινεν Ἀρταγέρσην τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρί.

Cyrus pays the penalty of rashness.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ οἱ Κύρου ἑξακόσιοι, ὀρμήσαντες εἰς τὸ 75 διώκειν, δι-εσπείροντο· πλὴν πάνυ ὀλίγων, οἱ κατ-ελείφθησαν ἀμφὶ αὐτόν. ἔνταῦθα δὴ ὁ Κῦρος καθ-ορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀμφὶ ἐκείνον στῖφος· καὶ εὐθὺς εἰπὼν, “Τὸν ἄνδρα ὀρώ,” ἐλαύνει ἐπὶ αὐτόν, καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον, καὶ τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἀκουτίζει τις 80 Κῦρον παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν ὀφθαλμόν· καὶ Κῦρός τε αὐτὸς ἀπ-έθανε, καὶ ὀκτὼ οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν περὶ αὐτόν ἔκειντο ἐπ’ αὐτῷ. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος οὕτως ἐτελεύτησεν· οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἀπ-έταμον τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ καὶ τὴν χεῖρα τὴν δεξιάν.

85

Artaxerxes plunders the camp of Cyrus. He returns to the attack, and is defeated.

Βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ διώκοντες εἰς-πίπτουσιν εἰς τὸ Κύρου στρατόπεδον. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ μετὰ Ἀριαίου, τοῦ Κύρου ὑπάρχου, φεύγουσι διὰ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατοπέδου εἰς τὸν σταθμόν, ἔνθεν ὤρ-μηντο· βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ δι-αρπάζουσι τὸ 90 στρατόπεδον. ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες ᾗσθοντο ὅτι βασιλεὺς εἶη σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι ἐν τοῖς ἑαυτῶν σκευο-φόροις, βασιλεὺς δὲ ᾗκουσεν ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες νικῶεν τοὺς ἑαυτοῖς ἐναντίους. ἔνταῦθα δὴ βασιλεὺς ᾗθοριζε τοὺς

95 ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ συν-ετάττετο. ὥς δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον τοὺς
πολεμίους ἐγγὺς τε ὄντας καὶ παρα-τεταγμένους, ἐπ-ήεσαν
ἐπ' αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι ἔφευγον· καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
ἐδίωκον αὐτοὺς μέχρι κώμης τινός. ἐνταῦθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλ-
ληνες ἔστησαν· ὑπὲρ γὰρ τῆς κώμης λόφος τις ἦν, ἐφ' οὗ
100 οἱ βασιλέως ἱππεῖς ἀν-εστράφησαν.

IX

The Greeks, ignorant of the fate of Cyrus, return to their camp.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἐχώρουν, οἱ ἱππεῖς λεί-
πουσι τὸν λόφον. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος πέμπει ἀγγέλους ἐπὶ
τὸν λόφον, καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς ἀπ-αγγεῖλαι τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ
λόφου γιγνόμενα. οἱ δὲ ἀπ-αγγέλλουσιν ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι
105 φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος· καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἥλιος ἐδύετο. ἐν-
ταῦθα δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν καὶ ἀν-επαύοντο· καὶ
ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδαμοῦ φαίνοιτο· οὐ γὰρ ἤδεσαν
αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς ἀπ-ιέναι· καὶ ἀφ-ικ-
νοῦνται ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. κατα-λαμβάνουσι δὲ τὰ πλείστα
110 τῶν χρημάτων δι-ηρπασμένα· καὶ εἴ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτόν
ἦν, τοῦτο οἱ σὺν βασιλεῖ δι-ήρπασαν. ὥστε οἱ πλείστοι
τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀδειπνοὶ ἦσαν· ἦσαν δὲ καὶ ἀνάριστοι·
πρὶν γὰρ τὸ στράτευμα ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη.

X

*The Greeks learn the death of Cyrus, and offer to make
Ariaeus king.*

Ἀμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συν-ελθόντες ἐθαύμαζον
115 ὅτι Κῦρος οὕτω φαίνοιτο· ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς προ-ιέναι
εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, καὶ συμ-μίξαι τῷ Κύρῳ. ἐνταῦθα δὲ
Προκλῆς καὶ Γλοῦς ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος μὲν τεθνή-
κοι, Ἀριαῖος δὲ πεφευγὼς ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ εἴη, ὅθεν ὠρμή-
σαντο τῇ προτεραίᾳ. Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν·
120 “Ἐπεὶ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν, ἀπ-αγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ, ὅτι, ἐὰν

ἐνθάδε ἔλθῃ, ποιήσομεν αὐτὸν βασιλέα.” ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἀπ-έστειλε μὲν τοὺς ἀγγέλους, αὐτὸς δὲ περι-έμενε.

XI

*Artaxerxes calls upon the Greeks to surrender their arms.
They refuse.*

Μετὰ ταῦτα κήρυκες ἔρχονται παρὰ βασιλέως· ἦν δὲ εἰς αὐτῶν Φαλῖνος “Ἕλλην. οὗτοι δὲ προς-ελθόντες εἶπον ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει τοὺς “Ἕλληνας παρα-διδόναι 125 τὰ ὄπλα. οἱ δὲ “Ἕλληνες βαρέως μὲν ἤκουσαν ταῦτα, ὅμως δὲ, κελεύσαντος τοῦ Κλεάρχου, συν-εβουλεύοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐ συν-εχώρουν τῇ γνώμῃ, Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τὸν Φαλῖνον ὅ τι δέοι ἀπο-κρίνασθαι βασιλεῖ. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· “Εἰ μὲν μία τίς ἐστὶν ἐλπίς ὑμᾶς σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας 130 βασιλεῖ, ἐγὼ συμ-βουλεύω ὑμᾶς μὴ παρα-διδόναι τὰ ὄπλα· εἰ δὲ μηδεμία ἐλπίς ἐστὶ σωτηρίας, συμ-βουλεύω ὑμῖν σώζεσθαι, ὅπῃ μόνον δύνατον ἐστί.” Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “Ἀπ-ἀγγελλε παρ’ ἡμῶν τάδε· ὅτι, ἐὰν μὲν δέῃ ἡμᾶς φίλους εἶναι βασιλεῖ, πλείονος ἄξιοι ἔσο- 135 μεθα ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα, ἢ παρα-δόντες ἄλλῳ· ἐὰν δὲ δέῃ πολεμεῖν, ἄμεινον πολεμήσομεν ἔχοντες τὰ ὄπλα, ἢ ἄλλῳ παρα-δόντες.”

XII

‘Shall it be peace or war?’ Clearchus gives a guarded answer.

Ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος εἶπε· “Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ ἀπ-αγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσεν ἡμᾶς εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν καὶ τάδε· ὅτι, 140 ἐὰν μὲν μένητε ἐνθάδε, σπονδαὶ ἔσονται, ἐὰν δὲ ἀπ-ίητε ἢ προ-ίητε, πόλεμος ἔσται. εἶπατε οὖν καὶ περὶ τούτου ἅπερ ὑμῖν δοκεῖ.” Κλέαρχος δὲ ἔλεξεν· “Ἀπ-ἀγγελλε τοίνυν ὅτι ταῦτα δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, ἅπερ καὶ βασιλεῖ δοκεῖ.” “Τί οὖν ἐστὶ ταῦτα;” ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπ-εκρί- 145

νατο· “Ἐὰν μὲν μένωμεν, σπονδαὶ ἔσονται, ἐὰν δὲ
 ἀπ-ίωμεν ἢ προ-ίωμεν, πόλεμος ἔσται.” ὁ δὲ Φαλῖνος
 πάλιν ἠρώτησε· “Σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον ἀπ-αγγελῶ;”
 Κλέαρχος δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “Σπονδαὶ μὲν ἡμῖν μένουσι,
 150 πόλεμος δὲ ἀπ-ιοῦσιν ἢ προ-ιοῦσιν.” ὅ τι δὲ ποιήσοι οὐ
 δι-εσήμηνε.

XIII

Ariæus advises the Greeks to retreat, and offers to conduct them.

Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ᾤχοντο. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ
 οἱ πεμφθέντες πρὸς Ἀριαῖον πάλιν ἦκον· οὗτοι δὲ ἔλεγον·
 “Ἀριαῖος μὲν φησι πολλοὺς εἶναι Πέρσας βελτίους ἑαυ-
 155 τοῦ, οἳ οὐκ ἐάσουσιν αὐτὸν βασιλεύειν· εἰ δὲ ὑμεῖς
 βούλεσθε συν-απ-ιέναι αὐτῷ, κελεύει ὑμᾶς παρ-εἶναι·
 ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἔλθητε, αὐτός φησιν ἀπ-ιέναι εὐθύς.” ὁ δ’
 οὖν Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ἄλλοις, οἳ δὲ εἶποντο αὐτῷ·
 καὶ ἀφ-ικνοῦντο παρὰ Ἀριαῖον ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας. καὶ
 160 οἳ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος ὤμοσαν ἀλλήλοις σύμμαχοι
 ἔσεσθαι· οἳ δὲ βάρβαροι προσ-ώμοσαν ἡγήσεσθαι τοῖς
 Ἕλλησιν ἀδόλως.

CHAPTER III.

I

BEGINNING OF THE RETREAT.

The Greeks approach the king's troops, who retreat in fear.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον
 ἐν δεξιᾷ· καὶ ἅμα ἡλίῳ δύνοντι ἀφ-ίκοντο εἰς κώμας

τινὰς τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξαν ὁρᾶν πο-
 λεμίους ἱππέας· οἱ δὲ προ-πεμφθέντες σκοποὶ πάλιν
 ἦκον, λέγοντες ὅτι οὐχ ἱππεῖς εἶεν, ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια νεμόμενα. 5
 καὶ εὐθὺς πάντες ἔγνωσαν ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐγγὺς που ἐστρα-
 τοπεδεύετο· καὶ γὰρ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ
 πρόσω. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία οὔτε ὑποζύγιον οὐδὲν, οὔτε
 καπνὸς, οὔτε στρατόπεδον ἐφάνη. βασιλεὺς δὲ, ὥς ἔοικε,
 ἐφοβήθη τῇ ἐφόδῳ τοῦ στρατεύματος· ἐδήλωσε δὲ τοῦτο 10
 τῇ ὑστεραία· ἅμα γὰρ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔπεμψε κήρυκας περὶ
 σπονδῶν.

II

*The king proposes a truce, and offers guides to help them to
 get provisions. The Greeks accept both.*

Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας τῶν κηρύκων ἀπεκρίνατο·
 “Ἀπ-αγγέλλετε βασιλεῖ ὅτι δεῖ ἡμᾶς μάχεσθαι πρῶτον,
 οὐ γὰρ ἔχομεν ἄριστον· οὐδὲ τολμήσει τις λέγειν τοῖς 15
 “Ελλησι περὶ σπονδῶν, ἐὰν μὴ πρῶτον πορίσῃ αὐτοῖς
 ἄριστον.” οἱ δὲ ἄγγελοι ἀπ-ήλαννον, καὶ πάλιν ἦκον
 ταχύ./ ἔλεγον δὲ ὅτι ἦκοιεν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας, οἳ
 ἄξιοιεν αὐτοὺς ἐκεῖσε, ὅθεν λάβοιεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ὁ δὲ
 Κλέαρχος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς ἡγεῖσθαι πρὸς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 20
 καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο· Κλέαρχος δὲ ἐπορεύετο, ἔχων τὸ
 στράτευμα ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς ὀπισθο-φυλακῶν.

III

*Crossing the trenches. Activity of Clearchus. The Greeks eat
 the fruit of the date-palm.*

Καὶ εὗρον τάφρους πλήρεις ὕδατος, οὓς οὐκ ἐδύναντο
 δια-βαίνειν· ἐποιοῦντο οὖν διαβάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων,
 οἳ ἦσαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ ἔργῳ ὁ Κλέαρχος 25
 ἐπεστάτει τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ
 ἔχων τὸ δόρυ, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν, καὶ εἴ τις

δοκοίῃ αὐτῷ βλακεύειν, ἔπαιε τὸν βλακεούντα· καὶ ἅμα
 αὐτὸς ἐπόνει σὺν αὐτοῖς ἐμ-βαίνων εἰς τὸν πηλόν· ὥστε
 30 πάντας αἰσχύνεσθαι μὴ συ-σπουδάξειν αὐτῷ. καὶ πρῶτον
 μὲν οἱ νεώτεροι ἐτάχθησαν πρὸς τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον· ἐπεὶ δὲ
 ἑώρων τὸν Κλέαρχον σπουδάζοντα, καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι
 προς-ελάμβανον. πορευόμενοι δὲ ἀφ-ίκυντο εἰς κώμας,
 ἐν αἷς πολὺς σίτος ἦν καὶ οἶνος φοινίκων· οὗτος δὲ ἦν
 35 ἡδὺς μὲν πίνειν, κεφαλαλγῆς δέ. ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται
 πρῶτον ἔφαγον τὸν ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος· καὶ οἱ
 πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τό τε εἶδος καὶ τὴν ἡδονὴν αὐτοῦ. ἦν
 δὲ καὶ οὗτος σφόδρα κεφαλαλγής.

*Tissaphernes returns with a message from the king. Reply
 of Clearchus.*

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· καὶ Τισσαφέρνης ἤκων
 40 παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἔλεγε τοιάδε, “Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες
 Ἕλληνες, γείτων οἰκῶ τῇ Ἑλλάδι· καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ὑμᾶς
 εἰς πολλὰ κακὰ πεπτωκότας, ἡτούμην βασιλέα δοῦναι ἐμοὶ
 ἀπο-σῶσαι ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, οἶομαι γὰρ καὶ ὑμᾶς καὶ
 πάντας τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἔξειν μοι χάριν διὰ ταῦτα. καὶ
 45 περὶ μὲν τούτων βασιλεὺς ὑπ-έσχετό μοι βουλεύσεσθαι·
 ἐκέλευσε δέ με ἐρέσθαι ὑμᾶς διὰ τί ἐστρατεύσατε ἐπ’
 αὐτόν.” πρὸς ταῦτα Κλέαρχος ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “Ἡμεῖς
 οὔτε συν-ήλθομεν ὥς πολεμήσουντες βασιλεῖ, οὔτε ἐπο-
 ρεύομεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα· ἀλλὰ Κῦρος ἀν-ήγαγεν ἡμᾶς
 50 ἐνθάδε. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐωρώμεν αὐτὸν ἐν ἀπόροις ὄντα, ἡσχύν-
 θημεν προ-δοῦναι αὐτόν. νῦν δὲ, ἐπεὶ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν,
 οὔτε βουλόμεθα κακῶς ποιεῖν τὴν βασιλέως χώραν, οὔτε
 ἀπο-κτείνειν αὐτόν· πορευοίμεθα δ’ ἂν οἴκαδε, εἴ τις μὴ
 λυποίῃ ἡμᾶς· εἰ δέ τις ἀδικῇ ἡμᾶς, πειρασόμεθα
 55 ἀμύνασθαι αὐτόν.”

Tissaphernes engages to conduct the Greeks home in safety.

‘Ο δὲ Τισσαφέρνης ἀκούσας εἶπε· “Ταῦτα ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ· αἱ δὲ σπονδαὶ μενόντων, μέχρι ἂν πάλιν ἦκω.” ‘Ο δ’ οὖν ᾤχετο· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἦκων ἔλεγε τοιαῦτε, “Βασιλεὺς μὲν δίδωσί μοι σῶζειν ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· ὑμᾶς δ’ αὖ δεήσει ὁμόσαι ἡμῖν, ἢ μὴν πο- 60 ρεύεσθαι ὥς διὰ φιλίας χώρας, λαμβάνοντας σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ, ὅποταν μὴ παρ-έχωμεν ἀγορὰν· ἔαν δὲ ἀγορὰν παρ-έχωμεν, ὠνεῖσθαι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.” Ταῦτα ἔδοξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι· καὶ Τισσαφέρνης ὤμοσέ τε καὶ δεξιᾶν ἔδωκε τοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς. μετὰ δὲ 65 ταῦτα Τισσαφέρνης εἶπε· “Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπ-εimi πρὸς βασιλέα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ δια-πράξωμαι ἃ βούλομαι, ἦξω πάλιν, καὶ ἀπ-άξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.”

The Greeks begin to mistrust Tissaphernes and Ariaeus. Advice of Clearchus, ‘Let us make the best of our situation.’

Μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ τε Ἕλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος περι-έμενον Τισσαφέρνην ἡμέρας πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐχ 70 ἦκεν, οἱ στρατιῶται ἀχθόμενοι, καὶ ὑπ-οπτεύοντες τὸν Ἀριαῖον, μὴ οὐ πιστὸς εἶη, προσ-ῆεσαν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, καὶ ἠξίουσαν ἀπ-ιέναι εὐθύς· ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο αὐτοῖς τοιαῦτε, “Ἐγὼ ἐν-θυμουμαι μὲν ταῦτα πάντα· ἔαν δὲ νῦν ἀπ- 75 ἴωμεν, δόξομεν ποιεῖν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς. ἔπειτα οὐδεὶς παρ-έξει ἡμῖν ἀγορὰν, οὐδὲ ἡγήσεται ἡμῖν· καὶ Ἀριαῖος εὐθύς ἀπο-βήσεται, ὥστε οὐδεὶς φίλος λελείψεται ἡμῖν. καὶ εἰ μὲν τις καὶ ἄλλος ποταμὸς δια-βατέος ἐστίν, οὐκ οἶδα· ἴσμεν δὲ ὅτι ἀδύνατόν ἐστι δια-βῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην, 80 πολεμίων κωλυόντων. καὶ ἡμεῖς μὲν οὐχ ἔχομεν ἱππέας, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις ἱππεῖς εἰσὶ πλείστοι· ὥστε νικῶντες μὲν

οὐδένα ἂν ἀπο-κτείναιμεν, νικώμενοι δὲ οὐδαμῶς ἂν
 σωζοίμεθα. εἰ μὲν οὖν βασιλεὺς βούλεται ἀπ-ολέσαι
 ἡμᾶς, τί δεῖ αὐτὸν ἐπι-ορκῆσαι καὶ ψεύσασθαι, καὶ ποιῆσαι
 85 τὰ πιστὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἄπιστα "Ελλησί τε καὶ βαρβάροις ;"

*The Greeks begin their retreat, cross the Tigris, and continue
 their march through Media.*

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἦκε Τισσαφέρνης ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
 δύναμιν· ὁ δὲ ἡγείτο τοῖς "Ελλησι πορευομένοις, καὶ
 παρ-εῖχεν αὐτοῖς ἀγοράν. ἐπορεύετο δὲ καὶ Ἀριαῖος σὺν
 Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ συν-εστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ
 90 "Ελληνες, ὑπ-οπτεύοντες τούτους, χωρὶς ἐπορεύοντο·
 ἀμφοτέροι δὲ ἐφυλάττοντο ἀλλήλους ὥσπερ πολεμίους.
 οὕτω πορευόμενοι ἀφ-ίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ Μηδίας τεῖχος, καὶ
 παρ-ῆλθον εἴσω αὐτοῦ. ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπὶ τὸν
 Τίγρητα ποταμὸν, πρὸς ᾧ πόλις ἦν μεγάλη, ἥ ὄνομα
 95 Σιπτάκη· καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμενον τὴν νύκτα. δια-βάντες δὲ
 τοῦτον τὸν ποταμὸν, ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας σταθ-
 μοὺς πολλοὺς, ἔχοντες τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ.
 πέραν δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄλλη ἦν πόλις, ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς
 οἱ βάρβαροι δι-ῆγον τοῖς "Ελλησιν ἄρτους, τυροὺς, οἶνον.

*Increasing mistrust. Clearchus addresses Tissaphernes. i. 'You
 do wrong in suspecting us, for all our dependence is upon you.'*

100 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφ-ικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμὸν, καὶ
 ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τρεῖς· ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἡμέραις
 ὑποψίαί ἦσαν ἀλλήλων, ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν. ἔδοξεν οὖν
 τῷ Κλεάρχῳ συγ-γενέσθαι τῷ Τισσαφέρνει· ἐπεὶ δὲ συν-
 ῆλθον, ὁ Κλέαρχος λέγει τάδε, "Ἐγὼ, ὦ Τισσαφέρνη,
 105 οἶδα μὲν ὄρκους ἡμῖν γεγενημένους, μὴ ἀδικήσῃς ἀλλήλους.

ὅμως δὲ ὁρῶ σε φυλαττόμενον ἡμᾶς ὡς πολεμίους· καὶ ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἀντι-φυλαττόμεθα. βουλόμενος οὖν παῦσαι τὰς τοιαύτας ὑποψίας, ἤκω διδάξων σε ὡς οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς ἡμῖν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ θεῶν ὅρκοι κωλύουσιν ἡμᾶς πολεμίους εἶναι ἀλλήλοις· τῶν δὲ ἀνθρωπίνων 110 ἀγαθῶν σὲ ἐγὼ νομίζω μέγιστον εἶναι ἐν τῷ παρ-όντι, σὺν μὲν γὰρ σοὶ πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὐπορός ἐστι, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς δια-βατός· ἄνευ δὲ σοῦ πᾶσα μὲν ἡ ὁδὸς διὰ σκότους ἂν γένοιτο, πᾶς δὲ ποταμὸς δύσπορος, πᾶς δὲ ὄχλος φοβερός. φοβερωτάτη δ' ἂν εἴη ἐρημία· ἐρημοὶ 115 γὰρ ὄντες ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ ἅμα ἐσόμεθα.

ii. 'Not only our hopes but yours are frustrated, should any misunderstanding arise between us.'

Λέξω δὲ καὶ ὅσων ἐλπίδων ἐμαυτὸν ἂν στερήσαιμι, εἰ ἐπι-χειρῶμαι ποιεῖν σέ τι κακόν. ἐγὼ γὰρ τότε ἐπεθύμησα Κῦρον φίλον μοι γενέσθαι, νομίζων αὐτὸν ἱκανώτατον εἶναι εἰ ποιεῖν ἡμᾶς· σὺ δὲ νῦν ἔχεις τήν τε 120 Κύρου δύναμιν καὶ τὴν σεαυτοῦ ἀρχὴν ἅμα· ἡ δὲ βασιλέως δύναμις, ἡ πολεμία ἦν τῷ Κύρῳ, σοὶ γεγένηται σύμμαχος. τίς οὖν οὐκ ἂν βούλοιτο φίλος εἶναί σοι; ἔχω δὲ καὶ πολλὰς ἐλπίδας καὶ σὲ βουλήσεσθαι φίλον εἶναι ἡμῖν. ἀκούω γὰρ καὶ Μύσους καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη πολλὰ ἐν-οχλεῖν 125 ὑμῖν ἀεὶ, οὓς ῥαδίως ἂν τιμωρήσασθε, χρώμενοι τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ δυνάμει· ἡμεῖς δὲ ὑπ-ηρετήσομέν σοι, οὐ μόνον τοῦ μισθοῦ ἕνεκα, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἣν σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ ἔχοιμεν ἂν σοι δικαίως." Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν εἶπε τοσαῦτα· Τισσαφέρνης δὲ ᾧδε ἀπεκρίνατο·

Reply of Tissaphernes. 'We could destroy you if we chose, and yet we refrain. Why then should you distrust us?'

“Ἄλλ’ ἡδομαι μὲν σοι, ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὕτω φρονίμως λέγουσι· ἐγὼ δέ σε διδάξω, ὅτι οὐδ’ ὑμεῖς δικαίως ἂν ἀπιστοίητε οὔτε βασιλεῖ, οὔτε ἐμοί. εἰ γὰρ ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπ-ολέσαι ὑμᾶς, ἔχομεν πολλοὺς μὲν ἱππέας, καὶ πεζοὺς, 135 καὶ ὀπλίτας, οἷς δυναίμεθα ἂν ὑμᾶς βλάπτειν. πολλὰ δὲ χωρία ἐστὶν ἐπιτήδεια, ὅθεν ἐπι-τιθώμεθα ὑμῖν. τοσαῦτα μὲν γὰρ πέδιά ἐστιν ἡμῖν φίλια, ἃ ὑμεῖς σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ νῦν δια-πορεύεσθε· τοσαῦτα δὲ ὄρη ὑμῖν ἐστὶ πορευτέα, ἃ ἡμεῖς προ-κατα-λαβόντες παρ-έχοιμεν ἂν ὑμῖν ἄπορα· 140 τοσοῦτοι δ’ εἰσὶ ποταμοὶ, οὓς οὐδαμῶς ἂν δια-βαίητε, εἰ μὴ ἡμεῖς δια-πορεύοιμεν ὑμᾶς. εἰ δὲ μηδὲν τούτων ὑπ-άρχοι ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ τό γε πῦρ κρεῖττόν ἐστι τοῦ καρποῦ, ὃν ἡμεῖς κατα-καύσαντες δυναίμεθα ἂν λιμὸν ὑμῖν ποιῆσαι· τῷ δὲ λιμῷ, οὐδ’ εἰ πάνυ ἀγαθοὶ εἴητε, δύναισθε ἂν 145 ἀντι-στήναι. ἔχοντες οὖν τοσοῦτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν ὑμῖν, πῶς τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον ἂν ἐξ-ελοίμεθα, ὃς μόνος ἀσεβής ἐστι καὶ αἰσχρός; ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὐχ οὕτω μῶροι οὔτε ἀλογίστοι ἐσμέν.”

Tissaphernes invites a conference. A piece of Persian treachery.

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἀληθῆ λέγειν· καὶ ὁ 150 Τισσαφέρνης πάλιν εἶπεν· “Εἰ βούλεσθε οἷ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐλθεῖν μοι εἰς τὴν σκηνὴν, λέξω ὑμῖν τὰ ὀνόματα τῶν λεγόντων, ὥς σὺν ἐπι-βουλεύεις ἐμοί τε καὶ τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ.” “Ἐγὼ δέ,” ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, “ἄξω πάντας.” τῇ δ’ ὑστεραίᾳ ἦλθε παρὰ Τισσαφέρην 155 ἄγων πέντε στρατηγούς καὶ εἴκοσι λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ

ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσαφέρνους, οἱ μὲν στρατηγοὶ παρ-εκλήθησαν εἶσω, οἱ δὲ λοχαγοὶ ἔμμενον ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις. οὐ πολλῶ δὲ ὕστερον οἱ τε ἔνδον συν-ελαμβάνοντο καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατ-εκόφθησαν. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα τῶν βαρ-
 βάρων τινὲς ἱππέων, ἐλαύνοντες διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, ἔκτεινον 160
 πάντας Ἑλληνας, οἷς ἐν-τυγχάνοιεν.

Consternation of the Greeks. The five generals are murdered.

Ἐκ τούτου δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα, νομί-
 ζοντες τοὺς βαρβάρους αὐτίκα ἥξειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
 οἱ δὲ πάντες μὲν οὐκ ἦλθον, Ἀριαῖος δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι, οἱ
 ἦσαν Κύρῳ πιστότατοι· καὶ ὁ Ἀριαῖος εἶπε τάδε, “Κλέ- 165
 αρχος μὲν, ὃ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, τέθνηκεν, ἐπεὶ ἔλυσε τὰς
 σπονδὰς καὶ ἐπ-εβούλευσε Τισσαφέρνει· Πρόξενος δὲ καὶ
 Μένων, ὅτι κατ-ἡγγείλαν τὴν ἐπιβουλὴν αὐτοῦ, ἐν μεγάλῃ
 τίμῃ εἰσίν.” ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· “Κλέαρχος μὲν,
 εἰ ἔλυσεν τὰς σπονδὰς, ἔχει τὴν δίκην· ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος καὶ 170
 Μένων εἰσὶν ὑμέτεροι μὲν εὐεργέται, ἡμέτεροι δὲ στρατη-
 γοὶ, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· φίλοι γὰρ ὄντες συμ-
 βουλεύσουσι καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν τὰ βέλτιστα.” πρὸς ταῦτα
 οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι, δια-λεχθέντες ἀλλήλοις πολὺν χρόνον,
 ἀπ-ἦλθον οὐδὲν ἀπο-κρινάμενοι· οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀν- 175
 ήχθησαν πρὸς βασιλέα, καὶ αἱ κεφαλαὶ αὐτῶν ἀπ-
 ετμήθησαν.

*Character of Clearchus. His warlike tastes and love of
 adventure.*

Τούτων δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν ὁ μὲν Κλέαρχος ὠμολογεῖτο
 ὑπὸ πάντων γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ πολεμικὸς καὶ μάλιστα
 φιλοπόλεμος. καὶ γὰρ δὴ, ἕως μὲν πόλεμος ἦν τοῖς 180

Λακεδαιμονίοις πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, ὑπ-ηρέτει τῇ ἑαυτοῦ πατρίδι· ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο, πείσας τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους ὥς οἱ Θρᾷκες ἀδικοῖεν τοὺς Ἑλληνας, ἐξ-έπλει ὥς πολεμήσων τοῖς Θραξίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἔφοροι ἐπειρῶντο
 185 ἀπο-στρέφειν αὐτὸν ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι ἐπείθετο αὐτοῖς, ἀλλ' ἀπ-έπλει εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον· καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἀρχόντων. ἤδη δὲ φυγὰς ὦν ἔρχεται πρὸς Κῦρον, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ πολλὰ χρήματα. ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος, λαβὼν ταῦτα καὶ συλ-λέξας
 190 στράτευμα, ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος· τότε δὲ ἀπ-ῆλθε σὺν ἐκείνῳ. οὕτω μὲν οὖν ὁ Κλέαρχος φιλοπόλεμος ἦν.

The severity of his discipline secures the obedience, but not the attachment of his soldiers.

Εἰς δὲ τὸ ἄρχειν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἱκανὸς μὲν ἦν παρασκευάζειν τῇ στρατιᾷ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἱκανὸς δὲ καὶ ἐμ-
 195 ποιῆσαι τὴν γνώμην τοῖς στρατιώταις, ὥς πειστέον εἶη Κλεάρχῳ. τοῦτο δ' ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ εἶναι χαλεπός· καὶ γὰρ στυγνὸς ἦν ὁρᾶν καὶ τραχὺς τῇ φωνῇ· ἐκόλαζέ τε ἀεὶ ἰσχυρῶς καὶ ἐνίοτε ὀργῇ· ἠγεῖτο γὰρ οὐδὲν ὄφελος εἶναι ἀκολάστου στρατεύματος. ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔλεγεν ὥς δέοι τὸν
 200 στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι τὸν ἄρχοντα μᾶλλον ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ εὖ φυλάξειν φυλακὰς, ἢ θαρραλέως ἰέναι πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ἐν μὲν ᾧ τοῖς κινδύνοις οἱ στρατιῶται ἠθέλον ἐπείθεσθαι αὐτῷ, καὶ οὐκ ἄλλον ἡροῦντο στρατηγόν· ὅτε δὲ γένοιντο ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ, καὶ ἐξ-εἶη αὐτοῖς
 205 ἀπ-ιέναι πρὸς ἄλλους ἄρχοντας, πολλοὶ ἀπ-έλειπον αὐτόν· οὐ γὰρ εἶχεν ἡδὺν τὸν τρόπον, ἀλλ' ἀεὶ χαλεπὸς ἦν καὶ ὤμος· ὥστε οἱ στρατιῶται δι-έκειντο πρὸς αὐτὸν ὥσπερ

παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. εἶχεν οὖν τοὺς στρατιώτας
 χρησίμους μὲν καὶ σφόδρα ἀεὶ πειθομένους, φιλία δὲ καὶ
 εὐνοία οὐδεὶς ποτε συν-εἶπετο αὐτῷ. τοιοῦτος μὲν δὴ ἄρχων 210
 ἦν· ἄρχεσθαι δὲ ὑπὸ ἄλλων ἐλέγετο οὐ μάλα ἐθέλειν.

CHAPTER IV.

THE MARCH TO KURDISTAN.

Extreme dejection of the Greeks.

Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἐν πολλῇ δὴ ἀπορία,
 καὶ ἀθύμως εἶχον μάλιστα· καὶ ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐγεύ-
 σαντο σίτου· εἰς τὴν ἐσπέραν, ὀλίγοι δὲ πῦρ ἀν-έκαυσαν·
 πολλοὶ δὲ οὐκ ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα ταύτην τὴν νύκτα,
 ἀν-επαύοντο δὲ ὅπου ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανεν ὦν, οὐ δυνάμενοι 5
 καθ-εὔδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων, γονέων,
 γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς ἐνόμιζον μήποτε ἔτι ὄψεσθαι. οὕτω
 μὲν δὴ δια-κείμενοι ἀν-επαύοντο.

How Xenophon came to join the expedition.

Ἦν δέ τις ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς οὔτε
 στρατηγὸς οὔτε λοχαγὸς οὔτε στρατιώτης ὦν συν- 10
 ηκολούθει· ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος, ξένος ὦν ἀρχαῖος, μετ-
 ἐπέμψατο αὐτὸν οἴκοθεν· ὑπ-ισχνεῖτο δὲ αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι,
 ποιήσειν αὐτὸν φίλον τῷ Κύρῳ. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας
 ταῦτα συμ-βουλεύεται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθηναίῳ περὶ τῆς

15 πορείας. καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης συμβουλεύει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ἐλθεῖν εἰς Δελφοὺς καὶ ἀνακοινῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω τῖνι ἂν θεῶν θύοι καὶ εὐχοίτο, ὥστε κάλλιστα πορεύεσθαι τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ καλῶς πράξαι. καὶ ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἐσήμηνεν αὐτῷ
 20 θεοὺς, οἷς ἔδει θύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦλθεν, ἔλεξε τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. ὁ δὲ ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν, ὅτι οὐ πρῶτον ἡρώτα πότερον εἴη ἄμεινον αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπιθυμήσας ἵεναι ἡρώτα ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα πορευθείη. “Ἐπεὶ μέντοι οὕτως ἦρου,” ἔφη ὁ Σωκράτης,
 25 “ταῦτα χρὴ ποιεῖν ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσεν.”

He resolves to throw in his lot with Cyrus.

Ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν, θυσάμενος τούτοις τοῖς θεοῖς οἷς ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσε θύειν, ἐξ-έπλει τῆς Ἑλλάδος, καὶ κατέλαβεν ἐν Σάρδεσι Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον μέλλοντας ἤδη πορεύεσθαι, καὶ συν-ετάχθη Κύρῳ· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκέλευσεν
 30 αὐτὸν μένειν παρ' ἑαυτῷ. εἶπε δὲ ὅτι, ἐπεὶ τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία λήξειεν, ἀπο-πέμψοι αὐτὸν οἰκάδε· ὁ δὲ στόλος ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἰς Πισίδας. ὁ μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν ἐστρατεύετο οὕτως ἐξ-απατηθεὶς, οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου· οὐδεὶς γὰρ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, πλὴν Κλεάρχου, ᾗδει τὴν ὁρμὴν ἐπὶ
 35 βασιλέα εἶναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον εἰς Κιλικίαν, σαφὲς ἤδη ἐδόκει εἶναι πᾶσιν, ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα. φοβούμενοι δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ ἄκοντες, ὅμως οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, αἰσχυνόμενοι ἤδη προδοῦναι Κῦρον, συνηκολούθησαν αὐτῷ· ὧν εἷς καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἦν.

Xenophon has a dream.

40 Νῦν δὲ, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν, ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλυπεῖτο σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο καθ-εύδειν·

ὕστερον δὲ λαχὼν ὕπνου εἶδεν ὄναρ. ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βρουτὴν μὲν γενέσθαι, σκηπτὸν δὲ πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πατρώαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου πᾶσαν λάμπεσθαι. φοβούμενος δὲ εὐθὺς ἀν-ηγέρθη, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μὲν ἔκρινε τὸ ὄναρ 45 ἀγαθὸν εἶναι, ὅτι ἐν κινδύνοις ὦν ἔδοξεν ἰδεῖν φῶς μέγα ἐκ Διός· ὅμως δὲ ἐφοβείτο, μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐξ-ελθεῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας τῆς βασιλέως, ὅτι τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπὸ Διὸς βασιλέως, τὸ δὲ πῦρ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι κύκλῳ.

His reflections. Meeting of the officers. Five new commanders chosen.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἀν-ηγέρθη, πρῶτον μὲν ἐννοία ἐμ-πίπτει 50 αὐτῷ· “Τί κατὰ-κείμαι ; ἡ δὲ νύξ προ-βαίνει· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκός ἐστι τοὺς πολέμιους ἥξειν. ἔαν δὲ ληφθῶμεν ὑπὸ βασιλέως, δεῖ ἡμᾶς παθόντας πάντα τὰ δεινότατα καὶ ὑβριζομένους ἀπο-θανεῖν. ὅπως δὲ σωσόμεθα οὐδεὶς ἐπι-μελεῖται· ἀλλὰ κατα-κείμεθα ἐνθάδε, ὥσπερ ἐξ-ὄν 55 ἡμῖν ἡσυχίαν ἄγειν.” ἐκ τούτου ἀν-ίσταται καὶ συγκαλεῖ τοὺς Προξένου πρῶτον λοχαγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ συν-ῆλθον, ἔλεξε τὰ δοκοῦντα αὐτῷ· οἱ δ’ ἀκούσαντες παρεκάλουν τοὺς ἄλλους λοχαγούς καὶ στρατηγούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες συν-ῆλθον, ἐκαθέζοντο· καὶ οἱ συν-ελθόντες 60 στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἐγένοντο ἀμφὶ ἑκατόν. συμβουλευσάμενοι δὲ εἶλοντο ἄρχοντας πέντε, ὧν εἷς ἦν Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.

Council of war and speech of Xenophon. i. ‘The gods will surely be on our side, for we have kept our oaths.’

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἄρχοντες ἤρηντο, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται συν-ῆλθον, 65

πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφος ἀν-έστη, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Κλεάνωρ
 Ὀρχομένιος. τούτων δὲ εἰπόντων, Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται,
 καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· “Τὴν μὲν τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιτοκίαν τε
 καὶ ἀπιστίαν ὑμεῖς, οἶμαι, ἐπίστασθε. εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλό-
 70 μεθα πάλιν εἶναι φίλοι αὐτοῖς, ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς ἔχειν πολλὴν
 ἀθυμίαν, ὀρώντας οἷα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἡμῶν ἄρτι πεπόν-
 θασιν· εἰ δὲ δια-νοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις ἀμύνεσθαι
 αὐτοὺς καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν πολεμεῖν αὐτοῖς, πολλαὶ εἰσιν ἡμῖν
 καὶ καλαὶ ἐλπίδες σωτηρίας. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν
 75 ἐμ-πεδοῦμεν τοὺς τῶν θεῶν ὅρκους, οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι
 λελύκασιν τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους. οὕτω δὲ εἰκὸς
 ἐστὶ τοὺς θεοὺς τοῖς μὲν πολεμίοις εἶναι ἐναντίους, ἡμῖν
 δὲ συμμάχους.

ii. ‘*Let us emulate the valour of our fathers and maintain
 our own.*’

Ἐπειτα δὲ ἀνα-μνήσω ὑμᾶς τὰς τῶν προγόνων τῶν
 80 ἡμετέρων ἀρετὰς, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὥς προσ-ήκει ὑμῖν εἶναι
 ἀγαθοῖς. ἐλθόντων γὰρ Περσῶν παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ ἐπὶ
 τὰς Ἀθήνας, οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι πρῶτον τολμήσαντες ἐνίκησαν
 αὐτούς. ἔπειτα, ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν
 Ἑλλάδα, καὶ τότε οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι ἐνίκων τοὺς
 85 τούτων προγόνους καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
 οὕτω δὲ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἀντι-ταξάμενοι ἄρτι τοῖς ἐκείνων
 ἐκγόνοις ἐνικάτε αὐτοὺς σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. καὶ τότε μὲν
 δὴ περὶ τῆς Κύρου βασιλείας ἦτε ἄνδρες ἀγαθοί· νῦν δὲ,
 ἐπεὶ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας δεῖ μάχεσθαι, προσ-
 90 ἥκει ὑμᾶς εἶναι πολὺ καὶ ἀμείνονας καὶ προθυμοτέρους.

- iii. *'Our avant of cavalry is no disadvantage, rather a gain.
The rivers are fordable near their sources.'*

Εἰ δέ τις ὑμῶν ἀθυμεῖ ὅτι ἡμῖν μὲν οὐκ εἰσὶν ἱππεῖς, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς πάρ-εισιν, ἐν-θυμήθητε ὅτι οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς οὐδὲν ἄλλο εἰσὶν ἢ μύριοι ἄνθρωποι· οἱ γὰρ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι ἂν γίγνηται ἐν ταῖς μάχαις. ἡμεῖς δ' ἐσμεν ἐπ' ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματος τῶν 95 ἱππέων· οἱ μὲν γὰρ κρέμονται ἀφ' ἱππων, φοβούμενοι οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κατα-πεσεῖν· ἡμεῖς δὲ ἐπὶ γῆς ἐστηκότες πολὺ ἰσχυρότερον παίσομεν τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐὰν προσ-ίωσιν ἡμῖν. ἐνὶ μόνῳ οἱ ἱππεῖς προ-έχουσιν ἡμῶν· φεύγειν ἀσφαλέστερόν ἐστιν αὐτοῖς ἢ ἡμῖν. εἰ 100 δὲ τοὺς ποταμοὺς νομίζετε εἶναι ἀπόρους, σκέψασθε καὶ τοῦτο. πάντας γὰρ τοὺς ποταμοὺς, εἰ καὶ πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν ἀποροί εἰσι, προ-ῖόντες πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς ῥαδίως δια-βησόμεθα.

- iv. *'As a last resource we can settle ourselves in the king's country.'*

Εἰ δὲ μήτε οἱ ποταμοὶ γενήσονται δια-βατοί, ἡγέμων 105 τε μηδεὶς φανεῖται ἡμῖν, οὐ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀθυμεῖν διὰ τοῦτο. οἳ τε γὰρ Μυσοὶ καὶ ἄλλα ἔθνη, βασιλέως ἄκοντος οἰκοῦσιν ἐν τῇ βασιλέως χώρα πολλὰς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας πόλεις. οὕτω δὲ καὶ ἡμᾶς, ὥς ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ, χρὴ κατα-σκευάζεσθαι ὥς οἰκήσοντας ἐνθάδε. οἶδα γὰρ ὅτι βασιλεὺς 110 δοίη ἂν πολλοὺς ἡγεμόνας τοῖς Μυσοῖς, καὶ ὅτι ποιήσειεν ἂν ὁδοὺς αὐτοῖς, εἰ βούλονται ἀπ-ιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. καὶ ἡμῖν γε τρις-άσμενος ἐποίει ἂν ταῦτα, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς παρα-σκευαζομένους κατα-μένειν. τοῦτο δὲ καὶ δέδοικα, μὴ ἐπι-λαθώμεθα τῆς οἴκαδε ὁδοῦ, ἐὰν μάθωμεν ζῆν ἀργοί, 115

καὶ βιοτεύειν ἐν ἀφθονίᾳ. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι δίκαιον εἶναι
πρῶτον πειρᾶσθαι ἀφ-ικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ ἐπι-
δείξαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, ὅτι ἔξ-εστι τοῖς πενομένοις τῶν
πολιτῶν ἐνθάδε κομισαμένοις πλουτίζεσθαι.

v. 'Above all let us observe the strictest discipline, and help
each other to maintain it.'

120 Λοιπὸν ἐστὶ μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ νομίζω εἶναι μέγιστον.
ὁρᾶτε γὰρ ὅτι οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ πρόσθεν ἐτόλμησαν πολεμεῖν
πρὸς ἡμᾶς, πρὶν συν-έλαβον τοὺς στρατηγούς ἡμῶν·
λαβόντες γὰρ τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς ἀπ-ολέσθαι ἂν
ἀναρχία καὶ ἀταξία. δεῖ οὖν τοὺς μὲν νῦν ἄρχοντας πολὺ
125 ἐπιμελεστέρους γενέσθαι τῶν πρόσθεν ἀρχόντων, τοὺς δὲ
ἀρχομένους πολὺ εὐτακτοτέρους εἶναι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν. ἔαν
δέ τις ἀπειθῇ, δεήσει τὸν αἰὶ ὑμῶν ἐν-τυγχάνοντα κολάζειν
αὐτὸν σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι. ἀλλ' ἤδη ὥρα ἐστι περαίνειν τὸν
λόγον· ἴσως γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι αὐτίκα παρ-έσονται. ὅτῳ
130 οὖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ καλῶς ἔχειν, ἀνα-τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα."

*Order of march. The Greeks cross the Zab and are harassed
by Mithridates.*

Ἐκ τούτου δὴ ἅπαντες ἀν-έτειναν τὰς χεῖρας· καὶ
ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ποιησάμενοι πλαίσιον ἐκ τῶν ὀπ-
λιτῶν, ἔχοντες τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ. καὶ
Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείτο, δύο δὲ τῶν πρεσβυτάτων στρατη-
135 γῶν ἐπ-εμελοῦντο τῶν πλευρῶν ἐκατέρων, Ξενοφῶν δὲ
καὶ Τιμασίων ὠπισθο-φυλάκουν. κατα-καύσαντες δὲ τὰς
ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς δι-έβησαν τὸν Ζαπάταν ποταμόν·
καὶ ἐκ τούτου Μιθριδάτης ἐπι-φαίνεται, ἔχων ἱππέας καὶ
τοξότας καὶ σφειδονήτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν

αὐτῶν ἐτόξευον· οἱ δὲ ἐσφενδύουν καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον τοὺς 140
Ἕλληνας.

A force of cavalry and slingers is hastily organized.

Ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει Ξενοφῶντι διωκτέον εἶναι τοὺς πο-
λεμίους· διώκοντες δὲ κατ-ελάμβανον οὐδένα· οὔτε γὰρ
ἵππεῖς ἦσαν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οὔτε οἱ πεζοὶ ἐδύναντο κατα-
λαμβάνειν τοὺς ἐκείνων πεζούς. ἔνθα δὴ πάλιν ἀθυμία 145
ἦν. ἔδοξε δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς κατα-σκευάζειν σφενδονήτας
καὶ ἱππέας ὡς τάχιστα. ἀκούσαντες δὲ Ῥοδίους εἶναι ἐν
τῷ στρατεύματι ἐπισταμένους σφενδονᾶν, τούτους τε
ἐξ-ελέξαντο καὶ ἄλλους, οἵτινες ἐθέλοιεν τάττεσθαι πρὸς
τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον, ὡς διακοσίους. κατ-εσκεύασαν δὲ εἰς 150
ἱππέας ἵππους σκευοφοροῦντας ὡς πεντήκοντα· καὶ ἵπ-
παρχος ἐπ-εστάθη αὐτοῖς Λύκιος Ἀθηναῖος.

Tissaphernes attacks the Greeks, but is forced to retreat.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφ-ίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν Τίγρητα ποταμόν. τῇ
δὲ ὑστεραία Τισσαφέρνης ἐφάνη, ἔχων ἱππέας πολλοὺς
καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγγὺς ἐγένετο, 155
ἐμ-βαλεῖν μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν, σφενδονᾶν δὲ παρ-ήγγειλε
τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τοξεύειν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνησαν
καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν, ὁ Τισσαφέρνης ἀπ-εχώρει ἔξω
βελῶν, καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπ-εχώρησαν. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν
τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύοντο οἱ δ' εἶποντο· καὶ οἱ 160
βάρβαροι οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο τοὺς Ἕλληνας· οἱ γὰρ Ῥόδιοι
ἐσφενδύουν μακρότερον τῶν Περσῶν. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία οἱ
Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνης
εἶπέτο ἀκροβολιζόμενος.

Disadvantages of marching in a square.

165 Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον
 πονηρὰ τάξις εἴη τοῖς ὑπὸ πολεμίων διωκομένοις· ἀνάγκη
 γάρ ἐστι τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἐκ-θλίβεσθαι καὶ πορεύεσθαι
 χαλεπῶς, ἐὰν τὰ κέρατα τοῦ πλαισίου συγ-κύπτῃ, ἢ ὁδοῦ
 στενῆς οὕσης, ἢ ὁρέων ἀναγκαζόντων ἢ γεφύρας· ὥστε
 170 δυσχρήστους εἶναι, ἀτάκτους ὄντας. ὅταν δ' αὖ τὰ κέρατα
 διά-σχι, ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ τοὺς τότε θλιβομένους δια-σπᾶ-
 σθαι, καὶ τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων κενὸν γίγνεσθαι, καὶ
 τοὺς ταῦτα πᾶσχοντας ἀθυμεῖν, πολεμίων ἐπομένων. καὶ
 ὁπότε δέοι δια-βαίνειν γέφυραν ἢ ἄλλην τινα διάβασιν,
 175 ἕκαστος ἔσπευδε, βουλόμενος δια-βῆναι πρῶτος· καὶ ἐν-
 ταῦθα ῥάδιον ἦν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐπι-τίθεσθαι αὐτοῖς.

Improved order of march.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔγνωσαν ταῦτα, ἐποίησαν ἕξ
 λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ ἐπ-έστησαν λοχαγοὺς
 αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἄλλους πεντηκοντῆρας καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτ-
 180 ἄρχας. οὕτω δὲ πορευόμενοι, ὁπότε μὲν τὰ κέρατα
 συγ-κύπτοι, οἱ λοχαγοὶ ὑπ-έμενον ὕστερον, ὥστε τὰ
 κέρατα μὴ ταραττέσθαι· τότε δὲ παρ-ῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν
 κεράτων. ὁπότε δὲ αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου διά-σχοιεν,
 οὗτοι ἀν-εξ-επίμπλασαν τὸ μέσον, ὥστε τὸ μέσον ἀεὶ
 185 ἐκ-πλεων εἶναι. εἰ δὲ καὶ δέοι δια-βαίνειν τινὰ διάβασιν
 ἢ γέφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλὰ οἱ λοχαγοὶ δι-έβαινον
 ἐν τῷ μέρει. τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν πολλὰς
 ἡμέρας διὰ χώρας ὀρεινῆς.

The enemy occupy a mountain pass. The Greeks prepare to dislodge them.

Μία δὲ τῶν ἡμερῶν οἱ βάρβαροι κατα-λαμβάνουσι χωρίον τι ὑψηλὸν ὑπὲρ αὐτῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ, ἣ οἱ Ἕλληνες 190 ἔμελλον παρ-ιέναι. ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρῶν τὴν κορυφὴν τοῦ ὄρους οὔσαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ ἑαυτῶν στρατεύματος, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον οὔσαν ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν, λέγει τῷ Χειρίσοφῳ· “Κράτιστόν ἐστιν, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἰέσθαι ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· ἐὰν γὰρ 195 τοῦτο λάβωμεν, οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ πολέμιοι οὐ δυνήσονται μένειν. σὺ δὲ, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ’ ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι.” καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος, ἐπαινέσας αὐτὸν, συμ-πέμπει τοὺς παρ’ ἑαυτῷ ὄντας πελταστάς· ἐκέλευσε δὲ καὶ ἄλλους τριακοσίους συν-έπεσθαι, οὓς 200 αὐτὸς εἶχεν ἐπιλέκτους ἄνδρας.

Race for the summit.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα. οἱ δὲ ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου πολέμιοι, ὡς ἐνόησαν αὐτοὺς πορευομένους ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ ὤρμησαν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ μὲν κραυγὴ ἦν τῶν Ἑλλήνων δια- 205 κελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, πολλὴ δὲ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρην τοῖς ἑαυτῶν δια-κελευομένων. Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρ-ελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρ-εκελεύετο· “Ἄνδρες, νῦν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἀμιλλᾶσθε, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναικας· νῦν ὀλίγον πονήσαντες ἀμαχεὶ πορευσόμεθα τὴν 210 λοιπὴν ὁδόν.”

A grumbler silenced. The Greeks win the summit.

Σωτηρίδης δέ τις εἶπεν· “Οὐκ ἐξ ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἐσμεν· σὺ μὲν γὰρ ὀχεῖ ἐφ’ ἵππου, ἐγὼ δὲ χαλεπῶς κάμνω φέρων τὴν ἀσπίδα.” ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα,
 215 κατα-πηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὠθεῖται τὸν Σωτηρίδην ἐκ τῆς τάξεως· καὶ ἀφ-ελόμενος τὴν ἀσπίδα ἐπορεύετο ὡς ἐδύνατο τάχιστα, ἔχων αὐτήν. ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ ἔχων θώρακα τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστε ἐπιέζετο. καὶ παρ-εκελεύετο τοῖς μὲν ἔμπροσθεν ὑπ-άγειν, τοῖς δὲ ὀπισθεν παρ-ιέναι.
 220 οἱ δ’ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἔπαιον καὶ ἐλοιδόρουν τὸν Σωτηρίδην, ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν αὐτὸν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀνα-βὰς, ἕως μὲν τὰ χωρία βάσιμα ἦν τῷ ἵππῳ, ἦγεν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἄβατα ἦν, κατα-λιπὼν τὸν ἵππον ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 225 φθάνουσι τοὺς πολεμίους γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ.

A serious dilemma. Proposal of a Rhodian soldier.

Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ μὲν βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. ἐπεὶ δὲ κατ-έβησαν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον, ἐνταῦθα πολλὴ ἀπορία ἦν. ἔνθεν μὲν γὰρ ἦν ὄρη ὑπερ-ύψηλα, ἔνθεν δὲ ποταμὸς οὐ δια-βατός. καὶ ἐν
 230 τούτῳ ἀνὴρ τις Ῥόδιος προσ-ελθὼν εἶπεν· “Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, δια-βιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ τετρακισ-χιλίους ὀπλίτας, εἰὰν πορίσητε ἐμοὶ ταῦτα ὧν δεόμαι, καὶ ἐπι-δωτέ μοι τάλαντον μισθόν.” ἐρωτώμενος δὲ οὗτου δέοιτο, “Ἀσκῶν,” ἔφη, “δισ-χιλίων δεήσομαι· ὁρῶ δὲ πολλὰ πρόβατα καὶ
 235 αἰγας καὶ βοῦς, ὧν τὰ δέρματα φνυθηθέντα ῥαδίως ἂν παρέχοι τὴν διάβασιν. δεήσομαι δὲ καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν, οἷς χρήσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς ἀσκούς

πρὸς ἀλλήλους, καὶ ὁρμίσας ἕκαστον λίθοις, ὥσπερ ἀγκύραις, δῆσω τοὺς ἀσκοὺς ἀμφοτέρωθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ· καὶ ἐπι-βαλὼ ὕλην τοῖς ἀσκοῖς, καὶ γῆν ἐπὶ τῇ ὕλῃ. 240
τούτοις δὲ ἐπι-βάντες οὐ κατα-δύσεσθε· πᾶς γὰρ ἀσκὸς οἶσει δύο ἄνδρας· ἡ δὲ ὕλη καὶ ἡ γῆ κωλύσουσι μὴ ὀλισθάνειν.”

They decide to march over the mountains into Kurdistan.

Τοῖς δὲ στρατηγοῖς ἀκούσασι ταῦτα τὸ μὲν ἐνθύμημα ἐδόκει χαρίεν εἶναι, τὸ δ' ἔργον ἀδύνατον· ἦσαν γὰρ πέραν 245
τοῦ ποταμοῦ πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς τῶν πολεμίων, οἳ οὐκ ἂν ἐπ-έτρεπον τοῖς Ἑλλησι ποιεῖν ταῦτα. καὶ διὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀναγκαῖον εἶναι ἐμ-βαλεῖν διὰ τῶν ὀρέων εἰς Καρδούχους, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν δι-ελθεῖν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν, χώραν μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα, ἧς Ὀρόντης ἦρχεν. ἐν- 250
τεῦθεν ἀφ-ίκοντο ἔνθα ὁ μὲν Τίγρης ποταμὸς παντάπασιν ἄπορος ἦν, πάροδος δὲ οὐκ ἦν· ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχων ὄρη ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐκρέματο. ἐνταῦθα ἐδόκει τοῖς στρατηγοῖς πορεύεσθαι διὰ τῶν ὀρέων· καὶ πορευόμενοι τῆς νυκτὸς ἀφ-ικνοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. 255

Order of march. Attacks from the Kurds.

Ἐνθα δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείτο τοῦ στρατεύματος, Ξενοφῶν δὲ εἶπετο ὀπισθοφυλακῶν. καὶ οὕτω παρεγένοντο εἰς τὰς κώμας τῶν Καρδούχων. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ μὲν Καρδούχοι ἐξ-έλιπον τὰς οἰκίας, καὶ ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, ἔχοντες καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐλάμ- 260
βανον πολλὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατ-έβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας, τότε δὲ συλ-λεγέντες τινὲς τῶν Καρδούχων ἐπ-ετίθεντο αὐτοῖς·

καὶ ἀπ-έκτεινάν τινας καὶ ἄλλους ἔτρωσαν. καὶ ταύτην
 265 μὲν τὴν νύκτα ἠγύλισθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
 αὐθις ἐπορεύοντο.

Forced rapidity of march. 'Is there no other road?'

Καὶ ταύτην μὲν τὴν ἡμέραν οὕτως ἐπορεύθησαν· τῇ
 δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ γίννεται χειμὼν πολὺς, ἀναγκαῖον δ' ἦν
 πορεύεσθαι· οὐ γὰρ ἦν ἱκανὰ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ οἱ μὲν
 270 πολέμιοι ἰσχυρῶς ἐπ-ετίθεντο αὐτοῖς. ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος οὐχ
 ὑπ-έμεινεν, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως, ὥστε ἡ πορεία ἐγίννετο ὁμοία
 φυγῇ τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν
 πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον ἠτιᾶτο αὐτὸν ὅτι οὐχ ὑπ-έμεινεν· ὁ
 δὲ ἀπο-κρινόμενος, “Βλέψον,” ἔφη, “πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, καὶ
 275 ἰδὲ ὡς πάντα ἐστὶ ἄβατα· μία δὲ αὕτη ἐστὶν ὁδὸς, ἣν
 ὀρᾶς, ὀρθία· καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἄνθρωποι καθ-ῆνται πολλοὶ,
 φυλάττοντες τὴν ἐκβασιν· οἱ δ' ἡγεμόνες, οὓς ἔχομεν, οὗ
 φασιν εἶναι ἄλλην ὁδόν.” ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· “Ἄλλ'
 ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας, οὓς ἔλαβον ζῶντας, ὅπως εἶεν ἡγεμόνες
 280 ἡμῖν τῆς ὁδοῦ.”

A refractory prisoner. Another road discovered. Volunteer party formed.

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς εἴ
 τινα εἰδεῖεν ἄλλην ὁδὸν, ἢ τὴν φανεράν. ὁ μὲν οὖν ἕτερος
 οὐκ ἔφη ἄλλην τινὰ εἰδέναι· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔλεγεν οὐδὲν
 ὠφέλιμον, ὀρῶντος τοῦ ἐτέρου κατ-εσφάγη. ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς
 285 ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος οὐ φαίη εἰδέναι, ὅτι εἴη αὐτῷ θυγάτηρ
 ἐκεῖ ἐκ-δεδομένη παρ' ἀνδρὶ· αὐτὸς δ' ἔφη ἡγήσεσθαι τῷ
 στρατεύματι. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ εἰ εἴη τι ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ δυσ-
 πάρ-ιτον χωρίον, ἔφη εἶναι ἄκρον· εἰ δὲ μὴ προ-κατα-

λήψοιντο τοῦτο, ἀδύνατον ἔσεσθαι παρ-ελθεῖν. ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατηγοὶ συγ-καλέσαντες λοχαγοὺς τῶν τε πελταστῶν 290 καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς εἴ τις εἴη, ὅστις ἐθέλοι ἂν γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός, καὶ ὑπο-στὰς ἐθελουτῆς πορεύεσθαι. καὶ ὑφ-ίστανται δὴ ὥς δις-χίλιοι.

Preconcerted arrangement. The start.

Καὶ ἦν μὲν δείλη ἤδη, οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἐκέλευον τοὺς ἐθελουτὰς πορεύεσθαι. καὶ δῆσαντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα παρα- 295 διδόασιν αὐτοῖς. καὶ συν-τίθενται τὴν μὲν νύκτα φυλάττειν τὸ χωρίον, ἐὰν λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ σημαίνειν τῇ σάλπιγγι· καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἄνω ὄντας ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους τοὺς κατ-έχοντας τὴν φανεράν ἐκβασιν. αὐτοὶ δὲ ὑπ-ισχυοῦντο συμ-βοηθήσειν ἐκ-βαίνοντες, ὥς 300 ἂν δύναιντο τάχιστα. ταῦτά συν-θέμενοι οἱ μὲν δις-χίλιοι ἐπορεύοντο· καὶ ὕδωρ πολὺ ἦν ἐξ οὐρανοῦ. Ξενοφῶν δὲ, ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ἡγείτο πρὸς τὴν φανέραν ἐκβασιν, ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι προσ-έχοιεν τὸν νοῦν ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ, καὶ ὅπως οἱ περι-ιόντες μάλιστα λάθοιεν αὐτούς. 305

Night attacks. The Greeks surprise a guard of the enemy.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ, ἣν ἔδει πρότερον δια-βῆναι, τότε οἱ βάρβαροι ἐκυλίνδουν λίθους καὶ μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πέτρας πταίνοντες δι-εσφενδονῶντο· καὶ παντάπασιν οὐ δυνατὸν ἦν πελάσαι τῇ εἰσόδῳ. ἐπεὶ δὲ σκότος ἐγένετο, καὶ ὥροντο 310 λήσειν τοὺς πολεμίους ἀπ-ιόντες, τότε ἀπ-ῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δειπνον. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι οὐδὲν ἐπαύσαντο δι' ὅλης τῆς νυκτὸς κυλινδοῦντες τοὺς λίθους. οἱ δὲ ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα, περι-ϊόντες κύκλῳ, κατα-λαμβάνουσι φύλακας

315 τῶν πολεμίων ἀμφὶ πῦρ καθ-ημένους· καὶ τοὺς μὲν κατα-
κτείναντες, τοὺς δὲ κατα-διώξαντες αὐτοὶ ἔμενον ἐνταῦθα,
ὥς κατ-έχοντες τὸ ἄκρον. οἱ δὲ οὐ κατ-εῖχον αὐτὸ, ἀλλὰ
λόφος ἦν ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν, παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ στενὴ αὕτη ὁδὸς, ἐφ'
ἧ οἱ φύλακες ἐκάθηντο. ἔφοδος μέντοι αὐτόθεν ἦν ἐπὶ
320 τοὺς πολεμίους, οἱ ἐκάθηντο ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ.

The enemy are dislodged from their first position.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ συν-
τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· καὶ γὰρ ἦν ὁμίχλη,
ὥστε ἔλαθον αὐτοὺς ἐγγὺς προς-ελθόντες. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδον
ἀλλήλους, ἡ τε σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο, καὶ ἀλαλάξαντες
325 ἰέντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο αὐτοὺς,
ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν ὁδὸν ἔφευγον· ὀλίγοι δ' ἀπ-έθνησκον·
εὗζωνοι γὰρ ἦσαν. οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, ἀκούσαντες
τῆς σάλπιγγος, εὐθὺς ἰέντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανεράν ὁδόν.
ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς,
330 ἧ ἕκαστοι ἔτυχον ὄντες, καὶ ἀνα-βάντες ὥς ἐδύναντο ἀν-
εἴλκον ἀλλήλους τοῖς δόρασι. καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συν-έμιξαν
τοῖς προ-κατα-λαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον.

A second and a third eminence captured.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὀπισθοφυλακῶν ἐπορεύετο τῇ αὐτῇ ὁδῷ,
ἥπερ οἱ τὸν ἡγεμόνα ἔχοντες ἐπορεύοντο. πορένομενοι δὲ
335 ἐν-τυγχάνουσι λόφῳ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατ-ειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ
τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ προς-βάλλουσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον. οἱ δὲ
βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ἐγγὺς δ' οὐ προς-ἰέντο,
ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἔλειπον τὸ χωρίον. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες, παρ-
εληλυθότες τοῦτον τὸν λόφον, ὀρώσιν ἕτερον λόφον ἔμ-
340 προσθεν, κατ-εχόμενον ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων· καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ

τρόπῳ αἰροῦσι καὶ τοῦτον. ἔτι δὲ τρίτος λόφος ἦν πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος· ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγγὺς ἐγένοντο, οἱ βάρβαροι ἔλειπον τοῦτον ἀμαχεί. καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀν-έβαινεν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, τοὺς δὲ ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ἔπεσθαι βραδέως. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἄγγελος ἦλθε 345 πεφευγὼς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὡς οἱ ἐν τῷ πρώτῳ λόφῳ λειφθέν-τες ἀπ-ηλάθησαν, καὶ ὅτι πολλοὶ ἀπ-έθανον.

A truce concluded. Treachery of the Kurds. Final success of the Greeks.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ βάρβαροι ἦλθον ἐπὶ ἐναντίον τινὰ λόφον· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν δι-ελέγετο αὐτοῖς περὶ σπονδῶν, καὶ ἀπ-ήτει τοὺς νέκρους. οἱ δ' ἔφασαν ἀπο-δώσειν ἐπὶ 350 τούτῳ ὥστε μὴ ἀδικεῖν τὰς κόμας· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν συν-ωμολόγει ταῦτα. ἐν ᾧ δὲ δι-ελέγοντο ταῦτα, πάντες οἱ βάρβαροι ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συν-ἦλθον. ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἴσταντο· καὶ ἐπεὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἤρξαντο κατα-βαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, ἰέντο δὴ 355 οἱ πολέμιοι πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ λόφου, ἀφ' οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατ-έβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρας· καὶ ἐνὺς μὲν κατ-έαξαν τὸ σκέλος, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ὁ ὑπασπιστῆς ἀπ-έλιπεν, ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα. Εὐρύλοχος δὲ ὀπλίτης προσ-έδραμεν αὐτῷ, καὶ προ-βαλ- 360 λόμενος τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀσπίδα πρὸ ἀμφοῖν ἐχώρει· καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι συν-έμιξαν τοῖς ἤδη συν-τεταγμένοις.

Rest in good quarters. The Greeks reach the borders of Armenia.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου πᾶν τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ὅμοῦ ἐγένετο, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ μεσταῖς

365 ἐπιτηδείων· καὶ γὰρ οἶνος πολὺς ἦν, ὃν εἶχον ἐν λάκκοις
 κονιατοῖς. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ Χειρίσοφος λαβόντες τοὺς
 νεκροὺς ἀπ-έδοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα, καὶ ἐποίησαν τοῖς ἀπο-
 θανούσι πάντα τὰ νομιζόμενα, ὥς ἐδύναντο. τῇ δὲ
 ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο ἄνευ ἡγεμόνος· καὶ ἀφ-ικόμενοι ἐπὶ
 370 τὸν Κεντρίτην ποταμὸν, ὃς ὀρίζει τὴν Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν
 τῶν Καρδούχων χώραν, ἐνταῦθα ἀν-επαύσαντο ἐν τῷ
 πεδίῳ. οὕτως ἀπ-ηλλαγμένοι πάντων τῶν πόνων ἡδέως
 ἐκοιμήθησαν.

CHAPTER V.

THE MARCH THROUGH ARMENIA.

Stoppage at the Centrites. Xenophon's dream.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες ὀρώσιν ἱππέας τῶν Ἀρμε-
 νίων πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐξ-ωπλισμένους, ὥς κωλύσοντας
 αὐτοὺς δια-βαίνειν· ὀρώσι δὲ καὶ πεζοὺς παρα-τεταγ-
 μένους ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐώρων
 5 τὸν μὲν ποταμὸν δύσπορον ὄντα, τοὺς δὲ Καρδούχους
 συν-ειλεγμένους ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, ὥς ἐπι-κεισομένους αὐτοῖς
 ὀπισθεν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία τοῖς Ἕλλησι.
 ταύτῃ δὲ τῇ νυκτὶ Ξενοφῶν εἶδεν ὄναρ· ἔδοξεν ἐν πέδαις
 δεδέσθαι, αὐταὶ δὲ ἔδοξαν αὐτόματα αὐτῷ περι-ρρυνῆναι,
 10 ὥστε λυθῆναι αὐτὸν καὶ δια-βαίνειν ὅπου ἐβούλετο. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ ὄρθρος ἦν, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ λέγει
 ὅτι ἐλπίδας ἔχει πάντα καλῶς ἔσεσθαι, καὶ δι-ηγεῖται

αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. ὁ δὲ ἤδετο, καὶ ὥς τάχιστα πάντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθύοντο· καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν.

A ford discovered.

Καὶ ἀπ-ιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν ἱερῶν οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχα- 15
γοὶ παρ-ήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι. καὶ ἀρι-
στῶντι τῷ Ξενοφῶντι δύο νεανίσκω προς-έτρεχον· καὶ
ἔλεγον τοιάδε, “Ἐτύχομεν συλ-λέγοντες φρύγανα, καὶ
εἶδομεν ἐν τῷ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ γέροντά τε καὶ γυναικας
κατα-τιθεμένους ὥσπερ μαρσίπους ἱματίων ἐν πέτρα ἀν- 20
τρῶδει. ἰδόντες δὲ ἐνομίζομεν ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι δια-βῆναι
τὸν ποταμόν· ταύτῃ γὰρ τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων ἱππέας οὐκ
ἂν δύνασθαι προς-βῆναι· ἐκ-δύντες δὲ γυμνοὶ δι-εβαίνο-
μεν, ὥς νευσόμενοι· πορευόμενοι δὲ πρόσθεν δι-έβημεν,
πρὶν βρέξαι τοὺς μηρούς· καὶ δια-βάντες καὶ λαβόντες 25
τὰ ἱμάτια πάλιν δεῦρο ἤκομεν.”

The first detachment under Cheirisophus crosses the river.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔσπενδε, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς
στρατιώτας εὐχέσθαι τοῖς θεοῖς. σπείσας δ' εὐθὺς ἦγε
τοὺς νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον· οἱ δὲ δι-ηγοῦντο
αὐτῷ ταῦτά. ἀκούσας δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος σπονδὰς 30
ἐποίει. καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖ-
σθαι, καὶ δια-βαίνειν τὸν ποταμόν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ
στρατεύματος· τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ ἔτι ὑπο-μένειν σὺν Ξενοφῶντι,
τὰ δὲ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον δια-βαίνειν ἐν μέσῳ
τούτων. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπορεύοντο· οἱ δὲ νεανίσκοι ἡγοῦντο 35
ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν
πρῶτον ἐν-έβαινεν εἰς τὸν ποταμόν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ· οἱ
δὲ πολέμιοι ὀρώντες αὐτοὺς δια-βαίνοντας φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ
κράτος πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.

The Carduchi advance to attack the rear. Xenophon prepares to receive them.

40 . Λύκιος δὲ ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας καὶ Αἰσχίνης ἔχων τοὺς πελταστὰς εἶποντο. Χειρίσοφος δὲ, ἐπεὶ δι-έβη τὸν ποταμὸν, τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας οὐκ ἐδίωκεν, εὐθὺς δὲ ἐξ-έβαινε ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους τοὺς ἐν τοῖς ἄκροις τεταγμένους. οἱ δὲ ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἐκ-λείπουσι τὰ ἄκρα. Ξενοφῶν δὲ,
 45 ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον πέραν ἤδη γενομένους, ἀπ-εχώρει ὡς τάχιστα πρὸς τὸ νῦν δια-βαῖνον στράτευμα· καὶ γὰρ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι φανεροὶ ἤδη ἦσαν κατα-βαίνοντες εἰς τὸ πεδίον, ὡς ἐπι-θησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν κατ-εῖχε τὰ ἄκρα, Λύκιος δὲ σὺν ὀλίγοις
 50 ἐπι-διώξας τοὺς πολεμίους ἔλαβε τὰ ὑπο-λειπόμενα τῶν σκευοφόρων, καὶ μετὰ τούτων ἐσθῆτά τε καλὴν καὶ ἐκ-πώματα. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τὰ μὲν σκευοφόρα τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος δι-έβαινε, Ξενοφῶν δὲ στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους ἔθετο ἀντία αὐτοῖς τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ παρ-ήγγειλε
 55 τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποιήσασθαι τοὺς λόχους, καὶ ἰέναι πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων· οὐραγοὺς δὲ ἐκέλευσε κατα-στήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι, ὡς ἑώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας ὀλίγους ἤδη γενομένους, θάττον δὴ ἐπήεσαν ὥδ' αὖτις τινες ἄδοντες.

Arrangements for the passage of the rear-guard. A ruse.

60 Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας, καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς ποιεῖν ὅ τι αὐτὸς ἐκεῖνος παρ-αγγέλλῃ. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτοὺς ἤδη δια-βαίνοντάς, πέμψας ἄγγελον κελεύει αὐτοὺς μένειν ἐπὶ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ μὴ δια-βαίνειν· ὅταν δὲ οἱ
 65 παρ' ἐαυτῷ ἄρξωνται δια-βαίνειν, τότε ἐμ-βαίνειν ὡς δια-

βησομένους, πρόσω δὲ τοῦ ποταμοῦ μὴ προ-βαίνειν. τοῖς δὲ παρ' ἐαυτῷ παρ-ήγγειλεν, ἐπειδὴ σφενδόνη ἐξ-ικνοῖτο πρὸς αὐτοὺς καὶ ἀσπίς ψοφοῖ, θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι ἀνα-στρέψαιαν, καὶ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημήνειε τὸ πολεμικὸν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τότε πάντας 70 ἀνα-στρέψαι καὶ δια-βαίνειν ὡς τάχιστα, ἥ ἕκαστος εἶχε τὴν τάξιν· ἔλεγε δὲ ὅτι οὗτος ἔσοιτο ἄριστος, ὅστις πρῶτος ἐν τῷ πέραν γένοιτο.

The ruse succeeds. All cross safely.

Οἱ δὲ Καρδοῦχοι, ὀρώντες τοὺς λοιποὺς ὀλίγους ἤδη ὄντας, ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπ-έκειντο θρασέως καὶ ἤρχοντο σφεν- 75 δονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὥρμησαν δρόμῳ ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο. ἐν τούτῳ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημαίνει· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι ἔφευγον πολὺν ἔτι θάπτον· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀνα-στρέψαντες ἔφευγον διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ὡς τάχιστα. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων οἱ μὲν τινες 80 ὀρώντες ταῦτα πάλιν ἔδραμον ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τοξεύοντες ἔτρωσαν ὀλίγους τῶν Ἑλλήνων· οἱ δὲ πολλοὶ αὐτῶν ἔτι φανεροὶ ἦσαν φεύγοντες· οἱ δὲ ὑπὸ Χειρισόφου πρότερον πεμφθέντες παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα προ-ῆσαν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν προσωτέρω ἢ ἔδει, καὶ ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ 85 Ξενοφώντος δι-έβησαν πάλιν· τούτων δὲ τινες ἐτρώθησαν ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.

The Greeks enter Armenia. Great fall of snow.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας ἐπὶ τὸν Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν. ὕπαρχος δ' ἦν ταύτης τῆς χώρας Τιρίβαζος, ὃς καὶ βασιλεῖ φίλος ἐγένετο. οὗτος εἶπεν ὅτι 90 βούλοιτο σπείσασθαι τοῖς Ἕλλησι· καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε τοῖς

στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἐσπείσαντο. στρατοπεδευομένων δ' αὐτῶν
 ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς χιῶν πολλή, ὥστε ἀπ-
 ἐκρυψε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατα-κειμένους·
 95 καὶ ἡ χιῶν συν-επόδισε τὰ ὑποζύγια. καὶ πολλὸς ὄκνος ἦν
 ἀν-ίστασθαι· ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησεν ἀν-ίστασθαι καὶ
 σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχα ἀνα-στάς τις καὶ ἄλλος ἀφ-ελόμενος
 ἐκείνου τὰ ξύλα ἔσχιζεν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
 ἀνα-στάντες πῦρ ἔκαιον.

March continued. Effects of long fasting.

100 Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει δια-σκηνῆσαι εἰς στέγας κατὰ τὰς
 κώμας. ἔνθα δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται σὺν πολλῇ ἡδυνῇ ἦσαν ἐπὶ
 τὰς στέγας καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· καὶ ἐνταῦθα δι-ήγαγον τὴν
 νύκτα. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο διὰ χιόνος πολλῆς ἐπὶ
 τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμὸν, καὶ δι-έβαινον αὐτόν· αἱ δὲ
 105 πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ ἐλέγοντο οὐ πρόσω εἶναι. ἐντεῦθεν δὲ
 ἐπορεύοντο ἡμέραν ὅλην διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν
 ἀνθρώπων ἐβουλιμίαςαν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἡγνόει ὅ τι τὸ
 πάθος εἴη. εἶπε δέ τις αὐτῷ ὅτι οἱ ἄνθρωποι βουλιμιῶεν,
 καὶ ὅτι φαγόντες τι ἀνα-στήσοιντο. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν
 110 ἀκούσας ταῦτα περι-ῆει περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, καὶ εἴ πού τι
 ὀρώη βρωτὸν, δι-εδίδου τοῖς βουλιμιῶσιν. ἐπειδὴ δέ τι
 φάγοιεν, ἀν-ίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο.

They reach an Armenian village, but some are left behind.

Πορευομένων δὲ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀφ-ικνεῖται ἀμφὶ
 κνέφας πρὸς κώμην, καὶ κατα-λαμβάνει γυναῖκας καὶ
 115 κόρας ὑδροφορούσας πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ
 ἐρύματος. αὗται ἡρώτων αὐτοὺς τίνες εἶεν. ὁ δὲ
 ἐρμηνεὺς εἶπε Περσιστὶ ὅτι πορεύονται παρὰ βασιλέως

πρὸς τὸν σατράπην. αἱ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίναντο ὅτι οὐκ εἴη
 ἐνταῦθα, ἀλλ' ἀπ-έχοι ὅσον παρασάγγην. οἱ δὲ, ἐπεὶ
 ὄψε ἦν, συν-εἰς-έρχονται πρὸς τὸν κωμάρχην εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα 120
 σὺν ταῖς ὑδροφόροις. Χειρίσοφος μὲν οὖν, καὶ ὅσοι τῶν
 στρατιωτῶν ἐδυνήθησαν, ἐνταῦθα ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο,
 τῶν δὲ ἄλλων οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι ἀφ-ικνεῖσθαι ἐνταῦθα
 ἐνυκτέρευσαν ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες
 τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἀπ-ώλουντο. 125

Sufferings in the snow.

Ἐλείποντο δὲ καὶ τινες, οἱ μὲν δι-εφθαρμένοι τοὺς
 ὀφθαλμοὺς ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος, οἱ δὲ ἀπο-σεσηπότες τοὺς
 δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους. ἦν δὲ τοῖς μὲν
 ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπικούρημα τῆς χιόνος, εἴ τις μέλαν τι ἔχων
 πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν πορεύοιτο, τοῖς δὲ ποσὶν, εἴ τις κινοῖτο 130
 καὶ μηδέποτε ἔχοι ἡσυχίαν, καὶ εἰ ὑπο-λύοιτο τὰ ὑποδή-
 ματα τὴν νύκτα. εἰ δὲ τινες ἐκοιμῶντο ὑπο-δεδεμένοι, οἱ
 ἱμάντες εἰς-εδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας, καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα
 περι-επήγνυτο· καὶ γὰρ, ἐπειδὴ τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα ἐπ-
 ἔλιπεν αὐτοὺς, ἐποίησαν καρβατίνας ἐκ τῶν νεοδάρτων 135
 βοῶν.

*The sick refuse to proceed. The enemy follow in pursuit, but
 are put to flight.*

Διὰ ταῦτα οὖν ὑπ-ελείποντό τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν· καὶ
 ἰδόντες μέλαν τι χωρίον εἵκαζον τὴν χιόνα αὐτόθι τετη-
 κέναι· καὶ ἐτετήκει διὰ θερμὴν τινα κρήνην, ἣ πλησίον ἦν
 ἀτμίζουσα ἐν νάπῃ. ἐνταῦθα οὖν ἐκάθηντο, καὶ οὐκ 140
 ἔφασαν πορεύεσθαι. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν μὴ
 ἀπο-λείπεσθαι, λέγων ὅτι πολλοὶ πολέμιοι ἔποιντο· τέλος

δὲ καὶ ἐχαλέπαιεν. οἱ δὲ ἐκέλευον κτείνειν· οὐ γὰρ
 ἔφασαν δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι. ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε κράτιστον
 145 εἶναι φοβῆσαι τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους, ὅπως μὴ ἐπ-
 ίοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. καὶ ἦν μὲν σκότος ἤδη, οἱ δὲ
 πολέμιοι προσ-ῆεσαν πολλῶ θορύβῳ. ἔνθα δὴ οἱ ὀπισθο-
 φύλακες ἐξ-αναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ
 κάμνοντες, ἀνα-κραγόντες ὅσον ἐδύναντο, ἔκρουσαν τὰς
 150 ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι δείσαντες ἦκαν
 ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι
 ἐφθέγγετο οὐδέν.

*Cbeirisophus conducts the sick to the villages. All find
 quarters.*

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπορεύοντο· τῇ δ'
 ὑστεραίᾳ ὃ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας
 155 τοὺς νεωτάτους ἐκέλευεν ἀναγκάζειν αὐτοὺς προ-ῖέναι,
 Χειρίσοφος δὲ πέμπει τινὰς ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους
 πῶς οἱ τελευταῖοι ἔχοιεν. οἱ δὲ παρ-έδοσαν μὲν τούτοις
 τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας κομίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· αὐτοὶ δὲ
 ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ ἦλθον εἰς τὴν κώμην ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος
 160 ἠϋλίζετο. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν αὐτοῦ ἔμενε, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι
 στρατηγοὶ δι-έλαχον ἀλλήλοις τὰς κώμας, ἅς ἐώρων,
 ἕκαστοι ἔχοντες τοὺς ἑαυτῶν ἄνδρας.

Armenian houses. Barley-wine and manner of drinking.

Ἐν δὲ ταύταις ταῖς κώμας αἱ οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατὰ-γειοί,
 ἔχουσαι τὸ μὲν στόμα ὥσπερ φρέατος, κάτω δὲ εὐρεῖαι·
 165 καὶ τοῖς μὲν ὑποζυγίοις αἱ εἴσοδοι ὀρυκταὶ ἦσαν, οἱ δὲ
 ἄνθρωποι κατ-έβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ἐν δὲ ταῖς οἰκίαις
 ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες, καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων·

τὰ δὲ κτήνη πάντα ἔνδον ἐτρέφετο χιλῶ. ἦσαν δὲ καὶ πυροὶ καὶ κριθαὶ καὶ ὄσπρια καὶ οἶνος κρίθινος ἐν κρατήρσιν· ἐν οἷς καὶ αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαὶ ἐν-ἦσαν. καὶ κάλαμοι ἐν-έκειντο 170 αὐτοῖς, οἱ μὲν μείζους, οἱ δὲ ἐλάττους· τούτους δὲ λάβοντες εἰς τὸ στόμα ἔμυζον, καὶ ὁ οἶνος ἦν πάννυ ἄκρατος, εἰ μὴ τις ἐπι-χέοι ὕδωρ· ἐπεὶ δὲ τις συν-εθισθείη αὐτῷ, πάννυ ἡδὺς ἦν.

Arrival at the Phasis. The enemy occupy the heights.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας πολλάς· μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο ἐπο- 175 ρεύθησαν παρὰ τὸν Φᾶσιν ποταμόν. ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ εἰς τὸ πεδίον ὑπερβολῇ ἀπ-ήντησαν αὐτοῖς Χάλυβες καὶ Τάοχοι καὶ Φασιανοί. Χειρίσοφος δὲ, ἐπεὶ κατ-εἶδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος· καὶ συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξεν ὧδε· “Οἱ 180 μὲν πολέμιοι, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, κατ-έχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς τοῦ ὄρους· ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ παρ-αγγεῖλαι μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, ἡμᾶς δὲ βουλευέσθαι εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε αὔριον δοκεῖ ὑπερ-βάλλειν τὸ ὄρος.” “Ἐμοὶ δέ γε,” ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, “δοκεῖ ὡς τάχιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ 185 τοὺς ἄνδρας. εἰ γὰρ δια-τρίψομεν τήνδε τὴν ἡμέραν, οἷ τε νῦν ἡμᾶς ὁρῶντες πολέμιοι ἔσονται θαρραλεώτεροι, καὶ ἄλλοι πλείους τούτων προς-γενήσονται.”

‘Let us steal a way over the mountain.’

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· “Ἐγὼ δὲ οὕτω γιγνώσκω. εἰ μὲν ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ μάχεσθαι, δεῖ τοῦτο παρα- 190 σκευάσασθαι, ὅπως ὡς κράτιστα μαχούμεθα· εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὡς ῥᾶστα ὑπερ-βάλλειν τὸ ὄρος, τοῦτο δεῖ σκέψασθαι, ὅπως ὡς ἐλαχίστους ἄνδρας ἀπο-βάλωμεν.

πολὺ οὖν κρεῖττόν μοι δοκεῖ πειρᾶσθαι κλέψαι τι τοῦ
 195 ἐρήμου ὄρους λαθόντας, ἢ μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία
 καὶ ἄνδρας παρ-εσκευασμένους. καὶ κλέψαι δὲ οὐκ ἀδύ-
 νατόν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι, ἐπεὶ ἕξ-εστὶν ἡμῖν ἰέναι νυκτὸς,
 ὥστε μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι ὑπερ-βαίνοντας.”

Mutual banter between Gheirisophus and Xenophon.

“Ἄτὰρ τί ἐγὼ συμ-βάλλομαι λόγους περὶ κλοπῆς ;
 200 ἔγωγε γάρ, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἀκούω ὑμᾶς τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους
 εὐθὺς ἐκ παίδων μελετᾶν κλέπτειν, καὶ οὐκ αἰσχρὸν εἶναι
 ἐν ὑμῖν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν ὅσα νόμος μὴ κωλύει.
 ὅπως δὲ ὡς κράτιστα κλέπτητε, νόμιμόν ἐστιν ὑμῖν μαστι-
 γοῦσθαι, ἐὰν ληφθῇτε κλέπτοντες. νῦν οὖν καιρὸς σοί
 205 ἐστὶν ἐπι-δείξασθαι τὴν παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μὴ
 ληφθῶμεν κλέπτοντές τι τοῦ ὄρους, ὅπως μὴ πληγὰς λά-
 βωμεν.” “Ἀλλὰ μέντοι,” ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, “καὶ ἐγὼ
 ἀκούω ὑμᾶς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους δεινοὺς εἶναι κλέπτειν τὰ δημό-
 σια· ὥστε ὦρα ἐστὶ καὶ σοὶ ἐπι-δείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν.”

‘The enemy must be dislodged. Volunteers for the work.’

210 “Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν,” ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, “ἔτοιμός εἰμι,
 ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας, ἰέναι κατα-ληψόμενος τὸ ὄρος.
 ἔχω δὲ καὶ ἡγεμόνας· τούτων δὲ πυνθάνομαι ὅτι τὸ
 ὄρος οὐκ ἄβατόν ἐστι. ἐλπίζω δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους οὐκέτι
 μενεῖν, ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων· οὐδὲ γὰρ νῦν
 215 ἐθέλουσι κατα-βαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν.” ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος
 εἶπε· “Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ ἰέναι καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλα-
 κίαν ; ἀλλὰ πέμψον ἄλλους, ἐὰν μή τινες φαίνονται
 ἐθέλονταί.” ἐκ τούτου ἐθελονταὶ ἐφαίνοντο πολλοί· καὶ
 ἐποιήσαντο σύνθημα, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἅκρα, πυρὰ καίειν
 220 πολλά.

The Greeks gain the heights. Comfortable quarters.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ νύξ ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ἀπ-ήρχοντο, καὶ κατ-έλαβον τὸ ὄρος· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἀν-επαύοντο. ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἦγε κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν, οἱ δὲ κατα-λαβόντες τὸ ὄρος ἐπ-ήεσαν κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. καὶ οὗτοι συμ-μιγνύασι μέρει τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες 225 νικῶσι καὶ διώκουσιν αὐτούς. ἐν τούτῳ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔθεον ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου πρὸς τοὺς παρα-τεταγμένους, Χειρίσοφος δὲ ἐφ-είπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ τῶν πολεμίων, ἐπειδὴ ἑώρων τούτους ἡττωμένους, ἔφευγον· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, θύσαντες καὶ στησάμενοι τρό- 230 παιον, κατ-έβησαν πάλιν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ ἦλθον εἰς κώμας μεστὰς πολλῶν ἐπιτηδείων.

Mountain fortresses of the Taochi.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν εἰς Ταόχους· καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπ-έλιπεν· οἱ γὰρ Τάοχοι ὥκουν χωρία ἰσχυρὰ, εἰς ἃ ἀν-εκομίσαντο πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφ-ίκοντο 235 πρὸς χωρίον τι, ἐν ᾧ καὶ ἄνδρες ἦσαν καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ κτήνη πολλὰ, Χειρίσοφος λέγει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· “Τοῦτο τὸ χωρίον αἰρετέον ἐστὶν ἡμῖν· τῇ γὰρ στρατιᾷ οὐκ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα τὸ χωρίον.” ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐβουλευόντο· καὶ τοῦ Ξενοφώντος ἐρωτῶντος τί κωλύοι 240 αὐτοὺς εἰς-ελθεῖν, ὁ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· “Αὕτη μία ἐστὶ πάροδος, ἣν ὀρᾷς· ὅταν δέ τις πειρᾶται ταύτῃ παρ-ιέναι, οἱ πολέμιοι κυλινδοῦσι λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς πέτρας, καὶ συν-τρίβουσι καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευρὰς τῶν στρατιω-τῶν.”

Preparations for storming the fort.

“Ἀλλὰ,” ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, “τὸ χωρίον, ὃ δεῖ ἡμᾶς δι-ελθεῖν, σχεδὸν τρία ἡμίπλεθρά ἐστι· τούτου δὲ ὅσον πλέθρον δασύ ἐστι πίτυσι μεγάλαις, ὑφ’ αἷς ἐστηκότες ἄνδρες οὐδὲν ἂν πάσχοιεν ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδουμένων λίθων.
 250 τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν χωρίον γίγνεται ὥς ἡμίπλεθρον, ὃ δεῖ παρα-δραμεῖν, ὅταν οἱ πολέμιοι λήγωσι βάλλοντες τοὺς λίθους. πορευόμεθα οὖν ἐνταῦθα, ἔνθεν δεήσῃ ἡμῖν παρα-δραμεῖν μικρόν τι, καὶ ῥάδιον ἔσται ἀπ-ελθεῖν, ἐὰν βουλώμεθα.” ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν καὶ Καλλί-
 255 μαχος λοχαγός· καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἄνθρωποι ἀπ-ῆλθον ὑπὸ τὰ δένδρα ὥς ἐβδομήκοντα, οὐκ ἀθρόοι, ἀλλὰ καθ’ ἕνα, ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὥς ἐδύνατο.

Stratagem of Callimachus. The fort taken. A dreadful scene.

Ἐνθα δὴ Καλλίμαχος μηχανᾷται τι. προ-έτρεχε δύο ἢ τρία βήματα ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου, ὑφ’ ᾧ αὐτὸς ἦν· ἐπειδὴ δὲ
 260 οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀν-εχώρει εὐπετῶς· ἐπεὶ δὲ προ-δράμοι, πλέον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν ἐκάστοτε ἀν-ηλίσκοντο. ὁ δὲ Ἀγασίας, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος αὐτὸς παρα-δράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, ὀρμᾷται μόνος, καὶ παρ-έρχεται πάντας τοὺς ἐταίρους. ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος, ὀρῶν αὐτὸν παρ-ιόντα, ἐπι-
 265 λαμβάνεται αὐτοῦ τῆς ἵτιος· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Ἀριστῶνυμος παρα-τρέχει αὐτοὺς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος· καὶ οὕτως αἰροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. ἐνταῦθα δὴ δεινὸν ἦν θέαμα. αἱ γὰρ γυναῖκες ἔρριπτον τά τε παιδία καὶ ἑαυτὰς κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες ἐποιοῦν ταῦτά. Ἐνθα δὴ
 270 λοχαγός τις ἰδὼν τινα τῶν πολεμίων κατα-ρρίψοντα ἑαυτὸν, στολὴν ἔχοντα καλὴν, ἐπι-λαμβάνεται αὐτῆς· ὁ

δὲ ἐπι-σπᾶται τὸν λοχαγόν· καὶ ἀμφότεροι ὥχοντο κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν φερόμενοι καὶ ἀπ-έθανον. ἐντεῦθεν ἄνθρωποι μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἐλήφθησαν, βόες δὲ καὶ ὄνοι πολλοὶ καὶ πρόβατα.

275

Arrival at Gymnias. 'The sea, the sea!'

Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χαλύβων, καὶ ἀφ-ίκοντο ἐπὶ Ἑρπασον ποταμόν· ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἦλθον πρὸς πόλιν μεγάλην, ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνίας. ἐκ ταύτης τῆς πόλεως ὁ τῆς χώρας ἄρχων πέμπει ἡγεμόνα τοῖς Ἑλλησιν· ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐκεῖνος εἶπεν ὅτι ἄξιοι αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν εἰς χωρίον 280 ὅθεν ὄψοιντο θάλατταν. ὁ δὲ ἡγείτο αὐτοῖς· καὶ ἀφ-ικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους καὶ κατ-εἶδον τὴν θάλατταν, κραυγὴ πολλὴ ἐγένετο. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἀκούσαντες ᾤκηθησαν 285 πολεμίους ἐπι-τίθεσθαι τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν. ἐπειδὴ δὲ βοὴ πλείων ἐγίγνετο, καὶ οἱ αἰὲ ἐπ-ιόντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰὲ βοῶντας, ἐδόκει δὴ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι μεῖζόν τι εἶναι· καὶ ἀνα-βὰς ἐφ' ἵππον καὶ ἀνα-λαβὼν τοὺς ἱππέας παρ-εβοήθει. καὶ τάχα δὴ ἀκούουσι τῶν στρατιωτῶν 290 βοῶντων “θάλαττα, θάλαττα,” καὶ παρα-κελευομένων ἀλλήλοις.

Joy of the Greeks. A guide well rewarded.

Ἐνθα δὴ πάντες ἔθεον, καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ οἱ ἵπποι ἠλαύνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες ἀφ-ίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, ἐνταῦθα δὴ περι-έβαλλον ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατηγούς καὶ 295 λοχαγούς δακρύοντες· καὶ εὐθὺς οἱ στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους καὶ ποιοῦσι κολωνὸν μέγαν. μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλλη-νες ἀπο-πέμπουσι τὸν ἡγεμόνα δῶρα δόντες αὐτῷ, ἵππον

καὶ φιάλην ἀργυρᾶν καὶ σκευὴν Περσικὴν καὶ χρήματα·
 300 ὁ δὲ δείξας αὐτοῖς κώμην, οὗ ἔδει σκηνεῖν, καὶ τὴν ὁδὸν
 ἣν πορεύσονται εἰς Μάκρωνας, ὥχετο τῆς νυκτός.

The Colchians bar the way. A pithy address to the soldiers.

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύοντο διὰ Μακρώνων· οἱ
 δὲ Μάκρωνες παρ-ήγαγον αὐτοὺς ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις ἐπὶ
 τὰ Κόλχων ὄρια. ἐνταῦθα ἦν ὄρος μέγα, καὶ ἐπὶ τούτου
 305 οἱ Κόλχοι παρα-τεταγμένοι ἦσαν. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον οἱ
 Ἕλληνες ἀντι-παρ-ετάξαντο φάλαγγα· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔδοξε τοῖς
 στρατηγοῖς ποιῆσαι ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους. Ξενοφῶν δὲ
 ἀπ-ιών ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἔλεγε τοῖς στρα-
 τιώταις· “Ἄνδρες, οὗτοι οὓς ὁρᾶτε μόνοι ἔτι κωλύουσιν
 310 ἡμᾶς τὸ μὴ ἤδη εἶναι, ἔνθα πάλοι ἐσπεύδομεν ἀφ-ικέσθαι.
 τούτους, εἴαν πως δυνώμεθα, δεῖ καὶ ὠμούς κατα-φαγεῖν.”

Rout of the enemy. Effects of poisonous honey.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο ἐν ταῖς χώραις, καὶ ἐποι-
 ῆσαντο ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους, οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ-ήγγειλαν
 εὐχεσθαι τοῖς θεοῖς. εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες ἐπο-
 315 ρεύοντο. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι, ὡς εἶδον αὐτοὺς δρόμῳ θέοντας,
 ἔφευγον. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ὑπερ-βάντες τὸ ὄρος ἐστρατο-
 πεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμαις πολλαῖς καὶ μέσταις ἐπιτηδείων.
 καὶ σμήνη πολλὰ ἦν αὐτόθι· καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 ἔφαγον τῶν κηρίων, πάντες ἐγίνοντο ἄφρονες, καὶ οὐδεὶς
 320 ἐδύνατο ἴστασθαι ὄρθος. οὕτω δὲ πολλοὶ ἔκειντο, ὥσπερ
 τροπῆς γεγενημένης, καὶ πολλὴ ἦν ἀθυμία· τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ
 οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπ-έθανε, ἀμφὶ δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν ὥραν ἀν-εφρόνουν·
 τρίτῃ δὲ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀν-ίσταντο, ὥσπερ φάρμακον
 πεπώκότες.

Arrival at Trapezus. Festival games.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, 325
 πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἐν τῇ Κόλχων χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἐποίησαν
 ἀγῶνα γυμνικὸν ἐν τῷ ὄρει, ἔνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν. εἶλοντο
 δὲ Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην καθ-ιστάναι τὸν ἀγῶνα, καὶ
 ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν δεῖξαι ὅπου δέοι τρέχειν. ὁ δὲ δείξας τὸν
 λόφον, ἐν ᾧ εἰστήκεσαν, εἶπεν· “Οὗτος ὁ λόφος κάλ- 330
 λιστος ἔσται τῷ ἀγῶνι.” “Πῶς οὖν,” ἔφασαν, “δυνή-
 σονται παλαίειν ἐν χώρᾳ οὕτω σκληρᾷ καὶ δασείᾳ;” ὁ δὲ
 εἶπεν, “Ὁ κατα-πεσὼν μᾶλλον τι ἀνιάσεται.” καὶ παῖδες
 μὲν πολλοὶ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἡγωνίζοντο, Κρήτες δὲ
 πλείους ἢ ἑξήκοντα ἔθعون· πάλῃ δὲ ἦν καὶ πυγμὴ καὶ 335
 παγκράτιον. ἔθعون δὲ καὶ ἵπποι· καὶ ἔδει αὐτοὺς ἐλά-
 σοντας κατὰ τοῦ λόφου ἀνα-στρέψαι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ καὶ
 πάλιν ἄνω ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τὸν βωμόν. καὶ οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ
 ἐκυλινδοῦντο κάτω, οἱ δὲ ἵπποι μόλις ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς τὸ
 ὄρθιον· ἔνθα πολλὴ κραυγὴ καὶ γέλως καὶ παρακέλευσις 340
 ἐγίγνετο.

CHAPTER VI.

TRAPEZUS AND SINOPE.

*The Greeks vote for going home by sea. Cheirisophus goes to
 Byzantium for ships.*

Μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐβουλευόντο περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς
 πορείας· πρῶτος δὲ Ἀντιλέων ἀν-έστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε·

“Εγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀπο-κάμνω ἤδη βαδίζων καὶ τρέχων καὶ φέρων τὰ ὄπλα καὶ φυλάττων φυλακὰς καὶ μαχόμενος· 5 ἐπεὶ δὲ νῦν ἔχομεν θάλατταν, ἐπι-θυμῶ πλεῖν τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς πορείας, καὶ οὕτως ἀφ-ικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.” οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀν-εθορύβησαν ὥς εὐ λέγοι, καὶ πάντες οἱ παρ-όντες ἔλεγον ταῦτά. ἔπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀν-έστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε· “Φίλος μοί ἐστιν, ὦ 10 ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ναύαρχος· ἐὰν οὖν πέμψῃτέ με, ἥξω πάλιν ἔχων καὶ τριήρεις καὶ πλοῖα· ὑμεῖς δὲ περι-μένετε ἔστ’ ἂν ἐγὼ ἔλθω.” ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται ἡσθησάν τε καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο αὐτὸν πλεῖν ὥς τάχιστα.

Foraging. Attack on a fortress of the Drilae.

15 Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ἀν-έμενον· τὸν Χειρίσοφον, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξ-ῆσαν ἐπὶ λείαν· Ξενοφῶν δὲ, λαβὼν ἡγεμόνας τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἐξ-ῆγε τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος εἰς Δρίλας, τὸ δὲ ἥμισυ κατ-έλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἐν τῇ ἄνω χώρᾳ, οἱ Δρίλαι 20 ἐμπιπράντες πολλὰ τῶν χωρίων ἀπ-ῆσαν. ἐν δὲ ἦν χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν· εἰς τοῦτο πάντες συν-ερ-ρυνήκεσαν. περὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἦν χαράδρα ἰσχυρῶς βαθεῖα, καὶ πρόσοδοι χαλεπαὶ πρὸς τὸ χωρίον. οἱ δὲ πελτασταὶ δια-βάντες τὴν χαράδραν προς-έβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· 25 πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ δορυφόροι συν-εἶποντο αὐτοῖς, ὥστε οἱ δια-βάντες ἐγένοντο πλείους ἢ δις-χίλιοι.

An awkward predicament. Xenophon to the rescue!

Ἐπεὶ δὲ μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὸ χωρίον, ἐπ-εχείρουν ἤδη ἀπ-ιέναι. ὥς δὲ οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀπο-

στρέφειν, πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα· ὁ δὲ ἡγείτο τοῖς
 ὀπλίταις. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, πρὸς-αγαγὼν τοὺς ὀπλίτας 30
 πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν, ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα·
 αὐτὸς δὲ δια-βὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ἐσκοπεῖτο τὸ χωρίον.
 καὶ τοὺς μὲν λοχαγοὺς ἔπεμπε πάλιν, ὅπως δια-βιβάσειαν
 τοὺς ὀπλίτας· αὐτὸς δὲ ἔμενεν ἀνα-χωρίσας ἅπαντας τοὺς
 πελταστὰς, καὶ οὐκ εἶα αὐτοὺς ἀκροβολίζεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ 35
 οἱ ὀπλίται ἦκον, ἐκέλευσεν ἕκαστον τῶν λοχαγῶν ποιῆσαι
 τὸν ἑαυτοῦ λόχον.

Vigorous assault. Temporary repulse of the enemy.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐποιοῦν ταῦτα· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐκέλευσε
 τοὺς πελταστὰς ἰέναι δι-ηγκυλωμένους, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας
 ἰέναι ἐπι-βεβλημένους ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς· ἐκέλευσε δὲ καὶ 40
 τοὺς γυμνῆτας ἔχειν τὰς διφθέρας μεστὰς λίθων. ἐπεὶ δὲ
 πάντα παρ-εσκεύαστο, καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο, οἱ
 ὀπλίται παιανίσαντες ἔθεον δρόμῳ· καὶ τὰ βέλη ὁμοῦ
 ἐφέρετο, λόγχαι, τοξεύματα, σφενδόνας, πλείστοι δὲ ἐκ
 τῶν χειρῶν λίθοι· ἦσαν δὲ οἱ καὶ πῦρ πρὸς-έφερον. ὑπὸ 45
 δὲ τοῦ πλήθους τῶν βελῶν οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλιπον τὰ τε
 σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς τύρσεις· ὥστε Ἀγασίας καὶ Φιλόξενος,
 κατα-θέμενοι τὰ ὄπλα, ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον ἀν-έβησαν, καὶ
 ἄλλοι μετὰ τούτους· καὶ τὸ χωρίον ἠλώκει, ὥς ἐδόκει.

The Greeks begin to plunder, but are forced to beat a retreat.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν πελτασταὶ καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ εἰς-δραμόντες 50
 ἥρπαζον ὅ τι ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν στὰς κατὰ
 τὰς πύλας κατ-εκώλυσεν τοὺς ὀπλίτας ἔξω· πολέμιοι γὰρ
 ἄλλοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπ' ἄκροις τισὶν ἰσχυροῖς. μετὰ δὲ
 ὀλίγον χρόνον κραυγὴ τε ἐγένετο ἔνδον, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες

55 ἔφευγον, οἱ μὲν ἔχοντες ἃ ἔλαβον, οἱ δὲ καὶ τετρωμένοι·
καὶ πολλὸς ἦν ὤθισμός τις ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. καὶ οἱ ἐκ-
πίπτοντες ἔλεγον ὅτι ἄκρᾱ τε εἴη ἔνδον, καὶ πολλοὶ πολέμιοι
ἐν αὐτῇ, οἱ ἐκ-δεδραμηκότες παίοιεν τοὺς ἔνδον ἀνθρώπους.

Attack upon the inner fort, at first unsuccessful.

Ἐνταῦθα ἐκέλευσε τὸν κήρυκα ἀν-ειπεῖν, τοὺς βουλομέ-
60 νους τι λαμβάνειν ἰέναι εἴσω. καὶ πολλοὶ εἰς-ῆσαν, καὶ
κατ-έκλεισαν τοὺς πολεμίους πάλιν εἰς τὴν ἄκραν. καὶ
τὰ μὲν ἔξω τῆς ἀκρας πάντα δι-ηρπάσθη, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
ἐξ-εκομίσαντο τὴν λείαν· οἱ δὲ ὀπλίται ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα,
οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, οἱ δὲ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν τὴν
65 φέρουσιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ
ἐσκόπουν εἰ δυνατόν εἴη λαβεῖν τὴν ἄκραν· ἔδοξε δ' αὐ-
τοῖς τὸ χωρίον οὐ ληπτέον εἶναι. ἔνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες
ἤρξαντο ἀπο-χωρεῖν· χωρούντων δ' αὐτῶν πολλοὶ τῶν
πολεμίων ἐξ-έθεον ἔχοντες γέρρα καὶ λόγχας· καὶ ἄλλοι
70 ἀν-έβαινον ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας, καὶ ἐπ-έρριπτον ξύλα μέγαλα
ἄνωθεν, ὥστε χαλεπὸν ἦν καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπ-ιέναι.

The Greeks set fire to the houses. The fortress taken.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ἐμάχοντο καὶ ἡποροῦντο, θεῶν τις δίδωσιν
αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας. ἐξαπίνης γὰρ οἰκία τις ἐν
δεξιᾷ ἀν-έλαμψε, καὶ πάντες ἔφευγον ἀπὸ τῶν ἐν
75 δεξιᾷ οἰκιῶν. ὥς δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔμαθε τοῦτο, ἐκέλευεν
ἐν-άπτειν καὶ τὰς ἐν ἀριστερᾷ οἰκίας, αἱ ἦσαν ξύλιναι,
ὥστε καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. οἱ δ' οὖν πολέμιοι ἔφευγον καὶ
ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκιῶν. ἔνταῦθα ἐκέλευσε φέρειν ξύλα
εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ξύλα
80 ἱκανὰ ἦν, ἐν-ῆψαν· καὶ οὕτω μόλις ἀπ-ῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ

χωρίου, ποιησάμενοι πῦρ ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. καὶ πᾶσα ἡ πόλις κατ-εκαύθη, καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι καὶ αἱ τύρσεις καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τὰ ἄλλα πάντα κατ-εκαύθησαν, πλὴν αὐτῆς τῆς ἄκρας.

No news of Cheirisophus. The Greeks leave Trapezus for Cerasus.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπ-ῆσαν ἔχοντες τὰ 85 ἐπιτήδεια. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὔτε Χειρίσοφος ἦκεν, οὔτε πλοῖα ἱκανὰ ἦν, οὔτε ἔτι ἦν λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπ-ιτέον εἶναι τῆς Τραπεζοῦντος. καὶ εἰς μὲν τὰ πλοῖα ἐν-εβίβασαν τοὺς τε ἀσθενοῦντας καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ 90 τετταράκοντα ἔτη, καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας, καὶ τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μὴ ἀνάγκη ἦν ἔχειν· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ γῆν. καὶ ἀφ-ικνοῦντο πορευόμενοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα, πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δέκα· καὶ ἐξέτασις ἐγένετο καὶ ἀριθμὸς τῆς στρατιᾶς· καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισ-χίλιοι καὶ 95 ἑξακόσιοι.

Among the Mossynoeci. Their barbarous manners.

Ἐκ Κερασοῦντος δὲ πορεύονται ἐπὶ τὰ Μοσσυνοίκων ὄρια, καὶ αἰροῦσι χωρίου τι ὑψηλὸν ἐν τῇ ἐκείνων χώρα. τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα τούτων τῶν χωρίων τοιάδε ἦν. αἱ πόλεις ἀπ-εἶχον ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ὅσον ὀγδοήκοντα στάδια· ἀνα- 100 βοώντων δὲ ἀλλήλων συν-ήκουον ἐκ τῆς ἐτέρας πόλεως εἰς τὴν ἐτέραν· οὕτως ὑψηλὴ τε καὶ κοίλη ἡ χώρα ἦν. πορευόμενοι δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον παῖδας τινὰς τῶν εὐδαιμόνων σιτευτοὺς, τεθραμμένους καρύοις ἐφθοῖς, ἀπαλοὺς καὶ σφόδρα λευκοὺς, ποικίλους δὲ τὰ νῶτα καὶ 105

τὰ ἔμπροσθεν πάντα ἐστιγμένους. πάντες δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες
καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες ἦσαν λευκοί. τούτους οἱ στρατευσάμενοι
ἔλεγον βαρβαρωτάτους εἶναι πάντων, οὓς δι-έλθοιεν. ἐν
τε γὰρ ὄχλῳ ὄντες ἐποιοῦν ἅπερ ἄνθρωποι ἐν ἐρημίᾳ ἂν
110 ποιήσειαν, μόνοι τε ὄντες ἔπραττον ἅπερ μετ' ἄλλων
ὄντες πράξειαν ἄν. δι-ελέγοντό τε ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐγέλων
ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ὠρχοῦντο ὅπου τύχοιεν ὄντες, ὥσπερ
ἐπι-δεικνύμενοι ἄλλοις τὴν ἐμπειρίαν.

*Cotyora. Embassy from Sinope. The Greeks enquire about
their route.*

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύθησαν ὁκτὼ
115 σταθμοὺς, καὶ ἀφ-ικνοῦνται εἰς Χάλυβας. ἐντεῦθεν ἀφ-
ικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοὺς, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα πορευόμενοι δύο
ἡμέρας ἀφ-ίκουντο εἰς Κοτύωρα πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα. ἐνταῦθα
ἔμειναν ἡμέρας τετταράκοντα πέντε. ἐν δὲ ταύταις
πρῶτον μὲν ἔθυσαν τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ ἐποίησαν πομπὰς καὶ
120 ἀγῶνας γυμνικούς. τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ἐλάμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ
τῆς Παφλαγονίας, τὰ δὲ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν.
ἐν τούτῳ ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης πρέσβεις, προ-ηγόρει δὲ
αὐτῶν Ἑκατόννυμος, δεινὸς ὢν λέγειν. οὗτοι δὲ εἶπον ὅτι
οὐκ ἤκοιεν ποιησόμενοι πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ ἐπι-δείζοντες ὅτι
125 φίλοι εἶεν. ἐκ τούτου οἱ τε Κοτυωρίται ἐπεμπον ξένια,
καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον τοὺς τῶν
Σινωπέων πρέσβεις· καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο αὐτῶν περὶ τῆς
λοιπῆς πορείας, εἰ κατὰ γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν δέοι
πορεύεσθαι.

Answer of Hecatonymus. 'A land journey is impossible; you must go by sea to Heraclea.'

Ὁ δὲ Ἑκατόνυμος ἀνα-στὰς εἶπεν· “Οἶδα μὲν ὅτι 130
 ἡμεῖς ἔξομεν πολὺ πλείω πράγματα, ἐὰν κατὰ θάλατταν
 κομίζησθε· δεήσει γὰρ ἡμᾶς πορίζειν τὰ πλοῖα· ἐὰν δὲ
 κατὰ γῆν πορεύησθε, ὑμᾶς δεήσει εἶναι τοὺς μαχομένους.
 ὅμως δὲ δεῖ λέγειν ἃ γινώσκω· ἔμπειρος γάρ εἰμι τῆς
 τῶν Παφλαγόνων χώρας. ἔχει δὲ καὶ πεδία κάλλιστα 135
 καὶ ὄρη ὑψηλότατα· τούτων δὲ κατ-εχομένων ὑπὸ τῶν
 πολεμίων, οὐδὲ οἱ πάντες ἄνθρωποι δύναιντο ἂν δι-ελθεῖν.
 εἰ δὲ καὶ δύναισθε ὑπερ-βῆναι τὰ ὄρη, καὶ κρατῆσαι τῶν
 Παφλαγόνων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, ἥξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς ποταμοὺς,
 πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμώδοντα, δεύτερον δὲ Ἴριν, τρίτον δὲ 140
 Ἄλυν, ὧν οὐδένα ἂν δύναισθε δια-βῆναι ἄνευ πλοίων· τίς
 δὲ παρ-έξει ὑμῖν τὰ πλοῖα; ἐὰν δὲ δια-βῆτε τὸν Ἄλυν,
 ἀφ-ίξεσθε ἐπὶ τὸν Παρθένιον, ὃς ἄβατός ἐστιν ὡσαύτως.
 ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν νομίζω τὴν κατὰ γῆν πορείαν εἶναι παντά-
 πασιν ἀδύνατον· ἐὰν δὲ πλέητε, ἐνθένδε μὲν παρα- 145
 πλεύσεσθε εἰς Σινώπην, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν·
 πολλὰ δὲ πλοῖά ἐστιν ἐν Ἡρακλείᾳ.” οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες,
 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, ἐψηφίσαντο ἰέναι κατὰ θάλατταν.

Xenophon's grand project. Silanus creates an alarm.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἐδόκει Ξενοφῶντι καλὸν εἶναι
 πόλιν κατ-οικίσαι ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ, καὶ οὕτω προσ-κτήσασθαι 150
 χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύετο
 λάθρα τῶν στρατιωτῶν, παρα-καλέσας Σιλανὸν, τὸν Κύρου
 μάντιν γενόμενον. ὁ δὲ Σιλανὸς, δεδιὼς μὴ ταῦτα γένοιτο
 καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ κατα-μείνειεν (ἐβούλετο γὰρ ὥς τάχιστα
 ἀφ-ικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα), ἔλεγε πρὸς τὸ στράτευμα 155

ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλοιτο οἰκίσαι πόλιν αὐτόθι, καὶ ποιή-
 σασθαι ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν ἑαυτῷ. τοῖς δὲ πολλοῖς τῶν
 στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν ταῦτα, ἐδόκει βέλτιστον εἶναι
 μὴ κατα-μεῖναι ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ. Τιμασίῳν δὲ καὶ Θώραξ
 160 ἐφόβησαν ἐμπόρους τινὰς παρ-όντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν καὶ
 Σινωπέων, λέγοντες ὅτι κίνδυνος εἴη πολὺς, εἰ τοσαύτη
 δύναμις μένειεν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.

Timasion offers to settle the Greeks in Troas.

Οἱ δὲ ἔμποροι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπ-ήγγελλον ταῖς
 πόλεσι· Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται πέμπουσι πρὸς
 165 τὸν Τιμασίωνα, καὶ κελεύουσιν αὐτὸν πείθειν τὴν στρατιὰν
 ἐξ-ελθεῖν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου. ὁ δὲ συλ-λέξας τοὺς στρα-
 τιώτας λέγει τάδε· “Οὐ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε μένειν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 ἀλλὰ ὡς τάχιστα ἀπ-ιέναι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα. ἀκούω δὲ
 τινὰς θύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτῳ λάθρα ὑμῶν. ὑπ-ισχυοῦμαι δὲ
 170 ὑμῖν, ἐὰν ἐκ-πλήητε, παρ-έξειν ὑμῖν μισθόν· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς
 εἰς τὴν Τρωάδα, ἔνθεν εἰμὶ φυγὰς, καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ πόλις ὑπ-
 ἀρξει ὑμῖν· ἡγήσομαι δὲ ὑμᾶς καὶ ἄλλοσε, ἔνθεν λήψεσθε
 πολλὰ χρήματα.”

Xenophon's defence. i. ‘My only object is your welfare; if
 Silanus says otherwise, he speaks falsely.’

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ μὲν ἐσίγα· ὕστερον δὲ ἀνα-
 175 στὰς εἶπε τάδε· “Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι καὶ ὑπὲρ
 ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἑμαυτοῦ, ὅπως ταῦτα λέξω καὶ νοήσω καὶ
 πράξω, ἃ ἔσται κάλλιστα ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἐμοί. καὶ νῦν
 ἐθυόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου, εἰ ἄμεινον εἴη λέγειν εἰς
 ὑμᾶς ἅπερ ἐν νῷ ἔχω πράττειν, ἢ παντάπασι σιγᾷ περὶ
 180 τούτων. Σίλανος δὲ ὁ μάντις ἀπ-εκρίνατό μοι τὰ μὲν

ἱερὰ εἶναι καλά· ἔλεξε δὲ ὅτι ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς φαίνοιτό τις δόλος καὶ ἐπιβουλὴ ἐμοί· ἐγὶ γνωσκε γὰρ ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε δια-βάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς, λέγων ὡς ἐγὼ διανοοίμην πράττειν ταῦτα λάθρα ὑμῶν.”

ii. ‘I now give up my project ; let us return to Greece.’

“Ἐγὼ δὲ, εἰ μὲν ἑώρων ὑμᾶς ἀποροῦντας τῶν ἐπιτη- 185
δείων, ἐσκόπουν ἂν τοῦτο, ὅπως ὑμεῖς λαβόντες πόλιν
τινὰ ἀπο-πλεύσαιτε ἤδη, εἰ βούλοισθε· εἰ δὲ μὴ βού-
λοισθε ἀπ-ιέναι, ἐσκόπουν ὅπως ἐνθάδε μένοντες κτήσασθε
 χρήματα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁρῶ Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινωπέας
πέμποντας ὑμῖν πλοῖα, καὶ ἄνδρας τινὰς ὑπ-ισχνουμένους 190
ὑμῖν μισθὸν, καλὸν μοι δοκεῖ εἶναι ἡμᾶς σωζομένους
ἀπο-πλεῖν· καὶ αὐτὸς τε παύομαι ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ
τοὺς ἄλλους χρήναί φημι παύεσθαι, ὅσοι σὺν ἐμοὶ δι-
ενοοῦντο ταῦτα. γιγνώσκω γὰρ ὅτι ὁμοῦ μὲν ὄντες
πολλοὶ, ὥσπερ νῦν ἔστε, καὶ ἔντιμοι ἔσεσθε καὶ ἔξετε τὰ 195
ἐπιτήδεια· ἐὰν δὲ δια-σπασθῇτε καὶ ὀλίγοι γένησθε, οὔτε
δυνήσεσθε λαμβάνειν τροφὴν, οὔτε καλῶς ἀπο-χωρεῖν.
ταῦτα οὖν δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ ἄπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκ-πορεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν
Ἑλλάδα· καὶ ἐάν τις ἀπο-λίπη ἡμᾶς, πρὶν πᾶν τὸ στρά-
τευμα εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ, τοῦτον κρίνεσθαι ὡς ἀδικοῦντα.” 200

*Silanus foiled in his object. New project of Timasion
and Thorax.*

Ἐπὶ τούτοις ἅπαντες ἀν-έτειναν τὰς χεῖρας· ὁ δὲ
Σιλανὸς ἐβόα, λέγων ὡς δίκαιον εἶη ἀπ-ιέναι τὸν βουλό-
μενον. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἠπεύλουν αὐτῷ ὅτι, εἰ λήψοιντο
ἀπο-διδράσκοντα, κολάσειαν αὐτόν. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ Ἡρα-
κλεῶται τὰ μὲν πλοῖα πέμπουσι, τὰ δὲ χρήματα, ἃ ὑπ- 205
έσχοντο Τιμασίῳ καὶ Θώρακι, οὐκ ἔφασαν δώσειν.

ἐνταῦθα δὴ Τιμασίων καὶ Θώραξ, παρα-λαβόντες τοὺς
 ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου, ἔρχονται
 πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς ἤδη
 210 κράτιστον εἶναι πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ κατα-σχεῖν τὴν
 Φασιανῶν χώραν. Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο ὅτι οὐκ ἂν
 εἴποι ταῦτα εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· “ὕμεῖς δὲ,” ἔφη, “συν-
 λέξαντες τοὺς στρατιώτας, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε.”

Dissatisfaction of the army. Xenophon calls a meeting.

Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα πραττόμενα· καὶ ὁ
 215 Νέων ἔλεγεν ὡς Ξενοφῶν δια-νοοῖτο ἄγειν τοὺς στρατιώ-
 τας πάλιν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσαντες δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται
 χαλεπῶς ἔφερον ταῦτα· καὶ σύλλογοι ἐγίνοντο αὐτῶν
 καὶ κύκλοι συν-ίσταντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤσθάνετο,
 ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα συν-αγαγεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας,
 220 καὶ μὴ ἑᾶσαι αὐτοὺς συν-λεγεῖν αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέ-
 λευσε τὸν κήρυκα συν-λέγειν ἐκκλησίαν. οἱ δὲ, ἐπεὶ
 ἤκουσαν τοῦ κήρυκος, συν-ἔδραμον μάλα ἐτοίμως. ἐνταῦθα
 ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν ὧδε·

*Xenophon's second defence. i. 'The reports against me are
 false; I could not deceive you if I would.'*

“Ἀκούω τινα δια-βάλλειν ἐμὲ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὡς ἐγὼ ἐξ-
 225 ἀπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς Φᾶσιν. ἀκούσατε οὖν
 ἐμοῦ λέγοντος· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, ἐπι-
 θέτε μοι δίκην· ἐὰν δὲ οἱ ἐμὲ δια-βάλλοντες φαίνωνται
 ὑμῖν ἀδικεῖν, οὕτω χρήσθε αὐτοῖς, ὥσπερ ἄξιόν ἐστι.
 ὑμεῖς δὲ, οἶμαι, ἴστε ὅθεν ἥλιος ἀν-ίσχει, καὶ ὅπου δύεται·
 230 καὶ ὅτι ἐὰν μὲν τις εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα μέλλῃ ἰέναι, πρὸς
 ἑσπέραν δεῖ πορεύεσθαι, ἐὰν δέ τις βούληται ἰέναι εἰς

τοὺς βαρβάρους, ὅτι δεῖ πορεύεσθαι πρὸς ἔω. ἐπίστασθε δὲ καὶ τοῦτο, ὅτι βορέας μὲν φέρει ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νότος δὲ φέρει εἰς τὴν Φᾶσιν· καὶ λέγετε, ὅταν βορέας πνέῃ, ὡς καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. 235 τίς οὖν δύναίτο ἂν ἐξ-απατήσαι ὑμᾶς ἢ πείσαι ἐμ-βαίνειν, ὅταν νότος πνέῃ;”

ii. *‘Neither could I force you to accompany me. These calumnies proceed from pure jealousy.’*

“Ἄλλὰ καὶ ἐὰν ἐμ-βιβάσω ὑμᾶς, ὅταν γαλήνη ᾖ, ἐγὼ μὲν ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ πλεύσομαι, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐν ἑκατόν. πῶς οὖν ἐγὼ ἂν βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς πλεῖν σὺν ἐμοὶ μὴ βουλο- 240 μένους; καὶ δὴ ἐὰν ἐξ-απατήσας ἄγω ὑμᾶς εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ ἀπο-βαίνωμεν εἰς τὴν χώραν, γνώσεσθε ὅτι οὐκ ἐστε ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι, καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἔσομαι εἰς, ὑμεῖς δὲ ἔσεσθε μυρίοι, ἔχοντες ὅπλα. ἀλλὰ οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι ἀνδρῶν ἡλιθίων, οἱ φθονοῦσιν ἐμοὶ, ὅτι ἐγὼ τιμῶμαι ὑφ’ ὑμῶν. 245 καίτοι οὐδὲν αὐτῶν ἢ λέγειν περὶ τοῦ κοινοῦ ἀγαθοῦ ἢ μάχεσθαι ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν τε καὶ ἑαυτοῦ. ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἀρκεῖ ἐμοὶ, ἃ εἶρηκα περὶ τούτων· εἰ δέ τιτι ὑμῶν ἄλλο τι δοκεῖ, λεξάτω.”

250

Xenophon accused of harsh dealing. A witness examined.

Ἐκ τούτου πάντες ἀν-ιστάμενοι ἔλεγον τοὺς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα δια-βαλόντας δοῦναι δίκην· ἔδοξε δὲ καὶ τοὺς στρατηγούς ὑπο-σχεῖν δίκην τῶν ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ πεπραγμένων. ἐνταῦθα δὴ κατ-ηγόρησάν τινες Ξενοφῶντος, φάσκοντες παῖεσθαι ὑπ’ αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ. 255 καὶ ὁ Ξενοφὼν ἐκέλευσε τὸν πρῶτον λέξαντα εἰπεῖν ποῦ

καὶ ἐπλήγη. ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “Ὅπου ἀπ-ωλλύμεθα τῷ
 ῥίγῃ, καὶ χιῶν πλείστη ἦν.” ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν·
 “Ἄλλὰ μὴν, εἰ ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ ὕβριζον, ὁμολογῶ
 260 ὕβριστότερος εἶναι τῶν ὄνων· ὅμως δὲ καὶ λέξον, διὰ
 τί ἐπλήγης· πότερον ἤτουν τί σε, καὶ ἔπαιόν σε, ἐπεὶ
 μοι οὐκ ἐδίδους; ἢ ἀπ-ήτουν τι; ἢ μεθύων σε ὕβριζον;”
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ ἀνὴρ εἶπεν οὐδὲν εἶναι τούτων, ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 ἐπ-ήρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ὀπλιτεύοι. οὐκ ἔφη ὁ ἀνὴρ. πάλιν
 265 ἤρετο αὐτὸν εἰ πελτάζοι. οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἔφη, ἀλλὰ ἐλαύνειν
 ἡμίονον κελευσθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν συσκήνων.

*Barbarity of a soldier towards his comrade. Xenophon
 amply justified.*

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀν-εγίνωσκεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἤρετο·
 “Ἡ σὺ εἶ ὁ τὸν κάμνοντα ἀγαγών;” “Ναί,” ἔφη ὁ ἀνὴρ,
 “σὺ γὰρ ἡνάγκαζές με τοῦτο ποιῆσαι· δι-έρριψας δὲ τὰ
 270 τῶν ἐμῶν συσκήνων σκεύη.” “Ἄλλὰ ἡ μὲν διάρριψις,”
 ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, “ὧδέ πως ἐγένετο· δι-έδωκα τὰ σκεύη
 ἄλλοις ἄγειν, καὶ ἐκέλευσα ἀπ-αγαγεῖν αὐτὰ πρὸς ἐμέ·
 καὶ ἀπο-λαβὼν ἀπ-έδωκά σοι ἅπαντα σῶα, ἐπειδὴ καὶ σὺ
 ἀπ-έδειξας ἐμοὶ τὸν ἄνδρα. ὑμεῖς δὲ ἀκούσατε οἷον τὸ
 275 πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο. ἀνὴρ κατ-ελείπετο διὰ τὸ μηκέτι δύ-
 νασθαι πορεύεσθαι· καὶ ἐγὼ ἡνάγκασά σε ἄγειν αὐτὸν,
 ὅπως μὴ ἀπ-όλοιτο· καὶ γὰρ πολέμιοι ἐφ-είποντο ἡμῖν.
 ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκέλευσά σε προ-ιέναι, ὕστερον κατ-έλαβόν σε
 ὀρύττοντα βόθρον, ὥς κατ-ορύξοντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον. ἐπεὶ
 280 δὲ, παρ-εστηκότων ἡμῶν, ὁ ἀνὴρ συν-έκαμψε τὸ σκέλος,
 οἱ παρ-όντες συν-έκραγον ὅτι ζῶν· σὺ δὲ εἶπες, ‘Εἴτε ζῇ,
 εἴτε τέθνηκεν, ἔγωγε οὐκ ἄξω αὐτόν.’ ἐνταῦθα ἔπαισά
 σε· ἔδοξας γάρ μοι εἰδέναι ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ ἔζη.” “Τί οὖν;”
 ἔφη, “ἦττόν τι ἀπ-έθανεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ σοι ἀπ-έδειξα

αὐτόν;” “Καὶ γὰρ ἡμεῖς,” ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, “πάντες ἀπο- 285
θανούμεθα· τούτου οὖν ἕνεκα δεῖ ἡμᾶς ζῶντας κατ-ορυχθῆ-
ναι;” ἐνταῦθα πάντες ἀν-έκραγον ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν παῖσειεν
αὐτὸν ὀλίγας πληγὰς.

Xenophon continues his defence. i. ‘My seeming harshness was justified by circumstances.’

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐκέλευεν ἄλλους λέγειν διὰ τί ἕκαστος
ἐπλήγη. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀν-ίστατο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν· “Ἐγὼ, 290
ὦ ἄνδρες, ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι δὴ ἄνδρας ἐνίοτε, ὅσοι λιπόντες
τὰς τάξεις καὶ προ-θέοντες ἤθελον ἀρπάζειν τε καὶ πλεον-
εκτεῖν ἡμῶν. εἰ δὲ πάντες ἐποιοῦμεν τοῦτο, ἅπαντες
ἀν ἀπ-ωλόμεθα. ἔπαισα δὲ καὶ τινὰς ἀνα-παυομένους
καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντας ἀν-ίστασθαι, καὶ ἐβιασάμην τοιούτους 295
πορεύεσθαι. καὶ γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι χαλεπὸν ἦν
καὶ ἐμαυτῷ, καθ-εζομένῳ πολὺν χρόνον, ἀνα-στήναι καὶ
ἐκ-τεῖναι τὰ σκέλη. διὰ τοῦτο οὖν, ὅποτε ἴδοιμι ἄλλον
τινὰ καθ-ήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα, ἤλαυνον αὐτόν· τὸ μὲν
γὰρ κινεῖσθαι παρ-εῖχε θερμασίαν τινὰ καὶ ὑγρότητα, ὑπὸ 300
δὲ τοῦ καθ-ῆσθαι τό τε αἷμα ἐπήγνυτο καὶ οἱ δάκτυλοι τῶν
ποδῶν ἀπ-εσήποντο· ἅπερ πολλοὶ καὶ ὑμῶν ἔπαθον.
ἄλλους δὲ γε ἴσως ἀπο-λειπομένους ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ καὶ κω-
λύοντας τὸ στράτευμα πορεύεσθαι ἔπαισα πῦξ, ὅπως μὴ
παίοντο ταῖς τῶν πολεμίων λόγχαις. 305

ii. ‘Now that we are out of danger, I am no longer severe.’

iii. ‘I demand justice at your hands.’

“Καὶ εἰ μὲν ἐπὶ ἀγαθῷ ἐκόλασά τινα, ἀξιῶ τοιαύτην
δοῦναι δίκην, οἷαν καὶ γονεῖς διδοῦσιν υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι
παισὶ. εἰ δὲ νομίζετέ με ταῦτα πράττειν ὕβρει, ἐν-θυμή-
θητε ὅτι νῦν ἐγὼ θρασύτερός εἰμι ἢ τότε, καὶ πίνω πλείω

310 οἶνον, ἀλλ' ὅμως παίω οὐδένα· ὁρῶ γὰρ ὑμᾶς ὄντας ἐν
 εὐδία. ὅταν δὲ χειμῶν ᾗ, ἴστε ὅτι καὶ μικροῦ ἔνεκεν
 ἀμαρτήματος ὁ μὲν πρωρεὺς χαλεπαίνει τοῖς ἐν πρῶρα,
 ὁ δὲ κυβερνήτης χαλεπαίνει τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ· ἐν γὰρ τῷ
 τοιούτῳ καιρῷ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτήματα ἐμ-ποιήσει μεγάλας
 315 συμφοράς. θαυμάζω δὲ ὅτι, εἰ μὲν τινι ὑμῶν ἀπ-ηχθόμην,
 μέμνησθε τούτου, εἰ δέ τινα εὖ ἐποίησα ἢ ἐπ-ήνεσα ἢ
 ἐτίμησα, οὐδεὶς μέμνηται τούτων. ἀλλὰ μὴν καλὸν γέ
 ἐστι καὶ δίκαιον μεμνησθαι τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν
 κακῶν.” ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀν-ίσταντο καὶ ἐπ-ήνουν τὸν
 320 Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ πάντα περι-εγένετο ὥστε καλῶς ἔχειν.

*Embassy of the Paphlagonians. The Greeks entertain the
 ambassadors.*

Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες, ἕως ἐνταῦθα ἔμενον, ἐληΐζοντο
 τὴν Παφλαγονίαν· οἱ δὲ Παφλαγόνες ἐκακούργουν τοὺς
 Ἕλληνας ἀντὶ τούτων. Κορύλας δὲ ὁ Παφλαγονίας
 ἄρχων πέμπει πρέσβεις παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, λέγοντας
 325 ὅτι Κορύλας ἔτοιμος εἶη φίλος εἶναι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὥστε
 μήτε ἀδικεῖν μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ ἀπ-εκρί-
 ναντο ὅτι περὶ μὲν τούτων βουλευσούντο σὺν τῇ στρατιᾷ,
 ἐδέχοντο δὲ αὐτοὺς ὥς ξένους. θύσαντες δὲ βοῦς καὶ
 ἄλλα ἱερεῖα ἐδείπνουν καὶ ἔπινον σὺν αὐτοῖς.

The entertainment begins with a Thracian pantomime.

330 Ἐπεὶ δὲ σπονδαί τε ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν, πρῶτον
 μὲν Θρᾶκες ἀν-έστησαν καὶ ὠρχήσαντο πρὸς αὐλὸν σὺν
 τοῖς ὅπλοις, καὶ ἥλλοντο κούφως, καὶ ἐχρῶντο τοῖς
 μαχαίραις. τέλος δὲ ὁ ἕτερος ἔπαισε τὸν ἕτερον, καὶ
 πᾶσιν ἐδόκει τὸν ἄνδρα τεθνηκέναι· ὁ δὲ ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς

πως, καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἀν-έκραγον· καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν 335
τὰ ὅπλα τοῦ ἐτέρου ἐξ-ῆει ἄδων τὸν Σίταλκαν· ἄλλοι
δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν ἐξ-έφερον τὸν ἕτερον ὡς τεθυηκότα·
ἐπεπόνθει δὲ οὐδέν.

The 'Carpaian' dance described.

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἄλλοι ἀν-έστησαν, καὶ ὠρχοῦντο τὴν
Καρπαίαν ὄρχησιν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις· ὁ δὲ τρόπος τῆς 340
ὀρχήσεως ὧδε ἦν. ὁ μὲν παρα-θέμενος τὰ ὅπλα σπείρει
καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ, πολλάκις στρεφόμενος ὡς φοβούμενος·
ἕτερος δὲ ὡς ληστής προς-έρχεται. ὁ δὲ ἰδὼν τὸν
ληστήν ἀρπάζει τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ μάχεται ὑπὲρ τοῦ ζεύγους·
καὶ τέλος ὁ ληστής δῆσας τὸν ἄνδρα ἀπ-άγει αὐτόν τε 345
καὶ τὸ ζεῦγος. ἐνίστε δὲ καὶ ὁ ζευγηλάτης νικᾷ τὸν
ληστήν· εἰτα δῆσας ὀπίσω τῷ χεῖρι ἀπ-ελαύνει αὐτόν.

A Mysian performance. War dances. The Pyrrhic dance.

Μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰς-ῆλθεν ἔχων πέλτην ἐν ἑκατέρᾳ
τῇ χειρί. καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὠρχεῖτο, ὡς δυοῖν ἀντι-ταπτομένοιν
αὐτῷ, τοτὲ δὲ ἐχρήτο ταῖς πέλταις ὡς πρὸς ἓνα, τότε δὲ 350
ἐδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξ-εκυβίστα ἔχων τὰς πέλτας· καὶ ὄψις καλὴ
ἐφαίνετο. τέλος δὲ ὠρχεῖτο τὸ Περσικόν, κρούων
τὰς πέλτας, καὶ ὠκλαζε καὶ ἐξ-ανίστατο· καὶ ἐποίει
ταῦτα πάντα ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν. ἐνταῦθα εἰς-
ιόντες οἱ Μαντινεῖς καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν Ἀρκαδῶν ἐξ- 355
οπλισάμενοι, ἤεσαν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ, καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν καὶ
ὠρχήσαντο. οἱ δὲ Παφλαγόνες ὀρῶντες ἐθαύμαζον
πάσας τὰς ὀρχήσεις εἶναι ἐν ὅπλοις. ὁ δὲ Μυσὸς ὀρῶν
αὐτοὺς θαυμάζοντας εἰς-άγει ὀρχηστρίδα, σκεύσας
αὐτὴν ὡς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα, καὶ δοὺς αὐτῇ ἀσπίδα 360

κούφην. ἡ δὲ ὥρχήσατο τὴν Πυρρίχην ὄρχησιν ἐλαφ-
ρῶς. ἐνταῦθα κρότος ἦν πολὺς· καὶ τοῦτο τὸ τέλος
ταύτῃ τῇ νυκτὶ ἐγένετο.

Terms of peace concluded. The Greeks sail to Sinope.

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ πρὸς-ἤγον τοὺς πρέσβεις
365 εἰς τὸ στράτευμα· καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις μήτε ἀδικεῖν
Παφλαγόνας μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑπ' αὐτῶν. μετὰ τοῦτο
οἱ μὲν πρέσβεις ὥχοντο· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες, ἐπειδὴ πλοῖα
ἱκανὰ ἐδόκει παρ-εῖναι, ἀνα-βάντες ἔπλεον ἡμέραν καὶ
νύκτα πνεύματι καλῶ. καὶ ἀφ-ικόμενοι εἰς Σινώπην
370 ὠρμίσαντο εἰς Ἀρμήνην, λιμένα τῆς Σινώπης. Σινω-
πεῖς δὲ πέμπουσι ξένια τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ἄλφιτα καὶ
οἶνον.

CHAPTER VII.

SINOPE TO CHRYSOPOLIS.

Cheirisophus returns. Xenophon is offered the sole command.

Καὶ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμήνῃ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔμειναν ἡμέρας
πέντε· ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος ἦλθεν ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἔχων
τριήρη. οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται, ὥς ἐδόκουν ἤδη γίνεσθαι
ἐγγὺς τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἐπ-εθύμουν μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν ἀφ-
5 ικέσθαι οἴκαδε. ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς ἐλέσθαι ἓνα ἄρχοντα,
καὶ τραπόμενοι ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα ἔπειθον αὐτὸν δέ-
χεσθαι τὴν ἀρχήν. ὁ δὲ ἐβούλετο μὲν ἄρχειν, νομίζων

τιμὴν ἑαυτῷ μείζω οὕτως ἂν γενέσθαι· ὅποτε δ' αὖ ἐν-
θυμοῖτο ὅτι τὸ μέλλον ἄδηλόν ἐστι παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ, καὶ
ὅτι διὰ τοῦτο κίνδυνος εἴη μὴ ἀπο-βάλῃ καὶ τὴν προ- 10
ειργασμένην δόξαν, ἡπορεῖτο.

Xenophon interprets the omens, and refuses the command.

Ἀπορουμένῳ δὲ αὐτῷ ἔδοξε κράτιστον εἶναι ἀνα-
κοινῶσαι τοῖς θεοῖς· καὶ ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅτι
ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ θεοῦ ἐνόμιζεν ἑωρακέναί τὸ ὄναρ, ὃ
εἶδεν ὅτε πρῶτον ἡρέθη ἄρχων τῆς στρατιᾶς. καὶ ὅτε 15
ῥρᾶτο ἐξ Ἐφέσου συμ-μαχοῦμενος Κύρῳ, ἀν-εμιμ-
νήσκετο αἰτὸν φθεγγόμενον ἐν τῇ δεξίᾳ, καθ-ήμενον
δέ· καὶ ὅτι ὁ μάντις τότε ἔλεγε μέγαν μὲν τὸν οἰωνὸν
εἶναι, ἐπίπουνον μέντοι, τὰ γὰρ ὄρνεα ἔφη μάλιστα ἐπι-
τίθεσθαι τῷ αἰτῷ καθ-ημένῳ· τὸν δὲ οἰωνὸν οὐκ εἶναι 20
χρηματιστικόν, τὸν γὰρ αἰτὸν πετόμενον μάλιστα λαμ-
βάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. οὕτω δὲ νῦν ὁ θεὸς διαφανῶς
ἐσήμνηεν αὐτῷ θυομένῳ μὴ ἀπο-δέχεσθαι τὴν ἀρχήν.

Cheirisophus is elected. Voyage to Heraclea.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὐκ ἐδέξατο τὴν ἀρχήν, οἱ στρα-
τιῶται εἶλοντο Χειρίσοφον. ὁ δὲ παρ-ελθὼν εἶπεν· 25
“Ἀλλὰ, ὦ ἄνδρες, τοῦτο μὲν ἴστε, ὅτι οὐκ ἂν ἔγωγε
ἐστασίσαι, εἰ ἄλλον εἵλεσθε· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐμὲ εἵλεσθε, καὶ
ἐγὼ πειράσομαι ποιεῖν ὑμᾶς ὅ τι ἂν δύνωμαι ἀγαθόν.
καὶ ὑμεῖς οὕτω παρα-σκευάσεσθε εἰς αὔριον, ὥς πλεу-
σόμενοι. ὁ δὲ πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐπειδὰν δὲ 30
ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε, βουλευσόμεθα περὶ τῶν ἄλλων.” ἐν-
τεῦθεν παρα-πλεύσαντες ἀφ-ίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· καὶ
οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται πέμπουσι ξένια τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, ἄλφита
καὶ οἶνον καὶ βοῦς εἴκοσι καὶ οἷς ἑκατόν.

Ungracious conduct of some of the Greeks. The Heracleans menace war.

35 Οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται συλ-λεγόντες ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ τῆς
λοιπῆς πορείας, πότερον κατὰ γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν
πορευτέον εἴη ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου. Λύκων δὲ Ἀχαιοὺς εἶπε·
“Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὅτι οἱ στρατηγοὶ οὐ πειρῶνται
ἐκ-πορίζειν ἡμῖν χρήματα· ταῦτα γὰρ τὰ ξένια οὐ γενή-
40 σεται σιτία τριῶν ἡμερῶν τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἐμοὶ οὖν δοκεῖ
αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεῶτας μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ τρις-χιλίους
κυζικηνοὺς, καὶ πέμπειν πρέσβεις πρὸς τὴν πόλιν περὶ
τούτων.” ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Λύκωνα καὶ Καλλίμαχον
καὶ Ἀγασίαν· οὗτοι ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα.
45 οἱ δὲ Ἡρακλεῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἔφασαν βουλεύ-
σεσθαι, καὶ εὐθὺς συν-ῆγον τὰ χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν·
καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο καὶ ὅπλα ἐφαίνετο ἐπὶ τῶν
τειχῶν.

Threefold partition of the army. Numbers in each division.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ συν-ιστάμενοι
50 ἔλεγον, ὥς αἰσχρὸν εἴη ἓνα Ἀθηναῖον ἄρχειν Πελοπον-
νησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμονίων. ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπερ-ῆμισυ
τοῦ ὅλου στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί. οὗτοι οὖν
ἔλεγον ὥς δέοι ἐλέσθαι ἑαυτῶν στρατηγούς, καὶ καθ’ ἑαν-
τοὺς ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν. ταῦτα ἔδοξε· καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες
55 καὶ Ἀχαιοί, ἀπο-λιπόντες Χειρίσοφον καὶ Ξενοφῶντα,
συν-έστησαν, καὶ εἵλουντο στρατηγούς ἑαυτῶν δέκα. ἐκ
τούτου τὸ στράτευμα γίγνεται τριχῇ, Ἀρκάδες μὲν καὶ
Ἀχαιοὶ πλείους ἢ τετρακίς-χίλιοι, ὅπλῃται πάντες· Χει-
ρισόφῳ δὲ ἦσαν ὅπλῃται μὲν τετρακόσιοι καὶ χίλιοι,
60 πελτασταὶ δὲ ἑπτακόσιοι· Ξενοφῶντι δὲ ἦσαν ὅπλῃται

μὲν ἑπτακόσιοι, πελτασταὶ δὲ τριακόσιοι· οὗτος δὲ μόνος εἶχεν ἵππικόν, ἀμφὶ τετταράκοντα ἱππέας.

The Arcadians attack the natives, and are defeated by them.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἀρκάδες πρῶτοι πλέουσι, καὶ ἀπο-βαίνουσιν εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα, κατὰ μέσον τῆς ἐν Ἀσΐᾳ Θράκης. ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὰς πρῶτας κώμας· 65 καὶ ἐπι-πесόντες τοῖς Θραξὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἔλαβον πολλὴν λείαν. οἱ δὲ Θράκες οἱ δια-φυγόντες ἠθροίζοντο· καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπι-τίθενται τῷ Σμίκρητος λόχῳ, ἐνὸς τῶν Ἀρκάδων στρατηγῶν, καὶ ἀπο-κτείνουσιν αὐτόν τε τὸν Σμίκρητα καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους πάντας. ἄλλου δὲ λόχου, 70 ὃν Ἡγήσανδρος εἶχεν, ὁκτὼ μόνους κατ-έλιπον ζῶντας· καὶ αὐτὸς Ἡγήσανδρος ἐσώθη. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ συν-ῆλθον· οἱ δὲ Θράκες συν-ελέγοντο τῆς νυκτὸς πολλοί. καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρᾳ ἐτάττοντο κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο, καὶ προς-έβαλλον πρὸς τοὺς 75 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὀπλίτας, καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον πολλούς· τέλος δὲ οἱ Θράκες εἶργον αὐτοὺς καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὕδατος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπορία ἦν, δι-ελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἤτουν ὁμήρους, οἱ Θράκες οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν. οἱ μὲν δὲ Ἀρκάδες οὕτως ἔπραξαν. 80

Xenophon marches to their relief.

Χειρίσοφος δὲ, πεζῇ πορευόμενος διὰ τῆς χώρας παρὰ θάλατταν, ἀφ-ικνεῖται εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα· Ξενοφῶν δὲ, λαβὼν πλοῖα, ἀπο-βαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος. ἐντεῦθεν πορευόμενος διὰ τῆς μεσο-γαίας ἐν-τυγχάνει πρέσβεσι πορευομένοις ποι· καὶ ἡρώτα 85 αὐτοὺς, εἴ που αἴσθονται ἄλλου στρατεύματος Ἑλληνικοῦ.

οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ Ἀρκάδες πολιορκοῦντο ἐπὶ λόφου, οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες πάντες περι-κεκυκλωμένοι εἶεν αὐτούς. ἐν-
ταῦθα ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ βοηθεῖν τοῖς ἀνδράσιν· ἔπεμψε δὲ
90 Τιμασίωνα σὺν τοῖς ἱππεῦσι σκοπεῖν τὸ ἔμπροσθεν, ὅπως
μηδὲν λάθοι αὐτούς. παρ-ἔπεμψε δὲ καὶ τῶν γυμνήτων
τινὰς εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ἐκέλευε δὲ καίειν ἅπαντα, ὅσα ὀρώων
καύσιμα. οἱ δὲ ἐποιοῦν ταῦτα· ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα ἐδόκει
αἰθεσθαι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα εἶναι πολύ.

No tidings of either army. All meet again at Calpe.

95 Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ συν-ταξάμενοι ὥς εἰς μάχην ἐπορεύ-
οντο ἢ ἐδύνατο τάχιστα. Τιμασίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς
προ-ελαύνοντες ἀφ-ίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλλη-
νες ἐπολιορκοῦντο· καὶ οὐκ ὀρώσιν οὔτε φίλιον οὔτε
πολέμιον στράτευμα. καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ἐθαύμαζον τί
100 εἶη τὸ γεγενημένον· ἔπειτα δὲ ἐπυνθάνοντο ὅτι οἱ μὲν
Θρᾶκες ἀπ-ῆεσαν τῆς ἐσπέρας, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἅμα τῇ
ἡμέρᾳ· ὅποι δὲ οἴχοιντο οὐδεὶς ᾔδει. οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Ξενο-
φῶντα ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐπορεύοντο, βουλόμενοι ὥς
τάχιστα συμ-μίξαι τοῖς ἄλλοις εἰς Κάλπης λιμένα. καὶ
105 πορευόμενοι ἐώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν
κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ συν-ῆλθον, ἄσμενοί τε εἶδον
ἀλλήλους καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὥσπερ ἀδελφούς. καὶ ταύτην
τὴν ἡμέραν ἠϋλίζοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι.

Description of the harbour of Calpe.

Ὁ δὲ Κάλπης λιμὴν κεῖται ἐν μέσῳ Ἡρακλείας καὶ
110 Βυζαντίου· ἔστι δὲ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ προ-κείμενον χωρίον,
τὸ μὲν αὐτοῦ εἰς τὴν θαλάτταν καθ-ῆκον πέτρα ἐστὶν
ἀπορρώξ· ὁ δὲ αὐχὴν τοῦ χωρίου, ὁ εἰς τὴν γῆν ἀν-ήκων,

μάλιστα τεττάρων πλέθρων ἐστὶ τὸ εὖρος· τὸ δὲ ἐντὸς
 τοῦ αὐχένος χωρίον ἐστὶν ἱκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνθρώποις
 οἰκῆσαι. λιμὴν δὲ κεῖται ὑπὸ αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρᾳ, ἔχων 115
 αἰγιαλὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν. κρήνη δὲ ἡδέος ὕδατος ῥεῖ ἐπὶ
 αὐτὴν τὴν θάλατταν ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπικρατείᾳ τοῦ χωρίου.
 ξύλα δὲ ἐστὶ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα ἐπὶ αὐτῇ
 τῇ θαλάττῃ. τὸ δὲ ὄρος εἰς μεσόγαιαν μὲν ἀν-ήκει
 ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίοις, καὶ τοῦτό ἐστι γεῶδες καὶ ἄλιθον· 120
 παρὰ δὲ θάλατταν παρ-ήκει πλέον ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίοις,
 καὶ δασύ ἐστὶ πολλοῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. ἡ δὲ ἄλλη
 χώρα καλὴ ἐστὶ, καὶ κῶμαί εἰσιν ἐν αὐτῇ πολλαὶ καὶ
 εὖ οἰκούμεναι· ἡ γὰρ γῆ φέρει καὶ κριθὰς καὶ πυροὺς καὶ
 ὄσπρια καὶ μελίνας καὶ σήσαμα καὶ σῦκα καὶ ἀμπέλους 125
 καὶ τὰ ἄλλα πάντα, πλὴν ἐλαιῶν. ἡ μὲν χώρα ἦν τοιαύτη·
 οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνουν ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ.

*Resolution passed not to divide the army again. Want
 of provisions. Sacrifices unfavourable.*

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἡμέρας δύο· τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ
 στρατιῶται πάντες συν-ῆλθον, καὶ ἐποίησαντο δόγμα, εἴ
 τις ὕστερον μνησθείη δίχα ποιεῖν τὸ στράτευμα, ζημι- 130
 οῦσθαι αὐτὸν θανάτῳ. καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη ἐτε-
 λελευτήκει· Νέων δὲ Ἀσιναῖος παρ-έλαβε τὴν ἐκείνου
 ἀρχήν. μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐθύοντο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ·
 τὰ δὲ ἱερὰ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο καλά. ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται
 ἤχθοντο· καὶ γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπ-έλιπεν αὐτοῖς, καὶ 135
 ἀγορὰ οὐδεμία παρ-ἦν. συν-ελθόντων δὲ αὐτῶν ὁ Ξενο-
 φῶν εἶπεν· “ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐπὶ μὲν τῇ πορείᾳ, ὥς ὀράτε,
 τὰ ἱερὰ οὐπω γίγνεται καλά, ὁρῶ δὲ ὑμᾶς δεομένους
 τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· δοκεῖ οὖν μοι ἀνάγκη εἶναι θύεσθαι περὶ

140 τούτου.” καὶ πάλιν ἐθύετο εἰς τρεῖς, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο καλά. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν οὐκ ἔφη ἐξ-αγαγεῖν ἂν τοὺς στρατιώτας, εἰ μὴ γίγνοιτο τὰ ἱερὰ καλά. καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐθύοντο, καὶ σχεδὸν πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ ἐκυκλουῖτο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· καὶ πρόβατα μὲν οὐκέτι ἦν, πριά-
145 μενοι δὲ βοῦς ἐθύοντο· ἀλλ’ οὐδὲ οὕτω τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγένετο καλά.

Unsuccessful expedition of Neon to procure provisions.

Νέων δὲ, ὁρῶν τοὺς ἀνθρώπους δεινῶς ἔχοντας τῇ ἐνδείᾳ, ἐβούλετο χαρίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς· καὶ εὐρών τινα ἄνθρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς ἔφη κώμας εἶναι ἐγγὺς, ὅθεν
150 λαβοῖεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε πάντας τοὺς βουλομένους ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. καὶ ἐξ-έρχονται ὥς δις-χίλιοι ἄνθρωποι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς κώμας καὶ δι-εσπεύρουτο ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν, οἱ Φαρναβάζου ἱππεῖς ἐπιπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἀπο-κτείνουσιν οὐ μείον ἢ πεντα-
155 κοσίους· οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἀν-έφυγον ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. ἐκ τούτου ἀπ-αγγέλλει τις ταῦτα τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· ὁ δὲ βούν σφαιγιασάμενος ἐβοήθει, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπίλεκτοι ἄνδρες· οἱ δὲ ἀνα-λαβόντες τοὺς πεφευγότας ἀφ-ικνοῦνται εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. καὶ ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμὰς ἦν·
160 καὶ ἐξαπίνης τῶν Βιθυνῶν τινὲς ἐπι-τιθέμενοι τοῖς προφύλαξι τοὺς μὲν κατ-έκτειναν, τοὺς δὲ ἐδίωξαν μέχρι τοῦ στρατοπέδου. καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδραμον εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ διώκειν μὲν τοὺς πολεμίους νυκτὸς οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς ἐδόκει εἶναι· ἐν δὲ τοῖς ὅπλοις δι-ήγαγον τὴν νύκτα, φυλαττό-
165 μενοι ἱκανοῖς φύλαξι.

*The Greeks fortify their position. An excursion determined upon.
Neon is left to guard the camp.*

“Αμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἡγοῦντο εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν χωρίον· οἱ δὲ εἶποντο ἀνα-λαβόντες τὰ ὄπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. πρὶν δὲ ἀρίστου ὥραν εἶναι, ἀπ-ετάφρυσαν τὴν εἴσοδον εἰς τὸ χωρίον, καὶ ἀπ-εσταύρωσαν ἅπαν, κατα-λιπόντες τρεῖς πύλας. καὶ πλοῖον ἦκεν ἐξ Ἡρα- 170 κλείας ἄγον ἄλφιστα καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ οἶνον. δια-βάντες δὲ τὴν τάφρον ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξ-ιέναι σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, τὸν δὲ ὄχλον καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα κατα-μένειν αὐτοῦ. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξ-ῆσαν, Νέων δὲ οὐκ ἐξ-ῆει· ἐδόκει γὰρ κάλ- 175 λιστον εἶναι κατα-λιπεῖν τοῦτον φύλακα τῶν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ. καὶ οὗτοι μὲν ἔμενον, οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο.

The Greeks hesitate about crossing a ravine. Xenophon exhorts them to proceed.

Πορευθέντες δὲ ἤδη ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· καὶ ἐξαπίνης ὀρώσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερ- 180 βάλλοντας κατὰ λόφους τινὰς ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, ἱππέας τε πολλοὺς καὶ πεζοὺς. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι κατ-εἶδον τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἔστησαν· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες προ-ῆσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἡγούμενοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ νάπει μεγάλῳ καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν, ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ τὸ νάπος δια-βατέον 185 εἴη. καὶ παρ-εγγυῶσι τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς παρ-ιέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, θαυμάσας ὅ τι ἴσχοι τὴν πορείαν, ἐλαύνει ὡς τάχιστα, ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ συν-ῆλθον, ἔλεξε τοιάδε· “Νῦν ἴστε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὅτι ἀμαχεῖ μὲν οὐκ ἔστιν ἐνθένδε ἀπ-ελθεῖν· 190

ἐὰν γὰρ μὴ ἡμεῖς ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι ἔψοντα καὶ ἐπι-πεσοῦνται ἡμῖν. καὶ τὸ μὲν ἀπ-ιέναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων οὐδαμῶς καλὸν ἐστὶ, τὸ δὲ ἐφ-έπεσθαι ἐμ-ποιεῖ θάρρος καὶ τοῖς κακίοσι. θαυμάζω δὲ εἴ τις νομίζει
 195 τοῦτο τὸ νάπος μᾶλλον φοβερὸν εἶναι τῶν ἄλλων χωρίων, ὧν δια-πεπορεύμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ νῦν καλὰ ἐστὶν ἡμῖν, ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. οὐ δεῖ ἔτι τούτους, ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἡμᾶς, ἡδέως δειπνῆσαι, οὐδὲ σκη-νῆσαι ὅπου ἂν θέλωσι.”

*Preparations for the attack. The watchword.
 Victorious charge.*

200 Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἡγείτο, παρ-αγγείλας δια-βαίνειν τὸ νάπος ἧ ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανεν ὧν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντες δι-έβησαν, τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ φάλαγγος καὶ ποιησάμενοι τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐκατέρωθεν, ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. παρ-ηγγέλλετο δὲ τὰ μὲν δόρατα ἔχειν ἐπὶ τοῦ δεξιοῦ
 205 ὥμου, ἕως σημαῖνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα δὲ καθ-ιέντας αὐτὰ εἰς προβολὴν ἔπεσθαι βάδην, καὶ μὴ διώκειν δρόμῳ. ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρ-ῆει ΖΕΥΣ ΣΩΤΗΡ, ἩΡΑΚΛΗΣ ἩΓΕΜΩΝ. οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὑπ-έμενον τοὺς Ἕλληνας προσ-ιόντας, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐπλησίαζον, οἱ πελτασταὶ ἀλα-
 210 λάξαντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· οἱ δὲ πολέμιοι ὥρμησαν ἀντίοι, καὶ ἐτρέποντο τοὺς πελταστὰς. ἀλλὰ ἐπεὶ ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ὑπ-ηντίαζε ταχὺ πορευομένη, καὶ ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπαιάνιζον, καὶ ἅμα καθ-ίεσαν τὰ δόρατα, ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκέτι
 215 ἐδέξαντο αὐτοὺς, ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. καὶ Τιμασίῳν ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας ἐφ-εῖπετο. καὶ ἀπ-έκτειναν τῶν πολεμίων ὅσουςπερ ἐδύναντο.

Complete rout of the enemy. The Greeks raise a trophy.

Τῶν δὲ πολεμίων τὸ μὲν εὐώνυμον εὐθὺς δι-εσπάρη, τὸ δὲ δεξιὸν συν-έστη ἐπὶ λόφου. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον αὐτοὺς ὑπο-μένοντας, ἐδόκει ῥᾶστον εἶναι ἰέναι ἤδη 220 ἐπ' αὐτούς. παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπ-έκειντο αὐτοῖς· οἱ δὲ οὐχ ὑπ-έμειναν. καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον καὶ δι-έσπειραν τὸ δεξιὸν αὐτῶν· ὀλίγοι δὲ ἀπ-έθανον· οἱ γὰρ ἱππεῖς τῶν πολεμίων, πολλοὶ ὄντες, φόβον παρ-εἶχον. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον τό τε Φαρναβάζου 225 ἱππικὸν ἔτι συν-εστηκὸς, καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἱππέας ἤδη συν-αθροιζομένους ἐπὶ λόφου τινὸς, ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἰέναι καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους, ὥς μὴ τεθαρρηκότες ἀνα-παύσαιντο. συν-ταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἱπ-πεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ τοῦ λόφου, ὥσπερ διωκόμενοι ὑπὸ 230 ἱππέων· νάπος γὰρ ὑπ-εδέχετο αὐτοὺς, ὃ οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ἤδεσαν. οἱ δὲ ἐπ-αν-ελθόντες καὶ στησάμενοι τρό-παιον ἀπ-ήεσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν περὶ ἡλίου δυσμάς.

Cleander arrives from Byzantium. Dispute about the spoil.

Οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐνταῦθα ἔμενον Κλέανδρον τὸν ἐν Βυ-ζαντίῳ ἄρμοστήν, καὶ τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα. καὶ ἕως 235 μὲν τὸ στράτευμα κατα-μένοι ἀνα-πανόμενον, ἐξ-ἦν τοῖς στρατιώταις ἰέναι ἐπὶ λείαν, καὶ οἱ ἐξ-ιόντες ἐλάμβανον αὐτήν· ὁπότε δὲ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα ἐξ-ίοι, εἴ τις χωρὶς ἀπ-ελθὼν λάβοι τι, ἔδοξεν εἶναι δημόσιον. καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ὁ Κλέανδρος ἀφ-ικνεῖται ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πλοῖον δὲ οὐδέν. 240 τὸ δὲ στράτευμα ἐτύγχανεν ἔξω ὄν, ὅτε ἀφ-ίκετο· καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς ᾤχοντο χωρὶς ἐπὶ λείαν, οἱ εἰλήφεσαν πολλὰ πρόβατα· φοβούμενοι δὲ μὴ στερηθεῖεν τούτων, λέγουσι

Δεξίππῳ τῷ Λάκωνι τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ κελεύουσιν αὐτὸν
 245 δια-σῶσαι αὐτοῖς τὰ πρόβατα, καὶ τὰ μὲν ἑαυτῷ λαβεῖν,
 τὰ δὲ σφίσιν ἀπο-δοῦναι.

*Serious disturbance in the army. Cleander threatens
 extreme measures.*

Εὐθὺς δὲ ὁ Δέξιππος ἀπ-ελαύνει τοὺς περι-εστῶτας,
 καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι ταῦτα εἴη δημόσια· καὶ λέγει τῷ
 Κλεάρχῳ, ὅτι οἱ στρατιῶται ἐπι-χειροῦσιν ἄρπάζειν.
 250 ὁ δὲ κελεύει ἄγειν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν τὸν ἄρπάζοντα. καὶ
 ὁ μὲν Δέξιππος λαβὼν ἡγέτινα· Ἀγασίας δὲ ἀφ-
 αιρεῖται αὐτόν. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται ἐπι-χειροῦσι
 βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον· πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν
 δείσαντες ἔφυγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Κλέ-
 255 ανδρος ἔφευγε, καὶ ἀπο-πλεύσεσθαι ἔφη, καὶ κηρύξειν
 μηδεμίαν πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτοὺς, ὥς ὄντας πολεμίους.
 (οἱ δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τότε ἦρχον πάντων τῶν Ἑλλήνων).
 ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐδέοντο αὐτοῦ μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα.
 ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη γενέσθαι ἂν ἄλλως, εἰ μὴ ἐκ-δοίεν τὸν
 260 ἄρξάμενον βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον καὶ τὸν ἀφ-ελόμενον
 τὸν ἄνδρα.

Agasias offers to surrender himself.

Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν οἱ ἄρχοντες συν-ήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα·
 καὶ Ἀγασίας ἀνα-στὰς εἶπεν· “Ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
 μὴ ἐκ-δῶτέ με· ἐγὼ δὲ παρα-σχίσω ἑμαυτὸν Κλεάνδρῳ,
 265 ποιῆσαι ὅ τι ἂν βούληται.” μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπορεύοντο
 πρὸς Κλεάνδρον Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ
 ὁ ἀφ-αιρεθεὶς ὑπὸ Ἀγασίου. καὶ ὁ Ἀγασίας εἶπεν·
 “Ἐγὼ εἰμι, ὦ Κλεάνδρε, ὁ ἀφ-ελόμενος τοῦ Δεξίππου
 τοῦτον τὸν ἄνδρα. τοῦτον μὲν γὰρ οἶδα ἄνδρα ὄντα

ἀγαθὸν, Δέξιππον δὲ οἶδα δειλὸν τε ὄντα καὶ πονηρόν. 270
αἰρεθεὶς γὰρ ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἄρχειν πεντηκοντόρου, ἧς
ῥητῆσάμεθα παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων, ὁ Δέξιππος ἀπ-έδρα,
καὶ προ-έδωκε τοὺς στρατιώτας. τούτου οὖν, τοιούτου
ὄντος, ἀφ-ειλόμην τὸν ἄνδρα. εἰ δὲ σὺ ἀπ-ῆγες αὐτὸν,
ἢ ἄλλος τις τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησα οὐδὲν τού- 275
των. ἔὰν δὲ νῦν ἀπο-κτείνῃς ἐμὲ, ἀπο-κτενεῖς ἄνδρα
ἀγαθὸν δι' ἄνδρα δειλὸν τε καὶ πονηρόν.”

The cause pleaded. Cleander reserves his decision.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· “Ἐγὼ μὲν οὐκ
ἐπ-αινῶ Δέξιππον, εἰ πεποίηκε ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι χρὴ
αὐτὸν πᾶσχειν βίαν, ἀλλὰ κρίνεσθαι. νῦν οὖν ἀπ-ιτε 280
κατα-λιπόντες τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δὲ ἐγὼ κελεύσω,
πάρ-εστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. αἰτιῶμαι δὲ οὔτε τὴν στρα-
τιὰν οὔτε ἄλλον οὐδένα, ἐπεὶ οὗτος ὁμολογεῖ αὐτὸς ἀφ-
ελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα.” ὁ δὲ ἀφ-αιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· “Ἐγὼ,
ὦ Κλέανδρε, οὔτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα οὔτε ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ’ 285
εἶπον ὅτι τὰ πρόβατα εἶη δημόσια· ἦν γὰρ δόγμα τῶν
στρατιωτῶν, ἔάν τις ἰδίᾳ ληΐξῃται, ὁπότεν ἡ στρατιὰ
ἐξ-ίῃ, ἢ λεία ἔσται δημοσία. ταῦτα εἶπον· ἐκ τού-
του οὗτος λαβὼν με ἦγεν, ἵνα λαβὼν τὸ ἑαυτοῦ μέρος
δια-σώσῃ τοῖς λησταῖς τὰ χρήματα παρὰ τὸ δόγμα.” 290
πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· “Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν πεποίηκας
ταῦτα, κατὰ-μενε, ἵνα καὶ περὶ σοῦ βουλευσώμεθα.”

Successful intervention of Xenophon.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸν Κλέανδρον
λέγει· “Ἐχεις μὲν, ὦ Κλέανδρε, τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἔξ-
εστὶ σοι ποιῆσαι περὶ τούτων ὅ τι βούλει· νῦν δὲ οἱ 295

στρατιῶται αἰτοῦνται σε δοῦναι σφίσι τὸ ἄνδρε, καὶ μὴ ἀπο-κτείνειν. καὶ ὑπ-ισχνοῦνται σοι ἀντὶ τούτων, ἐὰν βούλῃ ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν, ἐπι-δείξειν σοι καὶ ὡς κόσμιοί εἰσι καὶ ὡς θέλουνσι πείθεσθαι τῷ ἄρχοντι.” ἀκούσας
 300 ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν. “Ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀπο-δίδωμι τὸ ἄνδρε καὶ αὐτὸς παρ-έσομαι ὑμῖν καὶ, ἐὰν οἱ θεοὶ βούλωνται, ἡγήσομαι ὑμῖν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα.”

Cleander departs. The army reach Chrysopolis.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Κλέανδρος ἐθύετο ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ, καὶ φίλος ἐγένετο Ξενοφῶντι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἑώρα τοὺς στρα-
 305 τιώτας εὐτάκτους ὄντας, καὶ μᾶλλον ἐπ-εθύμει γενέσθαι ἡγεμῶν αὐτῶν. ἐπεὶ μέντοι θυομένῳ αὐτῷ τὰ ἱερὰ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο καλὰ, συγ-καλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπεν.
 “Ἐμοὶ μὲν τὰ ἱερὰ οὐ γίγνεται, ὥστε ἐξ-άγειν ὑμᾶς ὑμεῖς δὲ μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε τούτου ἕνεκα, ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε.
 310 ἡμεῖς δὲ δεξόμεθα ὑμᾶς ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα κάλλιστα.” ὁ δ’ οὖν Κλέανδρος ἀπ-έπλει· οἱ δὲ στρα-
 τιῶται ἐξ-επορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βιθυιῶν καὶ ἀφ-ίκοντο εἰς Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν ἡμέρας ἑπτά.

CHAPTER VIII.

CONCLUDING SCENES OF THE RETREAT.

The Greeks cross to Byzantium, and are disappointed by Anaxibius. Xenophon confers with Cleander.

Ἐκ τούτου Φαρνάβαζος, φοβούμενος μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες στρατεύοιντο ἐπὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἀρχὴν, ἐδεῖτο Ἀναξιβίου

τοῦ Λακεδαιμονίου ναυάρχου, ὃς ἔτυχεν ὦν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, δια-βιβάσαι τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας. καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος μετ-επέμψατο τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς, καὶ 5 ὑπ-ισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς, εἰ δια-βαῖεν εἰς Βυζάντιον, μισθὸν ἔσεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις. ἐκ δὲ τούτου πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται δια-βαίνουσιν εἰς Βυζάντιον. καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος οὐκ ἐδίδου αὐτοῖς μισθὸν, ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς στρατιώτας ἐξ-ιέναι ἐκ τῆς πόλεως, ὥς ἀπο-πέμψων αὐτοὺς οἴκαδε. 10 ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον ἀργύριον ἐπι-σιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν προσ-ελθὼν Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ ἁρμοστῇ εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι μέλλοι ἀπο-πλεύσεσθαι ἤδη· ὁ δὲ Κλεάνδρος λέγει αὐτῷ· “Μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· ἀλλὰ ἔξ-ελθε μὲν ὥς συμ-πορευσόμενος τοῖς 15 στρατιώταις· ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ στράτευμα γένηται ἔξω, τότε ἀπ-αλλάττου.” ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ ὁ Κλεάνδρος ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον ἔλεγον αὐτῷ ταῦτα. ὁ δὲ ἐκέλευε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὕτω ποιεῖν, καὶ ἐξ-ιέναι ὥς τάχιστα σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι.

20

Discontent of the army. Tumult at the gates.

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐξ-ῆσαν τῆς πόλεως. καὶ πάντες, πλὴν ὀλίγων, ἔξω ἦσαν· ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος συγ-καλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγοὺς ἔλεγε· “Τὰ μὲν ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνετε ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων κωμῶν· λαβόντες δὲ πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερρόνη- 25 σον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κύνισκος δώσει ὑμῖν μισθόν.” ἀκούσαντες δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν δι-αγγέλλουσι ταῦτα τῷ στρατεύματι. καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀν-αρπάσαντες τὰ ὅπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς τὰς πύλας, ὥς πάλιν εἰς-ιόντες εἰς τὴν πόλιν. Ἐτεόνικος δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ συγ-κλεί- 30 ουσι τὰς πύλας· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται λέγουσιν αὐτοὶ κατα-

σχίσειν τὰς πύλας, εἰ μὴ οἱ πολῖται ἐκόντες ἀν-οίξουσιν.
 ἄλλοι δὲ ἔθεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν, καὶ ὑπερ-βαίνουσι παρὰ
 τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τείχους εἰς τὴν πόλιν. ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν
 35 στρατιωτῶν, οἳ ἐτύγχανον ἔνδον ὄντες, δια-κόπτουντες τὰ
 κλειῖθρα ταῖς ἀξίναις ἀνα-πεταννύουσι τὰς πύλας, οἳ δὲ
 ἔξω ὄντες εἰς-πίπτουσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν.

General panic. Anaxibius sends for reinforcements.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ὡς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα, δείσας μὴ τὸ
 στράτευμα τράποιτο ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν, συν-εἰς-πίπτει σὺν τῷ
 40 ὄχλῳ εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν. οἳ δὲ Βυζάντιοι φεύγουσιν ἐκ
 τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἳ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἳ δὲ οἴκαδε· ὅσοι δὲ
 ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις ἔθεον ἔξω. οἳ δὲ καθ-εἵλκον
 τὰς τριήρεις, ὡς σώζονται ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι· πάντες δὲ
 ᾤοντο τὴν πόλιν ἡλωκέναι. ὁ δὲ Ἑτεόνικος ἀπο-φεύγει
 45 εἰς τὴν ἄκραν. ὁ δὲ Ἀναξίβιος κατα-δραμὼν ἐπὶ θάλατ-
 ταν περι-έπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν, καὶ εὐθὺς μετα-πέμ-
 πεται φρουροὺς ἐκ Καλχηδόνος· οἳ γὰρ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει
 οὐκ ἐδόκουν αὐτοὶ εἶναι ἱκανοὶ ἐκ-βαλεῖν τοὺς Ἕλληνας.

Xenophon's device to restore order.

Οἳ δὲ στρατιῶται, ὡς εἶδον Ξενοφῶντα, προσ-έρχονται
 50 αὐτῷ καὶ λέγουσι· “Νῦν σοι ἔξ-εστιν, ὦ Ξενοφῶν,
 ἀνδρὶ ἀγαθῷ γενέσθαι. ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις
 χρήματα, ἔχεις ἄνδρας τοσούτους. νῦν, εἰ βούλοιο, σύ
 τε ἂν ὀνήσαιο ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἂν ποιήσαιμεν σὲ μέγαν.”
 ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “Ἀλλὰ εὖ τε λέγετε, καὶ ποιήσω
 55 ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ ἐπι-θυμεῖτε τούτων, θέσθε τὰ ὄπλα ἐν τάξει
 ὡς τάχιστα.” ταῦτα δὲ εἶπε, βουλόμενός κατ-ηρεμίσαι
 αὐτούς· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς λοχαγοὺς παρ-αγγέλλειν ταῦτα

τοῖς στρατιώταις. οἱ δὲ εὐθὺς ἐτάττοντο· ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ὄπλα ἔκειτο, ὁ Ξεροφῶν συγ-καλεῖ τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ λέγει τάδε·

60

*His advice to the army. 'Let us not ruin our cause
by our own rashness.'*

“Ὅτι μὲν ὀργίξεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, οὐ θαυμάζω. εἰὰν δὲ χαριζώμεθα τῷ θυμῷ, καὶ τιμωρησώμεθα τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, καὶ δι-αρπάσωμεν ταύτην τὴν πόλιν, ἐν-θυμείσθε ἃ ἔσται ἐντεῦθεν. πολέμιοι μὲν ἐσόμεθα τοῖς τε Λακεδαιμονίοις καὶ τοῖς αὐτῶν συμμάχοις· τοῖς 65 δὲ Λακεδαιμονίοις οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ὑπ-άρχουσι σύμμαχοι, Ἀθήναιοι δὲ προσ-γεγέννηται ἐκείνοις· οὗτοι δὲ πάντες ἔσονται πολέμιοι ἡμῖν. Τισσαφέρνης δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι βάρβαροι πολλοὶ πολέμιοι ἤδη εἰσὶν ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς πολεμιώτατός ἐστι πάντων, ἐφ’ ὃν ἐστρατεύσαμεν ἀφ- 70 αιρησόμενοι τὴν ἀρχὴν, καὶ ἀπο-κτενοῦντες αὐτὸν, εἰ δυναίμεθα. μὴ, πρὸς θεῶν, οὕτω μαινώμεθα, μηδὲ αἰσχροῦς ἀπ-ολώμεθα, πολέμιοι ὄντες καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις φίλοις τε καὶ οἰκείοις. πάντες γὰρ οἱ φίλοι εἰσὶν ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν, αἱ στρατεύονται ἐφ’ 75 ἡμᾶς· καὶ δικαίως τοῦτο ποιήσουσιν, εἰ ἐξ-αλαπάξομεν πόλιν Ἑλληνίδα, εἰς ἣν πρώτην ἦλθομεν. ἐμοὶ τοίνυν δοκεῖ εἰπεῖν Ἀναξιβίῳ, ὅτι παρ-εληλύθαμεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν ποιήσοντας οὐδὲν βίαιον, ἀλλὰ πειρώμενοι τυγ- 80 χάνειν τῶν δικαίων· εἰὰν δὲ μὴ τύχωμεν, δηλώσομεν αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐκ ἐξ-απατώμενοι, ἀλλὰ πειθόμενοι, ἐξ-ερχόμεθα τῆς πόλεως.”

*Order restored. Xenophon takes leave of the army.
Many soldiers desert.*

Ταῦτα ἔδοξε, καὶ πέμπουσιν ἀγγέλους τῷ Ἀναξιβίῳ
 περὶ τούτων. ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο, ὅτι οὐ μετα-μελήσοι
 85 αὐτοῖς πειθομένοις, ἀλλ' ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς βουλεύσοιτο περὶ
 αὐτῶν ὃ τι δύναιτο ἀγαθόν. ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται
 ἀπ-ἦλθον ἔξω τοῦ τείχους. Ξενοφῶν δὲ, μετα-πεμψά-
 • μενος Κλέανδρον, ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν δια-πράξασθαι, ὅπως
 αὐτὸς πάλιν εἰς-έλθοι εἰς τὴν πόλιν καὶ ἀπο-πλεύσειεν
 90 ἐκ Βυζαντίου. ἐλθὼν δὲ ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπε· “ Μάλα
 μόλις δια-πραξάμενος ἤκω. λέγει γὰρ Ἀναξίβιος, ὅτι
 οὐκ ἐπιτήδειόν ἐστι τοὺς μὲν στρατιώτας πλησίον εἶναι
 τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ ἔνδον τῆς πόλεως· ὅμως δὲ
 κελεύει σε εἰς-ιέναι, εἰ μέλλεις ἐκ-πλεῖν σὺν αὐτῷ.” ὁ
 95 μὲν δὴ Ξενοφῶν ἀπ-ῆει εἴσω τοῦ τείχους σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ.

Νέων δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἐπ-έμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ·
 καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ δι-εφέροντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ τῆς λοιπῆς
 πορείας. τοῦ δὲ χρόνου δια-τριβομένου, πολλοὶ τῶν
 στρατιωτῶν ἀπο-διδόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἀπ-έπλεον ὥς ἐδύ-
 100 ναντο, οἱ δὲ δι-εσπείροντο κατὰ τὰς πόλεις. Ἀναξίβιος
 δὲ ἔχαιρεν ἀκούων ταῦτα· τούτων γὰρ γιγνομένων ᾤετο
 μάλιστα χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζῳ.

Arrival of Aristarchus. Xenophon rejoins the army.

Ἀναξιβίῳ δὲ ἀπο-πλέοντι ἐκ Βυζαντίου συν-αντᾷ
 Ἀρίσταρχος, διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ Βυζαντίου ἀρμοστής.
 105 καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ἐπι-στέλλει τῷ Ἀριστάρχῳ ἀπο-δόσθαι
 τῶν Κύρου στρατιωτῶν ὅποσους ἂν εὔρη ἐν Βυζαντίῳ·
 ὁ δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἦλθεν εἰς Βυζάντιον, ἀπ-έδοτο οὐκ ἐλάττους

τετρακοσίων. ἐκ τούτου Ἀναξίβιος, παρα-πλεύσας εἰς Πάριον, κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα πλεῦσαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὥς τάχιστα, καὶ συν-αθροίζειν τοὺς δι-εσπαρμένους τῶν 110 στρατιωτῶν, καὶ δια-βιβάζειν αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῆς Περίνθου εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. καὶ ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν δια-πλεύσας εἰς Πέρινθον ἀφ-ικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα· οἱ δὲ στρατιῶται ἐδέξαντο αὐτὸν ἡδέως, καὶ εὐθὺς εἶποντο αὐτῷ ἄσμενοι, ὥς δια-βησόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν 115 Ἀσίαν.

Aristarchus forbids the Greeks to cross into Asia.

Xenophon goes to Seuthes.

Ἐνταῦθα Σεύθης ὁ Θρᾷξ, πέμψας Μηδοσάδην πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, ἐδεῖτο αὐτοῦ ἄγειν τὴν στρατιὰν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· καὶ ὑπ-ισχνούμενος πολλὰ οὐκ ἔπεισε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα. ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ ἁρ- 120 μοστής, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, εἶπε τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ περαιοῦσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀναξίβιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς δια-πλεῦσαι. ὁ δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ἔλεγεν· “ Ἀναξίβιος μὲν οὐκέτι ναύαρχός ἐστι, ἐγὼ δὲ ἐνταῦθά εἰμι ἁρμοστής· εἰ δέ τινα ὑμῶν 125 λήψομαι ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, κατα-δύσω αὐτόν.” ταῦτα εἰπὼν ὥχετο εἰς τὴν πόλιν. ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν θυσάμενος τοῖς θεοῖς, ἐπεὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγένετο καλὰ, παρ-έλαβε Πολυκράτην τὸν Ἀθηναῖον λοχαγὸν καὶ ἄλλους, καὶ ὥχετο τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὸ Σεύθου στράτευμα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν 130 ἐγγὺς αὐτοῦ, προ-πέμπει ἑρμηνέα, καὶ κελεύει εἰπεῖν Σεύθῃ ὅτι Ξενοφῶν πάρ-εστι βουλόμενος συγ-γενέσθαι αὐτῷ.

Conference with Seuthes.

Ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ἐκέλευσε Ξενοφῶντα εἰς-ελθεῖν,
 135 ἔχοντα δύο ἄνδρας, οὓς βούλοιτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς-ἦλθον,
 πρῶτον Ξενοφῶν ἐπ-ῆρετο Σεύθην ὅ τι βούλοιτο χρῆσθαι
 τῇ στρατιᾷ. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὧδε· “Μαισάδης μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς
 πατήρ ἦρχε Θυνῶν τε καὶ ἄλλων τῶν γειτόνων. στασια-
 ζόντων δὲ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν, ἐκ-πίπτει τῆς ἀρχῆς· ἐκ-πесῶν
 140 δὲ ἀπο-θνήσκει νόσῳ· ἐγὼ δὲ ἐξ-ετράφην ὀρφανὸς παρὰ
 Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν Ὀδρυσῶν βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγενόμην
 νεανίσκος, οὐκ ἐδυνάμην ζῆν ἀπ’ ἀλλοτρίας τραπέζης·
 καὶ ἰκέτευον αὐτὸν δοῦναί μοι ὁπόσους δύναίτο ἄνδρας,
 ὅπως καὶ τιμωροίμην τοὺς ἐκ-βαλόντας ἡμᾶς τῆς ἀρχῆς,
 145 καὶ μὴ ζῶν ἀπο-βλέπων εἰς τὴν ἐκείνου τράπεζαν, ὥσπερ
 κύων· ἐκ τούτου δίδωσί μοι τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ τοὺς ἵππους,
 οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε. καὶ νῦν ἐγὼ ζῶ τούτους ἔχων, ληϊζό-
 μενος τὴν ἐμαυτοῦ πατρίαν χώραν. εἰ δὲ ὑμεῖς παρα-
 γένοισθέ μοι, οἷομαι ῥαδίως ἂν ἀπο-λαβεῖν τὴν πατρίαν
 150 ἀρχήν. ταῦτά ἐστιν ἃ ἐγὼ δέομαι ὑμῶν.”

Seuthes states his terms, and makes liberal promises.

“Τί οὖν,” ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, “σὺ ἂν δύναιο, εἰ ἔλθοιμεν,
 διδόναι τῇ τε στρατιᾷ καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατη-
 γοῖς;” ὁ δ’ ὑπ-έσχετο αὐτοῖς μισθὸν, καὶ γῆν ὁπόσῃν
 βούλονται, καὶ ζεύγη καὶ χωρίον ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισ-
 155 μένον. “Ἐὰν δέ,” ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, “μὴ δια-πράξωμεν
 ταῦτά σοι, ἀλλὰ τις φόβος ἦ ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων, ἃρα
 σὺ δέξῃ ἡμᾶς εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ χώραν, ὅσοι βουλόμεθα
 ἀπ-ίεναι παρά σε;” ὁ δ’ εἶπε· “Ἔσται ταῦτα· καὶ
 ποιήσομαι ὑμᾶς ἀδελφούς καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἀπάντων, ὧν

ἂν δυνώμεθα κτᾶσθαι. σοὶ δὲ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, δώσω τὴν 160
 θυγατέρα, καὶ εἴ τίς σοί ἐστι θυγάτηρ, ὠνήσομαι αὐτὴν
 Θρακίῳ νόμῳ, καὶ δώσω σοι Βισάνθην οἰκεῖν, ὅπερ κάλ-
 λιστόν ἐστιν ἐμοὶ τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ χωρίων.”

*Xenophon's address to the army. 'Let us first get provisions,
 and then settle what to do.'*

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπ-ήλαννον· καὶ ἐλθόντες ἐπὶ τὸ
 στρατόπεδον ἀπ-ήγγειλαν πάντα τοῖς στρατιώταις. καὶ 165
 Ξενοφῶν ἀνα-στὰς εἶπε τάδε· “Ἄνδρες, δια-πλεῖν μὲν
 ἐκείσε, ἔνθα βουλόμεθα, οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν, Ἀρίσταρχος
 γὰρ κωλύει ἡμᾶς. Σεύθης δὲ φησιν εὖ ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς, ἂν
 ἴητε πρὸς αὐτόν. νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε, πότερον ἐνθάδε
 μένουτες βουλευσέσθε, ἢ ἐπ-αν-ελθόντες εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. 170
 ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ ἐπ-αν-ελθεῖν εἰς τὰς κώμας, ὅθεν
 δυναίμεθα λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἐκεῖ δὲ ἔχοντες τὰ
 ἐπιτήδεια βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ κράτιστον εἶναι.
 καὶ ὅτῳ,” ἔφη, “ταῦτα δοκεῖ, ἀνα-τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα.”
 ἀν-έτειναν ἅπαντες. “Ἀπ-ιόντες τοίνυν,” ἔφη, “συ- 175
 σκευάζεσθε· καὶ ἐπειδὰν παρ-αγγέλλῃ τις, ἔπεσθε τῷ
 ἡγουμένῳ.”

Seuthes repeats his proposals and promises to the army.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγείτο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ
 δὲ προ-εληλύθεσαν ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίους, Σεύθης ἀπ-
 ἦντησεν αὐτοῖς· καὶ εἶπε τοιάδε· “Ἐγὼ, ὦ ἄνδρες, 180
 δέομαι ὑμῶν στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοὶ, καὶ ὑπ-ισχυνοῦμαι
 δώσκειν ὑμῖν μισθόν· σῖτα δὲ καὶ ποτὰ, ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν,
 λήψεσθε ἐκ τῆς χώρας. ὅποσα δ' ἂν ἀλίσκηται αὐτὸς
 ἔξω, ἵνα δια-τιθέμενος ταῦτα πορίζω ὑμῖν τὸν μισθόν.”

185 ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπ-ήρετο αὐτόν· “ Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἄξεις τὸ στράτευμα; ” ὁ δὲ ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “ Οὐδαμῇ πλείον ἔπτα ἡμερῶν, πολλαχῇ δὲ μείον.” ἐπὶ τούτοις ἔδοξε πᾶσι συ-στρατεύεσθαι τῷ Σεύθῃ.

Seuthes entertains the Greeks. Heraclides gives Xenophon sage counsel.

Μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι ἐσκήνησαν κατὰ τάξεις, στρα-
190 τηγοὺς δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὺς Σεύθης ἐκάλεσεν ἐπὶ δεῖπνον.
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ θύραις, ὥς παρ-ιόντες ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, ἦν
τις Ἡρακλείδης Μαρωνείτης· οὗτος προσ-ελθὼν τῷ Ξενο-
φῶντι ἔλεγε· “ Σὺ καὶ πόλεως μεγίστης εἶ, καὶ παρὰ
Σεύθῃ τὸ σὸν ὄνομά ἐστι μέγιστον. ἄξιον οὖν σοί ἐστι
195 μέγιστα τιμῆσαι Σεύθην, δοὺς αὐτῷ ὅ τι ἂν ἔχῃς πλείστου
ἄξιον. εὖνους δέ σοι ὦν παρ-αινώ τοῦτο· εὖ γὰρ οἶδα,
ὅτι ὅσῳ ἂν μείζον δωρήσῃ τούτῳ, τοσούτῳ μείζω ἀγαθὰ
πέισει ὑπὸ τούτου.” ἀκούων ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἠπόρει· οὐ
γὰρ εἶχεν οὐδὲν, πλὴν ἢ μικρόν τι ἀργύριον.

The banquet begins. Thracian manners. A great eater.

200 Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς-ἤλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον, ἐκάθηντο κύκλῳ.
ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰς-ηνέχθησαν πᾶσιν· οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν
μεστοὶ κρεῶν νενεμημένων, καὶ ἄρτοι μεγάλοι προσ-
πεπερουνημένοι ἦσαν πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. καὶ πρῶτος
Σεύθης, λαβὼν τοὺς ἑαυτῷ παρα-κειμένους ἄρτους, δι-
205 ἔκλα κατὰ μικρὸν, καὶ ἔρριπτε τοῖς δειπνοῦσι, καὶ τὰ κρέα
ᾧσαύτως. καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι, παρ' οἷς οἱ τρίποδες ἔκειντο,
ἐποιοῦν ταῦτά. Ἄρκας δέ τις, Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, δεινὸς
φαγεῖν, δι-έρριπτε μὲν οὐδὲν, λαβὼν δὲ εἰς τὴν χεῖρα
ἄρτον ὅσον τρι-χοίνικον, καὶ θέμενος κρέα ἐπὶ τὰ γόνατα

ἔδειπνει. περι-έφερον δὲ κέρατα οἴνου, καὶ πάντες ἔδε- 210
 χοντο· ὁ δὲ Ἀρύστας, ἐπεὶ ὁ οἰνοχόος ἔφερε παρ' αὐτὸν
 τὸ κέρας, ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα εἶπε·
 “ Δὸς ἐκείνῳ τὸν οἶνον· ἐγὼ γὰρ οὐπὼ σχολάζω.” ἀκ-
 οῦσας Σεύθης τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν οἰνοχόον τί λέγοι.
 ὁ δὲ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅ τι λέγοι· ἠπίστατο γὰρ ἑλλη- 215
 νίζειν. ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ γέλως ἐγένετο.

*Xenophon extricates himself from a dilemma. The banquet
 concluded.*

Ἐκ δὲ τούτου εἰς-ἤλθεν ἀνὴρ Θρᾷξ, ἔχων ἵππον λευκόν·
 καὶ λαβὼν κέρας μέστον οἴνου εἶπε· “ Προ-πίνω σοι,
 ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ δίδωμί σοι τοῦτον τὸν ἵππον, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ
 διώκων αἰρήσεις τὸν πολέμιον, καὶ ἀπο-χωρῶν ῥαδίως 220
 ἀπο-φεύξει. ἄλλος παῖδα εἰς-αγαγὼν ἐδωρήσατο, καὶ
 ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἠπορεῖτο ὅ τι
 ποιοῖ· ἐκάθητο γὰρ, ὥς τιμώμενος, ἐν τῷ πλησιαιτάτῳ
 δίφρῳ Σεύθῃ· ὁ δὲ οἰνοχόος ἐνταῦθα προς-ἤνεγκεν αὐτῷ
 τὸ κέρας. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀν-έστη θαρραλέως, δεξάμενος 225
 τὸ κέρας, καὶ εἶπεν· “ Ἐγὼ δέ σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, δίδωμι ἑμαν-
 τὸν καὶ τοὺς ἑμοὺς τούτους ἐταίρους, φίλους εἶναι πιστούς.
 καὶ νῦν προς-αιτοῦσί σε οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ ἐθέλουσι καὶ πονεῖν
 ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ προ-κινδυνεύειν· καὶ μετὰ τούτων τὴν μὲν
 πατρῴαν χώραν ἀπο-λήψει, πολλὴν δὲ ἄλλην κτήσει· 230
 πολλοὺς δὲ ἵππους, πολλοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας καὶ γυναῖκας κατα-
 κτήσει, οἳ αὐτοὶ παρ-έσονται φέροντες πρὸς σε δῶρα.”
 ἀνα-στὰς ὁ Σεύθης συν-έπια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· καὶ μετὰ
 ταῦτα εἰς-ἤλθόν τινες αὐλοῦντες κέραςί τε καὶ σάλπιγξι.
 καὶ αὐτὸς Σεύθης ἀν-έκραγέ τε πολεμικόν, καὶ ἐξ-ἤλατο 235
 μάλα ἐλαφρῶς. εἰς-ῆσαν δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί.

Seuthes proposes to strike a sudden blow. He goes to reconnoitre the enemy.

Ὡς δὲ ἥλιος ἐδύετο, ὁ Σεύθης ἀνα-στὰς εἶπε πρὸς τοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγούς· “ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασί πω τὴν ἡμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἐὰν οὖν ἔλθωμεν
240 ἐπ’ αὐτοὺς πρὶν φυλάξασθαι, μάλιστα ἂν λάβοιμεν καὶ ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρήματα.” οἱ δὲ στρατηγοὶ συν-επ-ήνουν ταῦτα καὶ ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν ἡγεῖσθαι. ὁ δὲ εἶπε· “Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀνα-μένετε· ἐγὼ δὲ, ὁπότεν καιρὸς ᾗ, ἥξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ ἡγήσομαι.”

Ἡνίκα δ’ ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, Σεύθης παρῆν ἔχων
ἱππέας καὶ πελταστὰς καὶ ὀπλίτας. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο, οἱ δὲ πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, οἱ δ’ ἱππεῖς ὠπισθοφυλάκουν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἦν, ὁ Σεύθης ἐκέλευσε τοὺς Ἕλληνας περι-
μένειν καὶ ἀνα-παύεσθαι· αὐτὸς δ’ ἔφη σκέψεσθαι.
250 σκεψάμενος δὲ ἦκε πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· “Ἄνδρες, καλῶς ἔσται, ἐὰν θεὸς θέλῃ· λήσομεν γὰρ τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπι-
πεσόντες. ἀλλ’ ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις· ὑμεῖς δὲ ἔπεσθε. ὑπερ-βάντες δὲ τὰ ὄρη ἥξομεν εἰς κώμας πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας.”

The enemy are taken by surprise. Seuthes burns their villages.

Ἡνίκα δ’ ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας, ὁ Σεύθης ἤδη ἦν ἐπὶ τοῖς ἄκροις· καὶ κατ-ιδὼν τὰς κώμας ἦκεν ἑλαύνων πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· “Ἀφ-ήσω ἤδη τοὺς μὲν ἱππέας κατα-θεῖν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον, τοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας· ὑμεῖς δὲ ἔπεσθε ὡς τάχιστα. μετὰ ταῦτα ὥχето, καὶ οἱ
260 Ἕλληνες εἶποντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς κώμας, Σεύθης, ἔχων τριάκοντα ἱππέας, προς-ελάσας εἶπε τῷ Ξενοφῶντι· “Οἱ μὲν ἄνθρωποι ἔχονται ἐν ταῖς κώμας, ἀλλ’ οὐχ

ἀλίσκονται· οἱ γὰρ ἱππεῖς οἴχονται διώκοντες, καὶ δέ-
δοικα μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι συ-στάντες καὶ γενόμενοι ἀθρόοι
ἐργάσωνται ἡμᾶς κακόν τι. δεῖ οὖν τινὰς ἡμῶν κατα- 265
μένειν ἐν ταῖς κώμας, μέσται γάρ εἰσιν ἀνθρώπων.”
“ Ἄλλ’ ἐγὼ μὲν,” ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, “ κατα-λήψομαι τὰ
ἄκρα· σὺ δὲ κέλευε Κλεάνορα παρα-τεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα
διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ τὰς κώμας.” τότε μὲν δὴ ἠϋλίσθησαν
αὐτοῦ· τῇ δ’ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Σεύθης, κατα-καύσας τὰς κώμας, 270
ἀπ-ήει πάλιν.

Encampment in the plain. Intense cold.

Ἐκ τούτου Σεύθης ἀπ-έπεμψεν Ἡρακλείδην εἰς Πέ-
ρινθον ἀπο-δόσθαι τὴν λείαν, ὅπως μισθὸς γένοιτο τοῖς
στρατιώταις· αὐτὸς δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο
ἐν τῷ Θυνῶν πεδίῳ. οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ ἐκ-λιπόντες τὰς κώμας 275
ἔφευγον εἰς τὰ ὄρη. ἦν δὲ χιὼν πολλὴ καὶ ψῦχος τοσοῦ-
τον, ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ, ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, ἐπήγνυτο, καὶ
ὁ οἶνος ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγείοις· καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πολλῶν καὶ
ῥῖνες καὶ ὦτα ἀπ-εκαίοντο. ἔδοξε δὲ τῷ Σεύθῃ ἀνλίσθηναι
αὐτοῦ, ἵνα οἱ ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους μὴ τρέφοιντο ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν. 280
καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ἐσκήνει ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων
ἐπιλέκτους ἄνδρας, ἐσκήνει ἐν τῇ ἀνωτάτῳ κώμῃ ὑπὸ τὸ
ὄρος· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πλησίον κατ-εσκήνησαν ἐν
τοῖς ὀρείοις Θραξί.

A night attack from the Thracians.

Εἰς δὲ τὴν ἐπ-ιοῦσαν νύκτα οἱ Θυνοὶ ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ 285
ὄρους ἐπι-τίθενται τοῖς Ἕλλησι. ἐπεὶ δ’ ἐγένοντο κατὰ
τὰς θύρας ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰς-ηκόντιζον, οἱ
δὲ ἐν-επίμπρασαν τὰς οἰκίας· καὶ καλοῦντες Ξενοφῶντα
ὀνομαστὶ ἐκέλευον αὐτὸν ἐξ-ιόντα ἀπο-θνήσκειν. καὶ ἤδη

290 τε πῦρ ἐφαίνετο διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου, καὶ οἱ περὶ τὸν Ξενο-
 φῶντα ἦσαν ἔνδον. ἐνταῦθα δὲ Σιλανὸς Μακίστιος σημαί-
 νει τῇ σάλπιγγι· καὶ εὐθὺς πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐκ-πηδῶσιν
 ἐκ τῶν οἰκημάτων σπάσαντες τὰ ξίφη. οἱ δὲ Θρᾶκες ἔφευ-
 γον· καὶ οἱ μὲν αὐτῶν ἐλήφθησαν, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἀπ-έθανον·
 295 οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον τοὺς λοιποὺς ἕξω τῆς κόμης. τῶν
 δὲ Θυνῶν τινὲς, ὑπο-στραφέντες ἐν τῷ σκότει ἐτρωσάν
 τινας τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀκουτίοις· οὐδεὶς δὲ αὐτῶν ἀπ-έθανε.
 Σεύθης δὲ ἦκε σὺν ἑπτὰ ἱππεῦσι καὶ ἐβοήθει τοῖς Ἕλλησι,
 ἔχων τὸν σαλπιγκτὴν τὸν Θράκιον.

*The Thracian tribes submit to Seuthes. Generous conduct
 of Xenophon.*

300 Ἦδη δὲ ὁ Σεύθης εἶχε καὶ τριπλασίαν δύναμιν· πολλοὶ
 γὰρ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν, ἀκούοντες τὰ πεπραγμένα, συν-εστρα-
 τεύοντο αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ Θυνοὶ, ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους
 πολλοὺς μὲν ὀπλίτας πολλοὺς δὲ πελταστὰς πολλοὺς
 δὲ ἱππέας, κατα-βάντες ἰκέτευον σπείσασθαι. ὁ δὲ
 305 Σεύθης, καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπ-εδείκνυνεν ἃ λέγοιεν,
 καὶ οὐκ ἔφη σπείσασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιτο τιμωρή-
 σασθαι αὐτούς. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· “Ἄλλ’ ἐγωγε νομίζω αὐτοὺς
 καὶ νῦν ἔχειν ἱκανὴν δίκην, εἰ δοῦλοι ἔσονται ἀντὶ ἐλευ-
 θέρων. συμ-βουλεύω οὖν σοι λαμβάνειν ὁμήρους τοὺς
 310 δυνατωτάτους κακόν τι ποιεῖν, ἔαν δὲ τοὺς γέροντας
 οἴκοι μένειν.” πάντες οὖν ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρᾳ ὑφ-ίεντο
 τῷ Σεύθῃ.

The Greeks are not paid in full. Xenophon unfairly treated.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ Ἡρακλείδης παρ-ῆν ἐκ Περίνθου, ἔχων
 τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας, ἧς ἀπ-έδοτο. Σεύθης δὲ ἀπ-εδίδου

τὸν μισθὸν τῷ στρατεύματι εἴκοσι μόνον ἡμερῶν· ὁ γὰρ 315
 Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐκ ἐμ-πολήσειε πλείουν τῆς λείας.
 ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν ἀχθεσθεὶς εἶπε· “ Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Ἡρα-
 κλείδῃ, οὐ κήδεσθαι Σεύθου ὥς δεῖ· εἰ γὰρ ἐκήδου, ἦκες
 ἂν φέρων πλήρη τὸν μισθόν· καὶ εἰ μὴ ἄλλως ἐδύνω
 πορίζεσθαι τοῦτον, καὶ ἀπ-έδου ἂν τὰ σεαυτοῦ ἱμάτια.” 320
 Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἔδεισε μὴ ἐκ-βληθείη ἐκ τῆς
 Σεύθου φιλίας· καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας δι-έβαλλε
 Ξενοφῶντα πρὸς Σεύθην ὃ τι ἐδύνατο. οἱ μὲν δὲ στρα-
 τιῶται ἐν-εκάλουν Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι οὐκ εἶχον τὸν μισθόν·
 Σεύθης δὲ ἤχθετο αὐτῷ, ὅτι ἐντόνως ἀπ-ήτει τὸν μισθὸν 325
 τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ οὐκέτι φιλικῶς δι-έκειτο αὐτῷ, ὥσ-
 περ τὸ πρόσθεν.

Sparta wants the army. Seuthes entertains the envoys.

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ ἀφ-ικνοῦνται Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων
 καὶ Πολύνικος παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν ὅτι οἱ Λακε-
 δαιμόνιοι μέλλουσι στρατεῦεσθαι ἐπὶ Τισσαφέρην, καὶ 330
 ὅτι ὁ Θίβρων δέεται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς· καὶ ὑπ-ισχ-
 νοῦνται μισθόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἦλθον, εὐθὺς
 ὁ Ἡρακλείδης λέγει τῷ Σεύθῃ· “ Τοῦτο γεγένηται κάλ-
 λιστον· οἱ μὲν γὰρ Λακεδαιμόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύ-
 ματος, σὺ δὲ οὐκέτι δέη· ἔαν δὲ ἀπο-διδῶς τὸ στράτευμα 335
 αὐτοῖς, οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκέτι ἀπ-αιτήσουσι σὲ τὸν μισθόν,
 ἀλλ’ ἀπ-αλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας.” ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ
 Σεύθης κελεύει παρ-άγειν τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ ἔλεγεν ὅτι
 ἀπο-διδοίη τὸ στράτευμα τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις, καὶ ἐξένιζεν
 αὐτοὺς μεγαλοπρεπῶς. Ξενοφῶντα δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει ἐπὶ 340
 ξένια, οὐδὲ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν οὐδένα.

Xenophon's character, as drawn by Seuthes and Heraclides.

Ἐρωτώντων δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων ποῖός τις ἀνὴρ εἴη
 Ξενοφῶν, ὁ Σεύθης ἀπ-εκρίνατο, ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἄλλα εἴη
 οὐ κακὸς, φιλοστρατιώτης δέ· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο χεῖρον εἴη
 345 αὐτῷ. οἱ δὲ εἶπον· “Ἄλλ’ ἢ δημαγωγεῖ ὁ ἀνὴρ τοὺς
 ἀνδρας;” καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, “Πάνυ μὲν οὖν,” ἔφη.
 “Ἄρα οὖν,” ἔφασαν, “οὐκ ἐναντιώσεται ἡμῖν περὶ τῆς
 ἀπαγωγῆς τῆς στρατιᾶς;” “Ἄλλ’ ἐὰν ὑμεῖς,” ἔφη ὁ
 Ἡρακλείδης, “συν-λέξαντες τοὺς στρατιώτας ὑπό-σχησθε
 350 αὐτοῖς τὸν μισθόν, ἔκουντες ἀπο-δραμοῦνται σὺν ὑμῖν.
 καὶ αὐριοι ἄξομεν ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα ὅτι, ἐπειδὰν
 ἴδωσιν ὑμᾶς, ἄσμενοι συν-δραμοῦνται ὑμῖν.” αὐτὴ μὲν ἡ
 ἡμέρα οὕτως ἔληξε.

*The Spartans make their proposals to the army, and promise
 pay. Xenophon accused of unfair dealing.*

Τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης ἄγουσι
 355 τοὺς Λάκωνας ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα· τῷ δὲ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην·
 “Δοκεῖ τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις πολεμεῖν Τισσαφέρνει, τῷ
 ἀδικήσαντι ὑμᾶς· ἐὰν οὖν ἴητε σὺν ἡμῖν, τιμωρήσεσθε
 τε τὸν ἐχθρὸν καὶ λήψεσθε τὸν μισθόν.” οἱ δὲ στρα-
 τιῶται ἄσμενοι ἤκουσαν ταῦτα· καὶ εὐθὺς ἀν-ίσταταιί τις
 360 τῶν Ἀρκάδων, κατ-ηγορήσων τοῦ Ξενοφώντος, καὶ λέγει
 ᾧδε· “Ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἀν ἡμεν
 παρ’ ὑμῖν, εἰ μὴ Ξενοφῶν ἀπ-ήγαγεν ἡμᾶς δεῦρο· σὺν
 τούτῳ δὲ στρατευόμενοι καὶ νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν οὐδὲν πε-
 παύμεθα· καὶ τὸν μὲν ἡμέτερον μισθὸν αὐτὸς ἔχει, ἡμᾶς
 365 δὲ ἀπο-στερεῖ.” μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀν-έστη ὁμοίως καὶ
 ἄλλος. ἐκ δὲ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν ᾧδε·

Xenophon's defence. i. 'In all that I have done I have sought your welfare, and tried to carry out your wishes.'

“ Ἀλλὰ πάντα μὲν ἐμαντῶ κακὰ δεῖ προς-δοκᾶν, ἐπεὶ γε νῦν ὑφ' ὑμῶν αἰτίας ἔχω περὶ τούτων, ἐν οἷς παρεσχόμην περὶ ὑμῶν πλείστην προθυμίαν. ἀπ-ετραπόμην μὲν γε ἤδη ὠρμημένος οἴκαδε, ἀκούων ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἐν ἀπό- 370 ροις, καὶ βουλόμενος ὠφελῆσαι ὑμᾶς, εἴ τι δυναίμην. μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα Σεύθης ἔπεμπε πρὸς ἐμὲ πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ ὑπ-ισχνεῖτό μοι πολλὰ, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτόν· ἀλλὰ τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐπ-εχείρησα ποιεῖν, ὥς αὐτοὶ ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, ἐβουλόμην δὲ ὡς τάχιστα δια-βιβάσαι 375 ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ταῦτα γὰρ καὶ ἐνόμιζον βέλτιστα εἶναι ὑμῖν, καὶ ἥδειν ὑμᾶς βουλομένους. ἐπεὶ δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν ἐκώλυεν ἡμᾶς δια-πλεῖν, ἐκ τούτου συν-έλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πάντες ἐψηφίσασθε ἵεναι σὺν Σεύθῃ. 380 τί οὖν ἐγὼ ἐνταῦθα ἡδίκηκα, ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἔνθα ἐδόκει πᾶσιν ὑμῖν πορεύεσθαι;

ii. 'Seuthes has cheated me, as well as you.' iii. 'Whatever good we have got by entering his service has been of my procuring.'

“ Περὶ δὲ τοῦ μισθοῦ, ὃν ἐμὲ λέγετε ἀπ-εστερηκέναι ὑμᾶς, ὁμνυμι ὑμῖν μηδὲ ἔχειν ἂν Σεύθης ἐμοὶ ἰδίᾳ ὑπ-έσχετο· καὶ συν-επ-όμνυμι μηδὲ αὐτὸς εἰληφέναι, ἂν οἱ 385 ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον, μηδὲ ὅσα ἔνιοι τῶν λοχαγῶν· καὶ ἡσχυνόμην ἂν δὴ, εἰ ὑπὸ πολεμίου γε οὕτως ἐξηπατήθην· φίλῳ δὲ ὄντι αἰσχιόν μοι εἶναι δοκεῖ ἐξ-απατᾶν ἢ ἐξ-απατᾶσθαι. Ἀνα-μνήσθητε δὲ πρὸς τούτοις ἐν ποίᾳ ἀπορίᾳ ἦτε, ὅτε ἐγὼ ἀν-ήγαγον ὑμᾶς πρὸς Σεύθην. 390

Ἄρισταρχος μὲν ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος οὐκ εἶα ὑμᾶς εἰς-ιέναι
 εἰς τὴν Πέρινθον, ὑπαίθριοι δὲ ἔξω ἐστρατοπεδεύετε,
 μέσος δὲ χειμῶν ἦν· τὰ δὲ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν σπάνια, καὶ
 οὐκ ἦν ἡμῖν κατα-λαμβάνειν ἀνδράποδα ἢ πρόβατα· οὐ
 395 γὰρ εἶχομεν οὔτε ἵππεῖς οὔτε πελταστὰς, ὥστε λαβεῖν
 ταῦτα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγὼ προς-έλαβον ὑμῖν Σεύθην σύμμαχον,
 ἔχοντα καὶ ἱππέας καὶ πελταστὰς, ταῦτα πάντα προς-
 εγίγνετο ἡμῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἐν ταῖς κώμας εὐρίσκομεν σῖτον
 ἀφθονώτερον, καὶ οὐκέτι ἐωρῶμεν πολέμιον οὐδένα. ὁ
 400 γὰρ Σεύθης παρ-εἶχε ταύτην τὴν ἀσφαλείαν ὑμῖν οὕτως
 ἀποροῦσι· καὶ νῦν εἰ μὴ πάνυ πολὺν προς-εδίδου ὑμῖν
 μισθόν, τί ἔδει ἄχθεσθαι περὶ τούτου; ἢ τί διὰ τοῦτο
 οἴεσθε χρήναι ἐμὲ αὐτίκα ἀπο-θανεῖν;

iv. *'I have sacrificed all for you; is this your gratitude?'*

“ Καὶ τὰ μὲν δὴ ὑμέτερα πράγματα ἐστὶ τοιαῦτα·
 405 ἄγετε δὲ δὴ, καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ σκέψασθε παρὰ ταῦτα. ἐγὼ
 γὰρ, ὅτε μὲν πρότερον ὠρμώμην ὀϊκάδε, εἶχον μὲν ἔπαινον
 πολὺν πρὸς ὑμῶν, εἶχον δὲ δι' ὑμᾶς καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων
 Ἑλλήνων εὐκλείαν. ἐπιστευόμην δὲ ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων·
 ἄλλως γὰρ οὐκ ἂν με ἔπεμπον πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. νῦν δὲ
 410 ἀπ-έρχομαι δια-βεβλημένος μὲν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους ὑφ'
 ὑμῶν, ἀπ-ηχθημένος δὲ Σεύθῃ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν· ὑμεῖς δὲ, ὑπὲρ
 ὧν ἐγὼ ταῦτα πολλὰ πάσχω, τοιαύτην ἔχετε γνώμην περὶ
 ἐμοῦ. ἐὰν δὲ ποιήσητε περὶ ἐμὲ ἃ λέγετε, ἴστε ὅποιον
 ἄνδρα ἀπο-κτενεῖτε· πολλὰ μὲν γὰρ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ σὺν
 415 ὑμῖν ἐπόνησα καὶ ἐκινδύνευσα, καὶ ἐστησάμην σὺν ὑμῖν
 πολλὰ βαρβάρων τρόπαια· ἐπειρασάμην δὴ ποιεῖν πᾶν
 ἀγαθὸν πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ὅσον ἐγὼ ἡδυνάμην. νῦν γὰρ ὑμῖν
 ἔξ-εστι πορεύεσθαι ὅποι ἂν βούλησθε καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ
 κατὰ θάλατταν· ἄρ' οὖν νῦν δὴ καιρὸς ὑμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι

κατα-κτανεῖν ἐμὲ ὥς τάχιστα; οὐ μὲν, ὅτε γε ἐν τοῖς 420
 ἀπόροις ἡμεν, οὐδὲν τοιοῦτο ἐλέγετε· ἀλλὰ καὶ πατέρα
 ἐμὲ ἐκαλεῖτε, καὶ ὑπ-ισχνεῖσθε ἀεὶ μνήσεσθαι ἐμοῦ, ὥς
 εὐεργέτου. οὐ μέντοι οὗτοί εἰσιν ἀγνώμονες, οἱ νῦν
 ἦκοντες ἐφ' ὑμᾶς· οὐδὲ, ὥς ἐγὼ οἶομαι, τούτοις δοκεῖτε
 εἶναι βελτίονες, τοιοῦτοι ὄντες περὶ ἐμέ.” 425

*The Spartans take Xenophon's part. Heraclides shows his
 sagacity. Xenophon leaves Seuthes.*

Ταῦτα εἰπὼν ἐπαύσατο. Χαρμῖνος δὲ ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος
 ἀνα-στὰς εἶπεν· “Ἄλλ’ ἐμοὶ μέντοι οὐ δικαίως δοκεῖτε
 χαλεπαίνειν τῷ ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ· ἐγὼ γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς μαρτυ-
 ρήσω ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ. ἡμῶν γὰρ ἐρωτώντων περὶ Ξενοφών-
 τος, ποῖός τις ἀνὴρ εἴη, Σεύθης ἀπ-εκρίνατο ὅτι οὐ κακὸς 430
 μὲν εἴη, ἄγαν δὲ φιλοστρατιώτης.” ἀνα-στὰς ἐπὶ τούτῳ
 Πολυκράτης Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν· “Ὅρῳ, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ
 Ἡρακλείδην ἐνταῦθα παρ-όντα, ὃς παρ-έλαβε τὰ χρή-
 ματα, ἃ ἡμεῖς ἐκτησάμεθα· καὶ ἀπο-δόμενος ταῦτα οὔτε
 Σεύθῃ οὔτε ἡμῖν ἀπ-έδωκε τὴν τιμὴν, ἀλλὰ αὐτὸς ἔκλεψε. 435
 ἐὰν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν, συλ-ληψόμεθα αὐτόν· οὐ γὰρ δὴ
 οὗτός γε Θρᾷξ ἐστίν, ἀλλ’ Ἕλλην ὢν Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖ.”
 Ἀκούσας ταῦτα, ὁ Ἡρακλείδης προσ-ελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ
 λέγει· “Ἡμεῖς, ἐὰν σωφρονῶμεν, ἀπ-ιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ὥς
 τάχιστα.” καὶ ἀνα-βάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους ὥχοντο εἰς 440
 τὸ ἑαυτῶν στρατόπεδον. καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης πέμπει
 ἄγγελον πρὸς Ξενοφώντα, καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν κατα-μεῖναι
 παρ’ ἑαυτῷ, ἔχοντα χιλίους ὀπλίτας· καὶ ὑπ-ισχνεῖται
 αὐτῷ ἀπο-δώσειν τὰ τε χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ καὶ τὰ
 ἄλλα ἃ ὑπ-έσχετο. ὁ δὲ Ξενοφὼν ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ 445
 τῷ βασιλεῖ, πότῃρα ἄμεινον εἴη μένειν παρὰ Σεύθῃ, ἢ

ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι· ὁ δὲ ἐσήμηνεν αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.

Medosades complains of the Greeks. Xenophon refers him to the Spartans. Their answer.

Ἐκ τούτου Σεύθης μὲν ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο πόρρω τῶν
 450 Ἑλλήνων· οἱ δὲ ἐσκήνησαν ἐν κώμας ὅθεν λήψοιντο
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. αὐται δὲ αἱ κῶμαι δεδομένοι ἦσαν Μη-
 δοσάδῃ ὑπὸ Σεύθου. ὁ οὖν Μηδοσάδης ἔρχεται πρὸς
 Ξενοφῶντα καὶ λέγει· “Ἀδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, πορ-
 θοῦντες τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας· προ-λέγομεν οὖν ὑμῖν
 455 ἀπ-ιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας.” ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· “Τί
 πρὸς ἐμὲ λέγεις ταῦτα; οὐ γὰρ ἔγωγε ἔτι ἄρχω, ἀλλὰ
 Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς παρ-εδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα, οὔτε
 ἐμὲ παρα-καλέσαντες, οὔτε τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν οὐ-
 δένα.” ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης ἐκέλευε τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι
 460 τὸν Χαρμῖνον καὶ Πολύνικον. ὁ δὲ προς-ελθὼν αὐτοῖς
 ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Μηδοσάδης προ-εἶποι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν ἀπ-ιέναι
 ἐκ τῆς χώρας. οἱ δὲ Λάκωνες εὐθὺς ἦλθον πρὸς Μηδο-
 σάδην καὶ ἔλεξαν· “Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν ἀπ-ίοιμεν ἂν, ὅποτε
 οὔτοι ἔχοιεν τὸν μισθόν· εἰ δὲ μὴ, βοηθήσομεν τούτοις
 465 καὶ τιμωρησόμεθα ὑμᾶς ὥς ἀδικοῦντας.”

Xenophon goes to Seuthes, and obtains pay for the army.

Ὁ δὲ Μηδοσάδης ἐκέλευε πέμπειν Ξενοφῶντα παρὰ
 Σεύθην περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ· ἐδεῖτο δὲ μὴ καίειν τὰς κώμας.
 ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα καὶ ἄλλους σὺν αὐτῷ. ὁ
 δὲ ἐλθὼν παρὰ τὸν Σεύθην ἔλεγέ τε πολλὰ αἰτιώμενος,
 470 καὶ ἐδεῖτο αὐτοῦ ἀπο-διδόναι τῷ στρατεύματι τὸν μισθόν.
 ὁ δὲ Σεύθης ἀπ-εκρίνατο· “Ἐγὼ μὲν οὔτε δι-ενοήθην
 πώποτε ἀπο-στερῆσαι ὑμᾶς τὸν μισθόν, ἀπο-δώσω τε·

ἀργύριον δὲ οὐκ ἔχω, πλὴν ἢ μικρόν τι, καὶ τοῦτό σοι δίδωμι, τάλαντον· βοῦς δὲ ἑξακοσίους καὶ πρόβατα τετρακισ-χίλια καὶ ἀνδράποδα εἴκοσι καὶ ἑκατόν. ταῦτα 475 λαβὼν ἀπ-ιθι.” τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία ἀπ-έδωκεν αὐτοῖς ἃ ὑπέσχετο· ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρμῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον, “Ταῦτα,” ἔφη, “σέσωσται δι’ ὑμᾶς τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ ἐγὼ παρα-δίδωμι αὐτὰ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διά-δοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ.” οἱ μὲν οὖν παρα-λαβόντες ἐπώλουν, καὶ δι- 480 ἐδίδουν τοῖς στρατιώταις· Ξενοφῶν δὲ παρ-εσκευάζετο ὡς ἀπ-ιὼν οἴκαδε. προσ-ελθόντες δὲ αὐτῷ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπ-ελθεῖν, πρὶν ἀπ-αγάγοι τὸ στράτευμα καὶ παρα-δοίῃ τῷ Θίβρωνι.

Xenophon sacrifices to Zeus ‘the Gracious.’

Ἐντεῦθεν δι-έπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον· καὶ ἐνταῦθα Εὐ- 485 κλείδης, μάντις Φλιάσιος, ἀπ-αντᾷ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι. οὗτος συν-ῆδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἡρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον ἔχει. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ἔσεσθαι μηδὲ ἐφόδιον ἱκανὸν ὥστε ἀπ-ιέναι, εἰ μὴ ἀπό-δοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ ἃ εἶχεν ἀμφὶ ἑαυτόν. ὁ δὲ Εὐκλείδης οὐκ ἐπίστευεν αὐτῷ· 490 ἐπεὶ δὲ Λαμψακηνοὶ ἔπεμψαν ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι καὶ ἔθυε τῷ Ἀπόλλωνι, Εὐκλείδης ἰδὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα εἶπεν, ὅτι ἤδη πείθοιτο αὐτῷ μὴ ἔχειν χρήματα. “Ἄλλ’ οἶδα,” ἔφη, “ὅτι καὶ ἐὰν μέλλῃς ποτὲ ἔξειν, ἔσται τι ἐμπόδιόν σοι· καὶ ὅτι ἐὰν μηδὲν ἄλλο ἢ ἐμπόδιον, σὺ σαυτῷ ἔσει 495 ἐμπόδιος. νῦν δὲ ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ Μειλίχιός ἐστί σοι ἐμπόδιος.” καὶ ἐπ-ῆρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ἤδη θύσειε τούτῳ τῷ θεῷ. ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἔφη τεθυκέναι τῷ Διὶ τῷ Μειλιχίῳ ἐξ ὅτου ἀπεδήμησεν. ὁ οὖν Εὐκλείδης συν-εβούλευσεν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραία Ξενοφῶν ἐθύετο, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγίγνετο 500 καλά. καὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφ-ικνοῦνται Λαμψακηνῶν

τινες δώσοντας χρήματα τῷ στρατεύματι· καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 ξενίζει αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ ἀπ-έδοσαν αὐτῷ τὸν ἵππον, ὃν
 ἀπ-έδοτο ἐν Λαμψάκῳ, νομίζοντες αὐτὸν πεπρακέναι δι'
 505 ἔνδειαν· καὶ οὐκ ἤθελον ἀπο-λαβεῖν τὴν τιμὴν.

The Greeks attack Asidates, but are stoutly resisted.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος εἰς Ἄντανδρον
 . πρῶτον· εἶτα πορευόμενοι παρὰ θάλατταν ἀφ-ικνοῦντο εἰς
 Πέργαμον τῆς Μυσίας.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν ξενίζεται παρὰ τῇ Γογγύλῳ
 510 γυναικί. αὕτη δὲ ἔλεγεν αὐτῷ· “Ἀσιδάτης τίς ἐστὶν ἐν
 τῷ πεδίῳ, ἀνὴρ Πέρσης· τοῦτον, εἰ ἔλθοις τῆς νυκτὸς,
 λάβοις ἂν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τὰ χρήματα· ἔστι
 δὲ αὐτῷ πολλά.” ὁ οὖν Ξενοφῶν δειπνήσας ἐπορεύετο,
 λαβὼν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς τοὺς μάλιστα φίλους καὶ πιστοὺς
 515 ἑαυτῷ, ὅπως εὖ ποιήσειεν αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφ-ίκοντο περὶ
 μέσας νυκτὰς, τὰ μὲν ἀνδράποδα καὶ χρήματα τὰ πλεῖστα
 εἶων ἀπο-δρᾶναι, ὅπως λάβοιεν αὐτὸν τὸν Ἀσιδάτην καὶ
 τὰ ἐκείνου. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν κατὰ
 κράτος, ἐπ-εχειρήσαν δι-ορύττειν τὸ τεῖχος. ἅμα δὲ τῇ
 520 ἡμέρᾳ δι-ωρώρυκτο· οἱ δὲ ἔνδον ἤσθοντο. καὶ εὐθὺς ἐπάταξέ
 τις ἔνδοθεν ὀβελίσκῳ διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρὸν τοῦ ἐγγυτάτῳ·
 ἔπειτα δὲ ἐτόξενον καὶ ἔβαλλον, ὥστε μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι
 ἔτι παρ-ιέναι. ἄλλοι δὲ ἐκ-βοηθοῦσι πάμπολλοι, καὶ ἱπ-
 πεῖς καὶ ὀπλίται καὶ πελτασταὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίου χωρίων.

*Reinforcements arrive. Asidates taken. The army banded
 over to Thibron.*

525 Ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκόπουν πῶς ἀπο-χωροῖεν·
 καὶ λαβόντες ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ πρόβατα καὶ ἀνδράποδα
 ἀπ-ήλαυνον. ἐπεὶ δὲ Γογγύλος ἑώρα τοὺς μὲν Ἕλληνας

ὀλίγους ὄντας, τοὺς δὲ ἐπι-κειμένους αὐτοῖς πολλοὺς, ἐξ-
 ἔρχεται καὶ αὐτὸς, ἔχων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν· συν-εβοήθει
 δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς ἐξ Ἀλυσάρης. οἱ δὲ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα, 530
 ἐπεὶ πάνυ ἤδη ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν τοξευμάτων καὶ σφεν-
 δονῶν, μόλις δια-βαίνουνσι τὸν Κάϊκον ποταμόν· πολλοὶ
 δὲ αὐτῶν ἐτρώθησαν. οὕτω δια-σώζονται, ἔχοντες ἀνδρά-
 ποδα ὡς διακόσια καὶ πρόβατα πολλά. τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ
 ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐξ-άγει τῆς νυκτὸς πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα· ὁ δὲ 535
 Ἀσιδάτης ἐξ-αυλίζεται ἐν κώμας τιςὶν οὐ πρόσω κειμέ-
 ναις. ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐν-τυγχάνουσιν αὐτῷ,
 καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν καὶ γυναῖκα καὶ παῖδας καὶ τοὺς
 ἵππους καὶ πάντα τὰ χρήματα· ἔπειτα πάλιν ἀφ-ικνοῦνται
 εἰς Πέργαμον. ἐνταῦθα οἱ Λάκωνες καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ 540
 οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐδίδουν τῷ Ξενο-
 φῶντι ἐξαίρετα τῆς λείας, ἵππους καὶ ζεύγη καὶ τὰ ἄλλα.

Ἐν τούτῳ Θίβρων παρα-γενόμενος παρ-έλαβε τὸ στρά-
 τευμα· καὶ συμ-μίσξας αὐτὸ τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ ἐπολέμει
 πρὸς Τισσαφέρην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον.

NOTES.

CHAPTER I.

THE MARCH TOWARDS BABYLON.

[N.B. *In the first 100 lines no augmented tenses are used. There is a note on every augmented tense throughout the first chapter. After Chapter I there are notes on such augmented tenses only as present any peculiar difficulty.*]

Line 1. γίγνονται, the present instead of the past ἐγένοντο. Tenses are of two kinds, past or *dead*, and present or *living*. History, telling of the past, should only use past or dead tenses, but it often uses present or living tenses, to make the story more lively; as if the historian were looking on *at the time* the thing happened. Hence the present tense, when thus used, is called the *historical present*.

παῖδες δύο, instead of παῖδε δύο, because no stress is laid on the fact that there were *only two* of them. But further on in l. 4, where there *is* such a stress, we find ἀμφοτέρω τῶ παῖδε. Cp. IV. 279 note.

1. 2. Though Artaxerxes was the elder son, he was born before his father became king. Cyrus was born after Darius had succeeded to the throne, and this, according to Persian customs, gave him at least some claim. Darius I had chosen Xerxes to succeed him on the same ground. Cyrus was not thus chosen by his father; but he was the favourite of Parysatis (l. 18), and the queen-mother was powerful in Persia.

1. 3. ἀσθενῶν, pres. past nom. masc. sing. of ἀσθενέω, contracted from ἀσθενέων.

θανεῖν, 2 aor. infin. of θνήσκω (stem θαν-).

1. 4. παρ-εἶναι, pres. infin. of πάρ-ειμι, 'I am present.'

1. 6. ἀρχῆς, 'province.' A satrap was a viceroy under the king of Persia. The satrapy of Cyrus consisted of Lydia, Phrygia, and Cappadocia; the Ionian towns, or Greek colonies, had been under Tissaphernes, but about this time all of them, except Miletus, revolted to Cyrus.

οὖν, 'well then,' continuing the story. [Οὖν is probably = δν, the neut. part. of εἶμι, 'this being so,' like our 'in fact.']

l. 7. ἀνα-βαίνει, 'goes up,' i. e. inland or up from the coast. [Hence the expedition of Cyrus is called Ἀνά-βασις or the *March inland*. The retreat of the 10,000 Greeks should properly be called Κατά-βασις, or the *March down to the sea*].

l. 9. ἀνα-βάς, 2 aor. part. nom. masc. sing. of ἀνα-βαίνω (stem βα-).

βασιλείοις, 'palace,' sc. δώμασι. Distinguish τὰ βασιλείᾳ, neut. pl. of βασιλείος, from ἡ βασιλείᾳ, 'queen,' and this again from ἡ βασιλείᾳ, 'kingdom.'

l. 10. τελευτᾷ, 3 sing. pres. ind. of τελευτάω, contracted for τελευτάει.

l. 12. δια-βάλλει, 'accuses.' Βάλλειν is 'to throw,' διὰ, 'in different directions;' hence δια-βάλλειν, 'to pull to pieces' a person's character, i. e. 'slander' or 'accuse.' Thus in the New Test. ὁ Διάβολος is a title of Satan, 'the Accuser,' who tempts us to sin, and then *accuses* us before God.

l. 15. ἀπο-κτείνει, 1 aor. infin. act. of ἀπο-κτείνω.

ἡ μήτηρ, 'his mother,' lit. 'the mother' (of him whom we are talking about). The Greek article is used for the possessive pronoun ('my,' 'thy,' 'his,' etc.) when the sense makes the reference clear.

ἐξ-αιτησαμένη, 1 aor. part. mid. nom. fem. sing. of ἐξ-αίτέω.

l. 20. ἀφ-ικνοῦνται, 3 pl. pres. ind. of ἀφ-ικνέομαι contracted from ἀφ-ικνέονται.

l. 21. καὶ οὗτοι. Καὶ means (1) 'and,' joining two words or clauses together, (2) 'also' or 'even,' laying a stress on some particular word. *Nothing makes greater nonsense of a Greek sentence than to confound these two meanings of καί.* Think which makes sense here.

l. 22. βασιλεῖ, 'the king.' Βασιλεὺς without the article commonly means 'the great king' or 'the king of Persia,' being used like a proper name. Sometimes μέγας is added, as in l. 182 of this chapter.

τοῖς βαρβάροις τοῖς παρ' ἑαυτῷ. i. e. the Asiatics who were in his own service, as distinguished from the Persian envoys above mentioned, who 'came from the king' (l. 20).

l. 23. ὦσιν, 3 pl. pres. subj. of εἶμι, 'I am.' The ν is added to ὦσι because the next word begins with a vowel.

l. 24. τοῦ πολεμεῖν, Lat. *bellandi*. The article τὸ is used to make a declinable noun substantive of the so-called infinitive, so that it can be declined like the Latin gerund. The usage makes it clear that the infinitive really is, what it ought to be called, viz. a *verb-noun*.

l. 25. λάβη, 3 sing. 2 aor. subj. of λαμβάνω (stem λαβ-).

l. 26. Χερρονήσῳ. The name χερρό-νησος (or χερσό-νησος) is from χέρσος, 'land,' and νῆσος, 'island,' and means 'a peninsula.' It was used as a sort of proper name for the strip of land which forms part of Thrace, and runs out along the north side of the Hellespont.

l. 27. γενόμενος, 2 aor. part. of γίγνομαι (stem γεν-).

1. 29. λαβών, 2 aor. part. of λαμβάνω (stem λαβ-).

συλ-λέξας, 1 aor. part. nom. masc. sing. of συλ-λέγω.

1. 30. ταῖς πόλεσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων, the Greek colonies in Thrace on the Propontis, such as Byzantium and Perinthus.

1. 35. The Pisidians were a race of mountaineers, inhabiting the high-lands above Pamphylia, and were very troublesome to the satrapy of Cyrus.

1. 37. ἀνα-βαίνειν. Cp. 1. 7 n.

1. 39. λαβόντας, 2 aor. part. acc. masc. pl. of λαμβάνω (stem λαβ-).

1. 40. παρ-εἶναι εἰς Σάρδεϊς. As πάρ-ειμι = 'I am come,' it can be used with a preposition signifying motion *to* a place. Sardis was the capital of Lydia, and Lydia had been made a Persian satrapy by Cyrus the Great, when he conquered its king Croesus, B.C. 546.

1. 41. ἀκούσας, 1 aor. part. nom. masc. sing. of ἀκούω.

φοβούμενος, pres. part. mid. of φοβέω, contracted from φοβεόμενος.

1. 44. καὶ αὐτός. Think whether καὶ here means 'and' or 'also.' Cp. 1. 21 n.

1. 49. ἐπι-κειμένη, part. nom. fem. sing. of ἐπί-κειμαι.

δια-βάς, 2 aor. part. nom. masc. sing. of δια-βαίνω (stem βα-).

1. 50. Κολοσσάς. Colossae was formerly one of the most populous towns of Phrygia. Its inhabitants were the Colossians, to whom St. Paul addressed his epistle.

1. 54. βασιλείᾳ. Cp. 1. 9 n. Besides this palace of Cyrus at Celaenae there was another belonging to the King of Persia, said to have been built by Xerxes, during his retreat from Greece after the battle of Salamis.

1. 56. γυμνάσαι, 1 aor. infin. act. of γυμνάζω.

1. 61. γίνονται, lit. 'there *become*,' i. e. 'there turn out' or 'are found to be.'

1. 64. Καῦστρου πέδιον, 'the Plain of Caÿster' or 'Caÿstrum.' It has nothing to do with the river Caÿster, which is a long way to the south-west of this place. See Vocabulary.

1. 65. ἀφ-ικνεῖται, 3 sing. pres. ind. of ἀφ-ικνέομαι, contracted from ἀφ-ικνέεται.

1. 67. δεῖται, 3 sing. pres. ind. of δέομαι, contracted from δέεται.

1. 68. ἐπι-δεῖξαι, 1 aor. infin. act. of ἐπι-δείκνυμι.

1. 70. ταχθῆναι, 1 aor. infin. pass. of τάττω.

εἰώθασι, 3 pl. of εἶωθα. (See in Vocabulary.)

1. 71. ἐπὶ τεττάρων, 'four deep,' lit. 'on a *base* of four.' So ἐπὶ μιᾷς, 'in single file.'

1. 75. τεταγμένοι, perf. part. pass. nom. pl. masc. of τάττω.

1. 78. ἐκ-κεκαλυμμένας, perf. part. pass. acc. pl. fem. of ἐκ-καλύπτω.

It means 'unpacked' from the cases in which the ἀσπίδες, or large shields, were always carried on the march.

l. 79. στήσας, 1 aor. part. act. nom. sing. masc. of ἵστημι (stem στα-) 'having placed,' or 'placing.' Cp. l. 205 n.

l. 82. προ-βαλέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, 'to advance their arms,' i. e. hold their shields in front of them, at the same time couching their lances, in readiness for a charge. Προ-βαλέσθαι is the 2 aor. infin. mid. of προ-βάλλω (stem βαλ-).

ἐπ-ιέναι, pres. infin. of ἔπ-ειμι, 'I advance.'

l. 85. ἐκ τούτου, sc. χρόνου, lit. 'from this time,' i. e. 'after this,' Lat. *inde*. So ἐξ οὗ, 'from which (time),' 'since,' Lat. *ex quo*; ἐν ᾧ, 'during which (time),' 'while.'

προ-ιόντες, pres. part. nom. masc. pl. of πρό-ειμι, 'I go forward.'

l. 88. οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς φεύγουσι is short for οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ φεύγουσιν ἐξ αὐτῆς, 'those who were in the market flee out of it.' We cannot translate 'they flee from the market,' because the article οἱ makes οἱ-ἐκ-τῆς-ἀγορᾶς all one word. Cp. l. 109 n.

κατα-λιπόντες, 2 aor. part. nom. masc. pl. of κατα-λείπω (stem λῖπ-).

ll. 90, 91. ἰδοῦσα, ἰδών, part. nom. sing. fem. and masc. of εἶδον, the 2 aor. with pres. ὁράω.

l. 92. φοβῆσαι, 1 aor. infin. act. of φοβέω.

l. 95. ιέναι, pres. infin. of εἶμι, 'I go.'

l. 96. βασιλέα. Cp. l. 21 n.

l. 100. ὁρῶντες, pres. part. nom. pl. masc. of ὁράω, contracted from ὁράοντες.

l. 101. σιωπῶσιν, 3 pl. pres. ind. of σιωπάω contracted from σιωπάουσιν. For the added ν cp. l. 23 n.

l. 103. παρ-οὔσι, dat. pl. masc. of παρ-ὼν, pres. part. of πάρ-ειμι (*sum*).

ἐ-γέν-ετο, 2nd aor. of γίγνομαι, (stem γεν-).

l. 104. ἐ-τίμη-σε, 1st aor. of τιμά-ω, future τιμή-σω.

ἐ-δω-κε, 1st aor. of δίδω-μι (stem δο-), future δώ-σω, but 1st aor. ἐ-δω-κα. [So τί-θη-μι, 1st aor. ἔ-θη-κα, ἵ-η-μι, 1st aor. ἦ-κα].

l. 105. ἐ-δαπάν-ων, imperf. of δαπανά-ω, contracted from ἐ-δαπάνα-ον.

l. 106. ἐ-πολέμη-σα, 1st aor. of πολεμέ-ω, future πολεμή-σω.

l. 107. Θράκας, i. e. the Thracians upon the Hellespont and the Propontis. Cp. l. 30.

ὠφέλ-ουν, imperf. of ὠφελέ-ω, contracted from ὠφέλε-ον.

l. 108. ἐ-κάλ-ει, imperf. of καλέ-ω, contracted from ἐ-κάλε-ε.

ἐ-πορευό-μην, imperf. of πορεύο-μαι, the middle of πορεύ-ω.

l. 109. ὠφελοίην, pres. opt. of ὠφελέω, cp. III. 133 n.

τῶν-πρὸς-ἐμὲ-εὐεργεσιῶν. All that comes between the article and its noun (as πρὸς-ἐμὲ here comes between τῶν and εὐεργεσιῶν) is

equivalent to an *epithet* of the noun (cp. l. 88 n.). There may be only *one* word between, as δ τότε πόλεμος, 'the war at that time,' lit. 'the *then* war' (cp. IV. 124 n.); or there may be two or more words, as here. A Greek could say δ -των-Ἀθηναίων-πρὸς-τοὺς-Λακεδαιμονίους-ἐν-Πελοποννήσῳ-πόλεμος, 'the war of the Athenians with the Lacedaemonians in the Peloponnesus,' where all that comes between δ and πόλεμος serves as a description of the war.

l. 111. προ-δόντι, dat. sing. masc. of προ-δοῦς, 2nd aor. part. act. of προ-δίδωμι (stem δο-).

l. 115. ἔπεσθαι ἐμοί, 'follow me (as your leader),' but ἔψομαι σὺν ὑμῖν, 'follow on an equality with you.'

l. 117. ἂν εἶναι, 'that I am *likely* to be.' The direct εἶην ἂν, 'I should be,' is expressed after οἶμαι by the infinitive ἂν εἶναι.

l. 118. ὠφελῆσαι, 1st aor. infin. act. of ὠφελέω.

l. 119. ἀλέξασθαι, 1st aor. infin. mid. of ἀλέξω.

ἵστε ἰόντα. A participle is used after verbs of knowing or perceiving, to express a *fact*; thus οἶδα αὐτὸν ὄντα means, 'I know *that* he is,' but οἶδα εἶναι would mean, 'I know *how* to be.' [If the participle refers to the subject of the verb, it is put in the *nom.*, as οἶδα ὦν, 'I know that *I* am.']

l. 120. εἶπ-εν, 2nd aor. from stem ἐπ-. The present is supplied by φημί. There is a letter lost before ἐπ- which = ϕ επ-, hence the augment does not turn this into ἦπ-, but into ἐ ϕ επ- = εἶπ-. So ἔπομαι, 'to follow,' imperf. εἰπόμεν.

l. 121. ἐπ-ῆνεσαν, 1st aor. of ἐπ-αινέ-ω, future -έσω. The augmented η stands for ε + αι, the ε combining with α to make η, and the ι being written underneath or 'subscript.'

For Xenias and Pasion cp. l. 165 and following lines.

l. 122. ἐ-στρατοπεδεύ-σαντο, 1st aor. mid. of στρατοπεδεύ-ω.

l. 124. μετ-ε-πέμπ-ετο, imperf. mid. of μετα-πέμπ-ω.

l. 125. ἤθελ-εν, imperf. of ἐθέλ-ω. The augmented η is here ε + ε.

ἔ-λεγ-ε, imperf. of λέγ-ω.

l. 126. ἐ-κέλευ-ε, imperf. of κελεύ-ω.

l. 127. οὐκ-ἤθελεν, to be taken as one word = 'refused.'

l. 128. Distinguish μετὰ ταῦτα, 'after these things,' from μετὰ τούτων, 'with these.'

συν-αγαγών, 2nd aor. part. act. of συν-άγω.

ἔ-λεξ-ε, 1st aor. of λέγ-ω, future λέξ-ω.

l. 133. ἔ-ψευσ-μαι, perf. pass., with an active meaning, of ψεύδ-ω, future mid. ψεύ-σομαι, perf. pass. ἔ-ψευσ-μαι (= ἔ-ψευσδ-μαι).

l. 134. ἐπι-θῆ μοι δίκην, 'may punish me,' lit. 'place a penalty on me.' Lat. *imponere poenas*. Θῆ, is the subj. of stem θε-, reduplicated into present τί-θη-μι.

1. 135. ἡδικῆ-σθαι, perf. pass. infin. of ἀ-δικέ-ω, future -ήσω, perf. ἡ-δίκη-κα, perf. pass. ἡ-δίκη-μαι. Here the augmented η = ε + α. This is formed from the adjective ἄδικος; verbs formed from compound nouns generally end in -εω.

1. 141. οὔτε . . . οὐδενός. Two or more negatives in Greek do not make an affirmative, as in modern English, but a stronger negative. Cp. II. 59 n. Compare the early or more natural English, which is now vulgar, e. g. 'I don't know nothing;' so this does not mean 'not none' but 'not any.'

1. 147. μετὰ ταῦτα. Cp. l. 128 n.

1. 148. ἡρώτ-ων, imperf. of ἑρωτά-ω, contracted from ἡρώτα-ον. The augmented η here = ε + ε.

1. 149. ἀπ-εκρίνατο, 1st aor. mid. of ἀπο-κρίνω, future ἀπο-κρίν-ω, 1st aor. ἀπ-έ-κριν-α.

1. 151. τιμωρησόμεθα, 'we will punish.' Distinguish the active with the dative τιμωρέω σοι, 'I take vengeance for you,' i. e. 'defend you,' from the middle with the accusative τιμωρέομαι σε, 'I avenge myself upon you,' i. e. 'punish you.' Cp. ἀμύνασθαι, III. 55 n.

1. 153. πεμφθέντες, 1st aor. pass. part. nom. pl. of πέμπω.

1. 154. ὑπ-ώπτει-ον, imperf. of ὑπ-οπτέ-ω, (ω = ε + ο).

1. 155. ἐ-δόκ-ει, imperf. of δοκέ-ω, contracted from ἐ-δόκε-ε.

1. 156. εἶπεν. Cp. l. 120 n.

1. 158. ἐσχάτην, 'last,' i. e. 'furthestmost.' Lat. *extremus*. Issi was close to the boundary between Cilicia and Syria.

1. 159. παρ-ῆσαν, 3rd pl. of παρ-ῆν, imperf. of πάρ-ειμι. Lat. *ad-sum*.

1. 161. ὠρμ-ουν, imperf. of ὀρμέ-ω, contracted from ὠρμε-ον. Distinguish ὀρμέ-ω, 'I anchor,' from ὀρμά-ω, 'I start,' of which the imperf. is ὠρμα-ον contracted ὠρμ-ων.

1. 162. ἤκου-σε, 1st aor. of ἀκού-ω, future ἀκού-σω, (η = ε + α).

1. 163. ἀπ-ήλαυνε, imperf. of ἀπ-ελαύν-ω, (η = ε + ε).

1. 164. εἶχ-ε, imperf. of ἔχ-ω. For the augmented form, cp. εἶπον, l. 120 n.

ἐ-λέγ-ετο, imperf. pass. of λέγ-ω. See l. 125 n.

1. 168. ἀπ-έπλευ-σαν, 1st aor. of ἀπο-πλέ-ω, future ἀπο-πλεύ-σομαι. Here again the υ is the letter lost in the present, for πλέ-ω = πλέ-ω, i. e. 'plevo' or 'pleu-o.'

1. 169. ὤχ-οντο, 2nd aor. of οἶχ-ομαι, (ω = ε + οι). Distinguish ὤχ-όμην 2nd aor. of οἶχομαι, 'I am gone,' from ὤκ-ουν imperf. of οἰκέω, 'I dwell.'

1. 172. ἀπο-δεδράκασιν, perf. of ἀπο-δι-δρά-σκω, 'run away' (stem δρα-).

ἀπο-πεφεύγασιν, 2nd perf. of ἀπο-φεύγ-ω. 'Απο-διδράσκειν means 'to get away,' so as not to be found, ἀπο-φεύγειν, 'to get away,' so as not to be caught. You cannot get hold of either, but you may know where

the one man is, and you don't know where the other is. Hence the one is used specially of enemies who escape to their own country, the other of slaves who keep in hiding.

1. 175. οἱ ἄν, 'whoever.' Ἄν added to the relative makes the sense general and indefinite, so that ὅς ἄν = ἐάν τις or ὅστις. As ἄν cannot go with the *subjunctive*, it must be considered to belong to the *pronoun*, not to the *verb*. Ἄν adds the force 'in any case,' expressed by 'ever' in 'whoever,' etc.

1. 176. εἰδότες, nom. pl. of εἰδώς, part. of οἶδα.

1. 179. συν-ε-πορεύ-οντο, imperf. of συμ-πορεύ-ομαι. The ν of σύν, which was changed to μ before the π of the present, to make it easier to pronounce, is replaced before the augment ε.

ἐκ τούτου, 'after this,' lit. 'out of this.' Ἐκ properly denotes the result or consequence which *proceeds out of* or follows an action.

1. 180. μετὰ ταῦτα. Cp. l. 128 n.

1. 182. ἔσοιτο, 3rd sing. fut. opt. of εἶμι (*sum*).

1. 183. Here μέγαν is added to βασιλέα. Cp. l. 22 n.

ἐκέλευ-σε, 1 aor. act. of κελεύ-ω.

1. 185. ἐχαλέπαιν-ον, imperf. of χαλεπαίν-ω.

οὐκ-ἤθελον, 'refused,' as in l. 127.

1. 187. ὑπ-έσχ-ετο, 2nd aor. of ὑπ-ισχ-νέ-ομαι. Ἴσχ-ω is another form of ἔχ-ω (originally σέχ-ω, whence ἔ-σχ-ον, σχή-σω, etc.). The syllable -νε- is added to the *present*, making -ισχ-νέ-ομαι, which is only used in compounds, as ὑπ-ισχ-νέ-ομαι. [Presents with ν, αν, νε, are called *nasalized* presents, because the present is distinguished from the stem by having ν added to it, i.e. being more or less pronounced through the nose].

1. 189. ἐ-πέισθη-σαν, 1st aor. pass. from πείθ-ω, future πεί-σω (for πείθ-σω), 1st aor. pass. ἐ-πέισ-θην (for ἐ-πείθ-θην).

1. 195. ἐ-δίωκ-ον, imperf. of διώκ-ω.

1. 196. προ-δραμόντες, part. masc. pl. of προ-έδραμον, 2nd aor. with pres. προ-τρέχω.

ἔ-στᾶ-σαν, pluperf. of ἵ-στη-μι, shortened form from the stem στα-. Distinguish ἔστᾶσαν from ἔστησαν, which may be the 1st or 2nd aor., according as the meaning is *transitive* or *intransitive*. Cp. l. 204 n.

ἔ-τρεχ-ον, imperf. of τρέχ-ω.

1. 198. ἐ-ποί-ουν, imperf. of ποιέ-ω, contracted from ἐ-ποίη-ον, 'they used to do,' or 'would do.'

ταυτόν, neut. of ὁ αὐτός (compressed into αὐτός), 'the same.' Though the neut. of αὐτός is αὐτό, ταυτόν is a far commoner form than ταυτό.

1. 201. ἔλαβ-εν, 2nd aor. of λα-μ-β-άν-ω, of which the stem is λάβ-, but the letter μ and the syllable -αν- are inserted in the present, which is thus doubly 'nasalized.' Cp. l. 187 n.

1. 202. ἔξ-έφευγ-ον, imperf. of ἐκ-φεύγ-ω, the ἐκ passing into ἔξ before the augment, because it is easier to pronounce.

1. 203. αἶρομένας, 'raised,' pass. part. pres. from αἶρ-ω, agreeing with πτέρυξιν. Distinguish αἶρ-ω, 'I lift up,' future ἀρ-ῶ, 1st aor. ἤρα, perf. ἤρ-κα, from αἶρέ-ω, 'I take,' future αἶρή-σω, perf. ἤρῃ-κα.

1. 205. ἀν-ισταίη, 'put up' or 'start' them. In ἵστημι the pres., imperf., fut. and 1st aor. are *transitive* tenses, meaning to 'place' or 'make to stand;' the rest are *intransitive*, meaning to 'stand.'

1. 208. ἀπ-ώλ-ετο, 2nd aor. mid. of ὀλ-λυμι (stem ὀλ-).

1. 209. ἐπ-έ-λιπ-εν, 2nd aor. of ἐπι-λείπ-ω (stem λῖπ-).

αὐτὸ τὸ στράτευμα, 'the army *itself*,' Lat. *ipse exercitus*. Τὸ αὐτὸ στράτευμα would mean 'the *same* army,' Lat. *idem exercitus*.

ἐ-δύνα-ντο, imperf. of δύνᾱ-μαι (stem δυνα-).

1. 211. ἤλαυν-ε. Cp. l. 163 n.

1. 213. καὶ δὴ ποτε, 'on one occasion indeed.' The δὴ emphasises this as a remarkable instance of Cyrus' hurry to get on.

1. 214. ἐπι-στάς, 2 aor. part. act. of ἐφ-ίστημι.

1. 215. ἐ-κέλευ-σε: cp. l. 183 n.

1. 216. ἐ-δόκ-ουν, imperf. of δοκέ-ω, contracted from ἐ-δόκε-ον.

1. 218. ἴδοι, 3 sing. opt. of εἶδον, 2 aor. with pres. ὁράω.

μέρος τι, 'a specimen.' Lit. 'a *portion*' of anything chosen as a sample.

1. 219. τῆς εὐταξίας. Observe the force of the article,—'their *usual* good order.'

1. 220. ἔ-σπευδ-ον, imperf. of σπεύδ-ω.

δραμόντες. Cp. l. 196 n.

ἔ-τυχ-ον, 2nd aor. of τυ-γ-χ-άν-ω (stem τυχ-). In the pres. the letter γ (for ν before χ) and the syllable -αν are inserted; in fact the present is doubly nasalized. Cp. l. 187 n.

1. 221. ἐστηκότες, nom. pl. of the perf. part. act. of ἵστημι.

εἶχ-ον. Cp. l. 164 n.

1. 224. ἔξ-ε-κόμι-σαν, 1st aor. act. of ἐκ-κομίζ-ω, fut. ἐκ-κομί-σω (contr. κομιῶ). The ἐκ becomes ἔξ before the vowel ε.

1. 225. ἐ-φαίν-ετο, imperf. mid. of φαίν-ω.

1. 226. εἰκάξ-ετο, imperf. mid. of εἰκά-ζω. Εἰ sometimes takes the augmented form η (as ἥκαξ-ον), but generally does not change.

1. 227. ἔ-και-ον, imperf. of καί-ω.

1. 229. εἶπ-εν. Cp. l. 120 n.

1. 230. κωλύσειεν, 3rd sing. 1st aor. opt. of κωλύω.

1. 231. τοῦ καίειν, 'from burning.' For the article with the infin. cp. l. 24 n.

ἐ-δόκ-ει. Cp. l. 155 n.

1. 232. ἐ-κέλευ-σεν. Cp. l. 183 n.

l. 234. ἤξοι, 3rd sing. fut. opt. of ἤκω.

l. 236. ᾤ-ετο, imperf. of οἶ-ομαι. (ω = ε + οι.)

l. 241. θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, lit. 'place their arms' (on the ground) i. e. 'to stand under arms.' Whenever Greek soldiers halted, they rested their heavy shields and spears on the ground; hence θέσθαι ὄπλα means not only 'to lay down arms for the night,' but often simply 'to ground arms,' 'to halt,' or 'to stand ready.'

l. 242. ἐ-ποί-ησαν, 1st aor. of ποι-έω, fut. ποι-ήσω.

l. 243. παρ-ε-κάλεσε, 1st aor. of παρα-καλέ-ω, fut. -έσω.

l. 244. ἐξ-ἦλθεν, 2nd aor. from the stem -ελθ-, the pres. being supplied by -έρχ-ομαι. [So in English the pres. 'go' has its past 'went' supplied from 'to wend.']

ἐξ-ήγγειλ-ε, 1st aor. of ἐξ-αγγέλλ-ω, fut. ἐξ-αγγελ-ῶ, 1st aor. ἐξ-ήγγειλ-α, the ε being lengthened into ει. [The stem is ἀγγελ-, as in ἀγγελ-ος, 'a messenger,' whence our 'angel.']

l. 245. ἐ-γέν-ετο. Cp. l. 103 n.

ἔ-φη, imperf. of φη-μί (stem φα-). [Lat. 'fari,' whence *fatum* and *fama*.]

l. 247. παρ-εκάλεσα. Cp. l. 243 n.

l. 248. τουτου-ι. This final ι is called the *demonstrative iota*; it serves to point out a person more distinctly. Cp. Lat. 'hic-ce,' French 'celui-ci.' The nom. is οὗτος-ι.

l. 249. ἔ-δω-κε. Cp. l. 104 n.

l. 251. ἐ-πολέμη-σεν. Cp. l. 106 n.

ἐποίησα. Cp. l. 242 n.

l. 252. ἔ-λαβ-ον. Cp. l. 201 n.

l. 253. μετὰ ταῦτα. Cp. l. 128 n.

ἡδίκη-σα, 1st aor. of ἀ-δικέ-ω, fut. ἀδική-σω. (η = ε + α.)

l. 254. ἀπ-εκρίν-ατο. Cp. l. 149 n.

ἡδίκησε. Lit. 'injured him,' but in English 'had injured him.' Where one past tense depends on another past tense, in English we mark it as doubly past by using 'had,' the pluperfect. In Greek this is left to the intelligence of the reader. Here Orontes would say to Cyrus, 'You *did* me no wrong,' and Clearchus, reporting his words, leaves the *tense* unaltered. Cp. II. 118 n.

l. 255. ἡρώτ-α. Cp. l. 148 n.

ἀπο-στάς, 2nd aor. part. of ἀφ-ίστημι.

l. 256. ἐ-ποί-εις. Cp. l. 198 n.

ἔ-φη. Cp. l. 245 n.

πε-ποιη-κέναι, perf. inf. act. of ποι-έω.

l. 259. ὁμολόγ-ει, imperf. of ὁμολογ-έω, contracted from ὁμολόγ-εε. (ω = ε + ο.)

l. 261. ἀδικηθεῖς, lit. 'having been injured,' here '[through] being

injured,' i. e. 'was it *because* you were injured,' etc. A Greek participle, without the article, must often be translated by a conjunction, such as 'when,' 'if,' 'because,' etc., with the indic. mood of the verb; so this = ὅτι ἡδικήθης. *What* conjunction has to be supplied from the participle must depend on the sense of the passage.

l. 262. οὐδέν. The accus. of respect after ἡδικήθη, 'was injured *in nothing*,' i. e. 'was *not at all* injured.'

l. 263. ἡδική-θη, 1st aor. pass. of ἀ-δικ-έω. Cf. l. 254 n. on ἡδίκη-σε. ἡρώτη-σεν, 1st aor. of ἐρωτ-άω, fut. ἐρωτή-σω. (η = ε + ε.)

l. 264. γε-γενή-σθαι, perf. pass. infin. of γί-γν-ομαι (stem γεν-), fut. γεν-ή-σομαι.

ll. 266, 267. γενέσθαι, γενοίμην, 2nd aor. infin. and opt. of γίγνομαι.

l. 268. δόξαιμι, 1st aor. opt. act. of δοκέω.

l. 269. παρ-οὔσιν. Cp. l. 103 n.

l. 270. ἀπό-φην-αι, 1st aor. mid. imper. of ἀπο-φαίν-ω, fut. ἀπο-φαν-ῶ, 1st aor. ἀπ-έ-φην-α. [Distinguish by the *accent* (1) ἀπό-φην-αι, 1st aor. mid. imper., (2) ἀπο-φῆναι, 1st aor. act. infin.]

l. 272. ἀφανίζεν, 'put out of the way,' lit. 'cause to *disappear*' (from ἀ, 'not,' and φαν- root of φαίν-εσθαι, 'to appear'). Hence a milder way of saying 'to kill.'

l. 273. δέη, subjunctive of the impersonal verb δεῖ. Verbs in -έω of *two syllables* only contract the syllables ε + ε and ε + ει, as πλέε, πλεῖ, πλέει, πλεῖ: but πλέω, πλέουσι, πλέη, etc., remain uncontracted.

φυλάττεσθαι, act. 'to guard,' mid. 'to guard against' or 'ward off [from ourselves],' i. e. 'be on our guard against.' Cp. III. 91 n.

l. 275. Distinguish ταῦτά for τὰ αὐτά, from ὁ αὐτός, 'the *same* things,' from ταῦτα, neut. pl. of οὗτος, 'these things.'

l. 276. ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης, 'took *hold of* the girdle,' ζώνης being the gen. of the *part* laid hold of. Ἔλαβον τὴν ζώνην would be 'took' or 'received the girdle.'

ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, lit. 'with a *view to*, or "as a sign of" death.' Taking hold of a man's girdle was a sign that he was doomed to death.

l. 277. τεταγμένοι. Cp. l. 75 n.

ἐξ-ῆγ-ον, imperf. of ἐξ-άγ-ω. Distinguish ῆγ-ον, the imperf. from ἥγ-αγ-ον, the 2nd aor. of ἄγω. (η = ε + α.)

l. 278. εἰς-ἠνέχ-θη, 1st aor. pass. from the stem -ένεκ-, to which (εἰς)-φέρω supplies the present.

l. 279. οὐδεῖς—οὔτε. For the *multiplied negatives* in Greek cp. l. 141, II. 59 n.

l. 280. εἶδ-εν, 2nd aor. from stem ἰδ-, i. e. *ῑδ-*. Cp. Lat. *vid-eo*, Eng. 'to *wit*.' The augment ει marks the lost letter *F* (since εἶδ = ἔῑδ); ὁρά-ω supplies the present, meaning the *continuous* process of seeing or 'watching' a thing; the aorist implying the *momentary* act

of seeing, in the sense of 'to catch sight of,' 'espy,' 'see at a glance.'

τε-θνηκότα, perf. part. acc. sing. masc. of θνήσκω.

1. 281. ἐ-φάν-η, 2nd aor. pass. of φαίν-ω (stem φαν-).

1. 284. μεγάλου βασιλέως. Cp. ll. 182 and 22 n.

ἀπ-ηγγέλλ-ον, imperf. of ἀπ-αγγέλλ-ω (stem ἀγγελλ-). (η = ε + α.)

1. 286. ἐ-θάρσυν-εν, imperf. of θαρσύν-ω.

ll. 289, 296. γένεσθε, γένησθε, 2nd pl. imperat. and subj. of the 2nd aor. of γίγνομαι.

1. 290. ἧς, instead of ἣν ἔχετε. What is a relative sentence? It is simply a long adjective. As adjectives agree in case with their substantives, the Greeks make the relative do the same. The relative then is said to be 'attracted' into the case of its antecedent, i. e. is made to agree with its antecedent in *case*, as well as in gender, number, and person. To avoid confusion, this is only done when the relative would otherwise have been in the *accusative*. Cp. ἀντὶ πάντων ὧν ἔχω in the next line, and the English 'instead of *what* I have.'

1. 293. ἐπ-ίαισι, 'will advance.' Remember that εἶμι, though *present* in form, has a *future* meaning, 'I *will* go.' [The ι of the stem appears also in Lat. *i-re*.]

1. 294. ἀνά-σχησθε (2nd aor. subj. mid. of ἀν-έχω), 'endure;' lit. 'hold yourselves up against.' Lat. *sustinere*.

1. 295. δὴ emphasises αἰσχύνομαι, 'I am *quite* ashamed.'

αἰσχύνομαι λέγων, 'I am quite ashamed *when I tell you*;' [αἰσχύνομαι λέγειν would mean 'I am ashamed to tell you,' and therefore do not tell you, or in other words, 'shame prevents me from telling you.'] Cp. note on ἀδικηθεὶς l. 261.

1. 298. οἶκοι, 'at home' (Lat. *domi*); the old *locative* or 'place-at-which' case, answering to the question *where*? [Distinguish οἶκοι, 'at home,' from οἴκοι, 'houses,' nom. pl. of οἶκος.]

1. 300. εἶπε. Cp. l. 156 n.

καὶ μὲν, 'certainly.' Καὶ μὲν is literally 'and indeed:' it generally introduces something new, and means 'moreover' or 'yet.' Here it introduces a new speaker, who has an *objection* to make.

1. 302. με-μνή-σεσθαι, the *paulo-post* fut. or fut. perf. of μι-μνή-σκω (stem μνα-), but as the perf. pass. μέ-μνη-μαι has a present meaning, 'I remember' (lit. 'I have called to mind'), μεμνήσομαι is used as a simple future. In Latin also the perf. *memini* and the fut. *meminero* are used in the same way.

1. 303. δύναιο, 2nd sing. pres. opt. of δύναμαι.

1. 304. ἀπ-εκρίν-ατο. Cp. l. 149 n.

1. 313. ἐξ-ήγγελλ-ον. Cp. l. 284 n.

1. 314. ἦρ-ετο, 2nd aor. of ἔρ-ομαι, 'I ask' (instead of which ἐρωτά-ω

is used). Distinguish ἦρ-ετο, 2nd aor. of ἔρομαι, 'ask;' ἦρετο, imperf. mid. of αἶρω, 'lift up;' and ἦρεῖτο, imperf. mid. of αἰρέω, 'take.'

1. 315. μαχεῖσθαι. What tense of μάχομαι is this? See in Vocabulary.

ἔ-φη. Cp. l. 245 n.

1. 318. ἐ-γέν-ετο. Cp. l. 103 n.

1. 319. τῶν-μετὰ-Κύρου-βαρβάρων. The article τῶν makes an adjective of the words between it and its noun βαρβάρων. Cp. l. 109 n.

1. 321. ἐ-λέγ-οντο. Cp. l. 164 n.

1. 322. παρὰ τούτους, 'besides these.' Παρὰ with the accus. signifies getting *beside* a thing, or passing *by* it, and hence 'going *beyond* it.' Hence παρὰ ταῦτα means 'besides this,' 'moreover,' Lat. *praeterea*.

1. 323. ἦρχ-εν, imperf. of ἄρχ-ω, 'I rule' or 'command.' (η = ε + α.)

1. 324. συν-τεταγμένῳ. Cp. l. 75 n.

ῥετο. Cp. l. 236 n.

1. 326. ἐ-μάχ-ετο, imperf. of μάχ-ομαι.

διὰ πολλῶν ἡμερῶν, 'during several days.' Διὰ signifies division into parts, hence an *interval* of time.

1. 327. ὑστεραίᾳ. The feminine ending shows that ἡμέρᾳ is understood. So τῇ προτεραίᾳ, 'the day before.'

ἐ-πορεύ-ετο. Cp. l. 108 n.

CHAPTER II.

THE BATTLE OF CUNAXA AND ITS RESULTS.

(The name Cunaxa is given by Plutarch, not by Xenophon. It was on the Euphrates, about forty miles north-west of Babylon.)

1. 5. ἀνὰ κράτος, 'at full speed,' lit. 'according to one's full strength.'

ὅτι βασιλεὺς προσ-έρχεται, 'that the king *was* coming.' But the Greeks use ὅτι before a *direct* speech, though we use our corresponding word 'that' only before an *indirect*. "Οτι (ὅ τι) is really a relative, so that λέγων ὅτι, etc. means 'saying *that which* follows,' viz. 'the king *is* coming.'

1. 13. μετὰ τοῦτον, 'after him' or 'next to him.' Distinguish this from μετὰ τούτου, which would mean 'with him.'

1. 21. χαλκός τις ἔλαμπε, lit. 'some brass was shining,' i.e. 'there was a gleaming of brass.' Note the force of the imperfects ἐγίνοντο and κατ-εφαίνοντο, 'began to come' and 'began to be visible.'

l. 24. ἐχόμενοι, 'next to these,' lit. 'holding on to.' ἔχω is 'I have' or 'hold,' ἔχομαι (with gen.) intrans. 'I hold on to' a thing, i.e. 'I follow' or 'am next to.'

l. 27. ἀπο-τεταμένα, perf. pass. part. from ἀπο-τείνω. The ν of the stem τεν- is dropped, and the ε changed to α, as in ἔ-σπαρ-κα, ἔ-σπαρ-μαι. Thus we get τέ-τα-κα, τέ-τα-μαι. [Eng. 'ten-sion,' 'ten-don.']

l. 34. πεποιήκαμεν, the perf. instead of the fut., speaking as if the thing were already done, 'if we beat the centre, we *have* won the day.'

οὐκ ἤθελεν, etc. The Greeks were always afraid of leaving their *right* or unshielded side without protection. Here this over-caution on the part of Clearchus lost the battle.

l. 41. ἦρετο, 2nd aor. from ἔρομαι (pres. ἐρωτάω). Cp. I. 314 n.

l. 43. θορύβου, the gen. of the source from which the sound proceeds. When ἀκούειν has a double object, it takes the accus. of the *thing* heard, and the gen. of the *person* from whom you hear it; as ἀκούω ταῦτά σου, 'I hear these things from you.'

l. 46. ὅτι παρ-έρχεται. See note on ὅτι παρ-έρχεται, l. 5.

l. 48. δέχομαι τὸν οἰωνόν, Lat. *omen accipio*. Cyrus accepts the words 'Preserver' and 'Victory' as an omen of success.

l. 50. προ-ήρχοντο, imperf. of προ-έρχομαι. Ἡρχόμεν in *form* might also be the imperf. of ἄρχομαι, 'I begin;' the sense decides.

l. 53. κατὰ κράτος, 'at full speed,' lit. 'according to one's (full) strength,' the same as ἀνὰ κράτος, l. 5. [Though ἀνὰ and κατὰ have originally opposite meanings, *up* and *down*, they come to the same thing, when the idea is simply that of motion *along a given line and towards a given point*; if this point is not local, they both come to mean 'in the way of' or 'through.']

l. 54. θεῖν δρόμῳ, 'to run *fast*,' lit. 'at a run.' The addition of a word of similar meaning adds force to the verb; thus φόβον φοβεῖσθαι, 'to be *sore* afraid.' Cp. the Lat. *cursim currere*.

l. 59. οὐδὲ—οὐδεῖς—οὐδέν. Two or more negatives in Greek do not make an affirmative, as in English, but a stronger negative. Thus οὐδὲ οὐδεῖς is 'not even a single one.' Cp. I. 141, 279 n. In older English negatives used to be multiplied thus, as in Chaucer's Prologue 251 'There *nas* (was not) *no* man *nowhere* so virtuous.'

l. 70. ὥς κυκλώσων, 'with intent to enclose,' lit. 'as about to enclose.' Ὡς with the fut. part. denotes a *purpose*.

l. 77. κατ-ελείφθησαν. Distinguish ἐλείφθην, 1st aor. pass. of λείπω, from ἐλήφθην, 1st aor. pass. of λαμβάνω.

l. 79. Notice the *historical presents* ἐλαύνει, παίει, τιτρώσκει, marking the rapidity with which all this was done. With this rash act of Cyrus compare the conduct of Pelopidas at the battle of Cynoscephalae, B. C.

364, when, enraged at the sight of his hated enemy, Alexander of Pherae, he rushed upon him, and thus met his death (Plutarch, Life of Pelopidas).

1. 83. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος, 'Cyrus, as we have said.' The μὲν contrasts Κῦρος with οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι following, the οὖν, 'then' or 'in fact,' (cp. I. 6 n.) refers back to what has been just related. Μὲν may often be translated 'while' or 'whereas.'

1. 91. ᾗσθοντο. Distinguish ᾗσθόμεν, 2nd aor. of αἰσθάνομαι, 'I perceive,' from ἡσθην, 1st aor. pass. of ἡδομαι, 'I am pleased.'

1. 99. ἔστησαν, 3rd pl. of ἔστην, intrans., and therefore the 2nd aor. of ἵστημι. The same word might also be the 3rd pl. of ἔστησα, the 1st aor. of ἵστημι, and would then mean 'they placed.' In ἵστημι the 2nd aor. and the perf. with the pluperf. are intransitive, the other tenses are transitive.

Λόφος, probably an artificial mound, as there are no natural hills on the Babylonian plain.

1. 105. ἀνὰ κράτος. See note on I. 5.

ἐν τούτῳ, sc. χρόνῳ. Cp. note on ἐκ τούτου, I. 85.

1. 108. τεθνηκότα, 'that he was dead.' The Greeks used the participle after verbs of knowing, feeling, perceiving, and the like, to express the fact known or felt. In Latin it would be *nesciebant eum mortuum esse* (accus. and infin.). [Οἶδα with the *infin.* means 'I know how to,' as οἶδα ζῆν, 'I know how to live.']

1. 118. ὥρμήσαντο, 'had started.' The Greek aorist in a minor sentence must often be rendered by the English pluperfect. Here Glus and Procles would say, 'Ariaeus is at the station, whence we started yesterday;' the Greek historian, reporting their words, keeps the aorist 'started,' where we should alter it to 'had started.' Cp. I. 254 n.

1. 125. εἶπον ὅτι κελεύει, 'that the king commanded.' For ὅτι introducing a direct speech, see note on ὅτι βασιλεὺς προς-έρχεται, I. 5.

1. 128. ἤρετο. Cp. I. 314 n.

1. 133. σώζεσθαι, middle voice, 'to save yourselves.'

1. 135. πλείονος ἄξιοι, 'more valuable,' lit. 'worth more,' πλείονος (comparative of πολλοῦ) being the gen. of price. The phrase πολλοῦ ἄξιος may generally be translated by one word, 'valuable,' 'serviceable,' or 'useful.'

1. 142. εἶπατε, the imperative of εἶπα, 1st aor. The 2nd aor. εἶπον is more commonly used.

1. 144. ταῦτὰ ἅπερ, 'the same as,' Lat. *eadem quae*. Cp. I. 275 n. for the difference between ταῦτὰ and ταῦτα.

1. 149. Remember that μένουσιν may be another part of the verb,

besides the 3rd pl. pres. indic. So also ἀπ-ιοῦσι and προ-ϊοῦσιν in the next line.

1. 158. εἴποντο, imperf. of ἑπ-ομαι, 'I follow.' The augment εἰ marks a lost letter, which reappears in Lat. 'seq-uor.' Distinguish this from εἰπ-ον, 2nd aor. from stem ἐπ- (pres. φημί), 'I say.'

CHAPTER III.

BEGINNING OF THE RETREAT.

1. 11. κήρυκας περὶ σπονδῶν, sc. λέγειν (l. 15). Thus we say, 'I came about so and so,' i. e. 'to talk about it.'

1. 13. κηρύκων. The gen. of the person after ἀκούσας, 'after hearing [their statements from] the heralds.' Cp. II. 43 n.

1. 15. ἄριστον. This might be (1) ἄριστον, 'breakfast,' (2) ἄριστον neut. of ἄριστος, 'best.' The sense decides.

1. 22. ὀπισθο-φυλακῶν, pres. part. of ὀπισθο-φυλακέω. Compounds not made with prepositions are formed from nouns already compounded, and generally end in -έω. Thus ὀπισθο-φύλακέω comes from the noun ὀπισθο-φύλαξ, ναυ-μαχέω from ναυ-μάχος, etc. Prepositions usually form compounds with the simple verbs, as κατα-φυλάσσω, προς-μάχομαι.

1. 26. ἐπεστάτει. This is formed from the noun ἐπιστάτης, which is already compounded; so being formed from a noun it ends in -έω (see the last note). Ἐφ-ίστημι is the compound of ἐπὶ and ἵστημι.

1. 28. ἔπαie, imperf. 'he would strike him,' i. e. as often as there was occasion to do so.

1. 32. καί, 'also' (as well as the younger men). Beware of translating καὶ by 'and,' when it does not couple words or sentences. If so translated here it would couple προς-ελάμβανον with ἑώρων, and make it governed by ἐπεὶ, thus leaving the sentence without any principal verb, which would make nonsense. Cp. I. 21 n.

1. 36. ἐγκέφαλον, the part [within the κεφαλὴ or 'head'], i. e. the 'cabbage' (as it is called) of the palm-tree; a sort of bud at the top of the tree, containing the rudiments of its future leaves, enclosed in the foot-stalks of the actual leaves. This part was edible as well as the fruit or date.

1. 41. γείτων, 'a neighbour,' as satrap of the west coast of Asia Minor.

1. 42. ἡτούμην, imperf. mid. of αἰτέω. [Observe that αἰτέω is 'I ask for a thing,' ἐρωτάω, 'I ask a question.']

1. 44. ἔξειν μοι χάριν, 'will thank me.' Ἐχειν χάριν, 'to have' or 'feel gratitude.' Lat. *habere gratiam*.

1. 50. ἐν ἀπόροις, neut. plur. adj. used substantively, 'in difficulties.'

1. 55. ἀμύνειν in the active is 'to ward off' a thing, as ἀμύνειν κακόν τινι. The middle ἀμύνεσθαι is 'to ward off an enemy from oneself,' so generally to 'punish' an enemy, with acc. of person, as here.

1. 57. μενόντων might be (1) gen. plur. of participle, (2) 3rd person plur. imperative. The sense decides.

1. 60. ἡ μὴν, 'in very truth,' used before the words of a solemn oath.

1. 67. ἐπειδάν = ἐπειδὴ ἂν, 'as soon as.' Compounds of ἂν (as ὅταν, ἐπειδάν, ἐάν, etc.) take the subjunctive; with the aorist they have the force of 'shall have.'

1. 72. μὴ οὐ πιστὸς εἴη, 'lest he should be faithless.' The οὐ belongs to πιστὸς, οὐ-πιστὸς being equivalent to ἄπιστος.

1. 75. δόξομεν, 'we shall be thought,' lit. 'we shall seem.' The personal verb δοκέω means (1) 'I think,' (2) 'I seem,' i. e. 'I am thought.'

παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς, 'contrary to the truce.' Παρὰ, 'by the side of,' often with acc., means 'passing by,' 'going beside the mark,' 'neglecting' or 'transgressing,' hence 'contrary to.'

ἔπειτα, 'then' or 'after this.' Distinguish from ἐπεὶ, 'when.'

1. 77. λελείψεται, 'will have been left,' i. e. 'we shall have no friend left.' The paulo-post future, or future-perfect, implies that the action or event will be completed at a future time. Here the idea is, when that time comes, we shall find ourselves without friends.

1. 85. ποιῆσαι τὰ πιστὰ ἄπιστα, lit. 'to make his faithful things faithless,' i. e. 'falsify his pledges.'

1. 91. ἐφυλάττοντο ἀλλήλους, 'kept on their guard against each other.' The act. φυλάττειν is 'to guard' or 'protect' anyone (Lat. *cavere alicui*), the mid. φυλάττεσθαι is 'to guard oneself against' anyone (Lat. *cavere aliquem*).

1. 92. τὸ Μηδίας τεῖχος, 'the wall of Media,' so called because it was built to keep the Medes out of Babylonia (so the 'Picts' Wall' was to prevent incursions of the Picts): see opposite page. The wall of Media was situated about 100 miles N.W. of Babylon, and must originally have extended from the Tigris to the Euphrates; but at this time there was a considerable gap in the wall at the western or Euphrates end. Tissaphernes must therefore have first led the Greeks some sixty miles in a homeward (or north-westerly) direction, through this gap to the north side of the wall, then have brought them back through the wall

into Babylonia again (εἴσω τοῦ τείχους), and lastly led them about twenty-four miles *eastward* to Sittace on the Tigris¹.

l. 98. ὄνομα, 'by name,' the accus. of respect. Caenae would be on the *right* or west bank of the Tigris, since it was the opposite side to the Greeks, who were marching northwards, with the river on their left.

l. 100. Ζαπάταν (or Ζαβάταν) ποταμόν, now the Great Zab, or Upper Zab, one of the chief tributaries of the Tigris on the east.

l. 105. μὴ ἀδικήσῃν depends on ὅρκους, 'oaths not to injure,' i. e. 'oaths that we will not injure.'

l. 106. φυλαττόμενον, 'guarding against.' See note on line 91.



l. 108. διδάξων, the fut. part. denoting purpose, 'to show you.'

l. 110. ἐν τῷ παρόντι [χρόνῳ], 'at the present time.'

l. 112. πᾶσα ὁδός, 'every road,' πᾶσα ἡ ὁδός, (next line), 'all the road,' i. e. 'our *whole* line of march.'

¹ This identifies Μηδίας τείχος with the Wall of Nimroud, said to have been originally built by Nimrod, against the Ninevite invaders from the north. Another view is that the 'Wall of Media' was a long way south of this, between Cunaxa and Babylon, and that Sittace was much lower down the Tigris than it is placed in the above map. In this case, the Greeks would have passed only *once* through the wall, from the north, so as to get 'inside,' i. e. on the south side, of it.

l. 113. διὰ σκοτόους, 'through darkness,' i. e. 'uncertain,' as we say 'to be *in the dark*' about a thing. [Σκότος in Xenophon is generally declined like τεῖχος with genitive σκοτόους. It is also declined like λόγος with gen. σκότου.]

l. 118. τότε, 'I then' (i. e. at the time when I joined Cyrus, see I. 26) 'desired that . . .'

ll. 123, 4. The first καί may be translated 'even,' implying many reasons to hope; the second καί is 'also,' i. e. 'that you also will wish to be our friend' [as we wish to be yours]. See note on l. 32.

l. 128. τῆς χάριτος ἣν ἔχοιμεν. Χάριν ἔχειν means 'feel gratitude.' See note on l. 44.

l. 129. Here as in l. 83 the μέν emphasises the subject Clearchus as opposed to Tissaphernes, the οὖν refers back to what has been related before. 'So while Clearchus . . .'

l. 131. ἀλλά, 'well.' The idea is—'though I am glad to hear you talk thus, yet I will show you that you have no reason to distrust us.'

ἡδομαι takes the dative, hence we have 'I am pleased *with you speaking*,' i. e. 'that you speak.'

l. 132. οὐδέ, 'not even,' i. e. 'you no more than we.'

l. 133. ἀπιστοίητε, the opt. in -οίην of contracted verbs is a peculiar Attic form. It is very common in the *singular* (cp. δοκοίη, λυποίη, ll. 28, 54 above), but it is not so often used in the *1st* and *2nd persons plural*.

l. 135. οἷς, 'with which.' Observe that the Greek dative supplies the Latin ablative of *instrument*, while the genitive supplies the Latin ablative meaning 'from.'

l. 139. παρ-έχοιμεν ἄν, 'could render.'

l. 141. δια-πορεύοιμεν, 'put you across.' Πορεύω in the act, is 'to provide a passage' (πόρος) for any one, i. e. 'cause to pass;' in the mid. 'to provide *oneself* with a passage,' i. e. intrans. 'to pass,' 'march,' etc.

l. 144. οὐδὲ εἰ πάνυ ἀγαθοί, 'not even if *ever* so brave.'

l. 145. πόρους πρόσ, 'means for,' i. e. 'ways of.'

l. 151. μοι, not 'to me,' which would be πρὸς ἐμὲ, but (literally) '*for me*,' i. e. 'to *oblige* me.' This is called the *ethical* dative.

l. 152. ὥς depends on τῶν λεγόντων, 'those who say that.'

l. 153. τῇ σὺν ἐμοὶ στρατιᾷ. Cp. I. 109 n.

l. 159. μετὰ ταῦτα. Cp. I. 128 n.

l. 164. οἱ δὲ πάντες, etc. Here πάντες is an *apposition* with οἱ, which is not the article but a pronoun,—'*they* did not *all* come.'

l. 170. ἔχει τὴν δίκην, 'has *his* just punishment,' lit. '*the* punishment [which he deserves].' The article in Greek is often used for a possessive pronoun. Cp. I. 15 n. Observe the wary form of Xenophon's answer. He really means 'even supposing Clearchus deserved his death,

yet, according to your own showing, Proxenus and Menon should come back.'

1. 175. ἀν-ήχθησαν, 'were taken up,' i. e. to the king's court. Cp. I. 7 n.

1. 180. καὶ γὰρ δὴ, 'for in fact,' or 'in proof of this.' The δὴ shows that what is going to be said *confirms* the previous assertion that Clearchus was 'very fond of war.'

1. 181. ὑπηρέτει (imperfect), 'continued to serve.'

1. 183. Θρᾷκες, i. e. on the Hellespont. Cp. I. 30.

1. 185. Ἴσθμοῦ, i. e. the isthmus of Corinth. He probably had to touch there to take up some of the allies of Sparta.

1. 187. ἐθανατώθη, 'was condemned to death.' Θανατώω usually means 'I put to death,' lit. 'I cause death' to anyone. [Verbs in -ώω derived from the stems of nouns mean to cause or make something, as δουλ-ώω (from δούλος), 'I make anyone a slave,' πολεμ-ώω (πόλεμος, 'I cause to be at war,' i. e. 'make hostile.')

11. 188-191. See the account in I. 25-30.

1. 191. οὕτω μὲν οὖν, 'thus as we have said.' The μὲν prepares for the δὲ which follows, 'not only fond of war but a good commander.'

1. 193. εἰς, 'with reference to,' or 'as regards.'

ἄρχειν with gen. of person, 'to rule.'

1. 195. ἐμ-ποιῆσαι, etc. 'to instil into the minds of the soldiers,' lit. 'to produce in them the opinion that,' etc.

ὥς depends on τῇν γνώμην.

1. 196. ἐκ τοῦ εἶναι, 'from the fact that he was . . .' Cp. I. 24 n.

1. 197. στυγνὸς ὄρᾶν, just as we say 'stern to look upon,' i. e. 'of stern countenance.' [Ὀρᾶν in Latin would be '*aspectu tristis*' (not *aspicere*), but the Greek infinitive far more nearly resembles the English in its uses than the Latin does.]

1. 198. ἡγεῖτο. Ἥγεῖσθαι, like Lat. *ducere*, may mean either 'to lead' or 'to think.' When it means 'to lead,' it takes a dative of the person led, when it means 'to think,' it takes accus. and infin.

1. 201. Distinguish by the accent φυλακὰς, acc. pl. fem. of φυλακὴ, 'act of watching,' or 'watch' (Lat. *vigilias*), from φύλακας, acc. pl. masc. of φύλαξ, 'watchers' (Lat. *vigiles*). The word *guard* in English is ambiguous, having both meanings.

1. 206. ἡδὺν τὸν τρόπον, 'a pleasant manner,' lit. 'his manner a pleasant (one),' i. e. the manner [which] he had [was] not a pleasant one. The article coming between the adj. and the noun makes the adj. a predicate in *apposition* to the noun. If it were τὸν ἡδὺν τρόπον, the ἡδὺν would be merely an *epithet* of τρόπον. Cp. IV. 269 n.

1. 207. δι-έκειντο, etc., 'were to him in the position of,' etc. Διακεῖσθαι acts as the passive of δια-τιθέναι, 'to put into a certain state or condition.'

1. 209. φίλῳ, dative of cause, 'through friendship.'

1. 210. δὴ sums up the whole description, 'such as I have stated.' The δὲ in next line contrasts with the μὲν, i. e. 'though he was so strict as a commander, yet he was unwilling to obey others.'

CHAPTER IV.

THE MARCH TO KURDISTAN.

1. 1. πολλῇ δὴ. Here δὴ emphasises πολλῇ, 'in the greatest possible perplexity.'

1. 2. ἀθύμως εἶχον. Ἐχειν is often used intransitively with an adverb, like the Lat. *se habere*, Fr. *se trouver*, so that ἀθύμως εἶχον implies the state of being ἀθυμοί, i. e. 'they were in a desponding state of mind.' So εὖ ἔχειν, κακῶς ἔχειν 'to be well off,' 'to be badly off.'

1. 3. εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν, 'for the evening,' i. e. 'throughout the whole evening.'

1. 4. ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα, 'to their quarters.' The heavy arms (ὄπλα) were piled in camp in front of the men's quarters, hence τὰ ὄπλα meant 'the place where the arms were piled.'

1. 5. ἐτύγχανεν ὥν, lit. 'happened being,' i. e. 'happened to be,' 'was at the time.'

1. 6. πόθου πατρίδων, objective genitive, 'regret for their fatherlands.'

1. 7. μήποτε, 'that they would never.'

1. 8. μὲν δὴ. Cp. III. 210 n. The δὴ sums up the paragraph, while the μὲν contrasts with ἣν δέ τις in the next section.

οὕτω δια-κείμενοι, 'in this state.' Cp. III. 207 n.

1. 12. εἰ ἔλθοι, 'if he came.' The optative here equals the past subjunctive, and the aorist gives the sense of 'have;' so in Latin it would be 'pollicitus est, si venisset, se facturum;' etc.

1. 14. Distinguish the middle συμ-βουλεύεται, 'takes counsel with,' from the active συμ-βουλεύει (next line), 'gives counsel to.'

Xenophon had been a disciple of Socrates from his youth; Socrates himself wrote nothing, so we are indebted to his two pupils Xenophon and Plato for what we know of him. Xenophon's *Memorabilia* (Reminiscences), or notes of Socrates' sayings, show the teacher's practical good sense. Plato had a real grasp of philosophy and had imagination as well, and in his dialogues or 'imaginary conversations' he depicts Socrates as a most subtle and humorous arguer on the deepest questions of philosophy.

1. 17. ἐπ-ήρετο. Cp. II. 41 n.

Distinguish τίνι, 'to whom?' from τινὶ, 'to anyone.'

1. 18. ἂν θύοι, the optative with ἂν makes a *conditional* mood, 'to whom he should.'

1. 19. καλῶς πράξει. Observe that πράττειν with an *adverb* means 'to fare;' τὸ καλὸν πράττειν would mean 'to do what is honorable.'

1. 21. ἤτιᾱτο, imperf. of αἰτιά-ομαι, 'to blame.' Do not confound this with any part of the verb αἰτ-έω, 'I ask.'

1. 24. οὕτως, 'in this way.'

ἦρου from ἠρόμην, 'I asked.' ἦρου would be imperfect mid. of αἶρω, 'I lift up.'

1. 28. ἐν Σάρδεσι. Sardis was the place appointed for the *rendez-vous* (I. 40).

1. 30. ἐπεὶ τάχιστα, 'as soon as ever.'

1. 31. λήξειεν. Distinguish λήγω, 'I cease,' from λέγω, 'I say,' and from λάχω 2nd aor. subj. of λαγχάνω, 'I get by lot.'

1. 32. Πισίδας. Cp. I. 35 and note.

1. 37. ἄκοντες. Distinguish ἄκων, 'unwilling,' from ἀκούων, 'hearing.'

ὅμως, 'yet' (Lat. *tamen*). Distinguish this word from ὁμοίως, 'like-wise.'

1. 38. αἰσχυνόμενοι with infin. 'ashamed to betray,' and therefore *not* betraying. With a participle it would be 'ashamed at betraying,' yet doing it.

1. 39. εἷς, 'one.' Distinguish from εἰς, 'into.'

1. 42. λαχὼν ὕπνου, 'having got *some* sleep.' ὕπνου is the *partitive* gen., λαγχάνειν means properly 'to obtain by lot,' hence generally, 'to obtain' or 'to get a share of.'

1. 44. πᾶσαν [τὴν οἰκίαν], 'all the house.'

1. 45. διὰ τοῦτο μὲν is answered by ὅμως δέ in l. 47, 'for this reason *on the one hand* . . . still *on the other hand*,' etc. The good point of the dream was a light sent by Zeus to shine upon him in his distress, the *bad* points were (1) that the dream came from Zeus *as King*, which seemed to imply mischief from the *king* of Persia, (2) that the flames appeared to *encircle* the house (λάμπεσθαι κύκλῳ), which implied the impossibility of escape from the king's power. For ὅμως cp. l. 37 n.

1. 47. μὴ οὐ δύναιτο. Οὐ goes with δύναιτο, 'lest he should be *un-*able.' Cp. οὐ-πιστὸς, III. 72 and n.

1. 52. ληφθῶμεν, from λαμβάνω, 'to catch;' λειφθῶμεν would be from λείπω, 'to leave.'

1. 53. τὰ δεινότατα are the actual tortures, ὑβριζομένους refers to the mockery of their sufferings by the enemy.

1. 54. ὅπως σωσόμεθα, 'how we *shall* be in safety.' Ὅπως with the fut. ind. follows words of 'caring' and 'effecting.'

1. 55. ὥσπερ ἐξ-όν, 'as if it were possible:' ἐξόν is the *accus.* (not the *nom.*) neuter participle of the impersonal verb ἐξ-εστι, lit. 'it being possible.' [The *accus.* implies 'time during which,' hence the use of these neuter participles expressing what happens *at the same time with* something else, as ἐξ-όν, παρ-όν; 'while it is possible,' δόξαν (1 aor. part. of δοκεῖ), 'when it had seemed good' (Lat. *quum visum esset*).]

1. 60. ἐκαθέζοντο. As the compounds καθ-έζομαι and κάθ-ημαι were much more commonly used than the uncompounded verbs ἕζομαι and ἥμαι, they ceased to be regarded as compounds at all. Hence the augment ἐ was placed *before* the preposition κατὰ, instead of between the κατὰ and the ἕζομαι.

1. 61. ἐγένοντο, 'became,' i. e. 'amounted to.'

1. 64. ἤρηντο, plup. pass. of αἰρέω, 'I take,' but in *sense* the passive of αἰρέομαι (mid.), 'I choose.' So ἡρέθην means 'I was *chosen*' not 'I was *taken*.' The passive of αἰρέω, 'I take,' is supplied by tenses of ἀλίσκομαι, as ἐάλων, 'I was taken,' ἐάλωκα, 'I have been taken.'

1. 66. μετὰ τοῦτον, 'after him.' Cp. II. 13 n.

1. 69. ἐπίστασθε. Distinguish ἐπίσταμαι, 'I know,' from ἐφ-ίστημι, 'I place upon.' Cp. I. 148 n.

1. 72. σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, alluding to the demand made by the king that the Greeks should surrender their arms, which demand they had refused (II. 125-135).

1. 73. τὸ λοιπόν, 'during the future,' 'for the future:' *accus.* of duration of time.

1. 76. παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους. Παρὰ, 'contrary to.' Cp. III. 75 n.

1. 79. ἀνα-μιμνήσκω takes two accusatives, 'remind you of . . .'

1. 80. εἰδῆτε from οἶδα: ἴδητε would be from εἶδον.

1. 81. ἀγαθοῖς, 'it becomes you to be *brave*;' ἀγαθοῖς being the dative in apposition with ὑμῖν, which is governed by προς-ήκει, since εἶναι takes the same case after it as before. Cp. Horace, Sat. i. 1. 19 'licet [iis] esse *beatis*,' 'they may be happy.' So after a verb governing the genitive we might say, ἐδεόμην αὐτοῦ εἶναι ἀγαθοῦ, 'I besought him to be brave.' But see line 90.

11. 81-85. Περσῶν . . πρῶτον . . ἔπειτα ὅτε Ξέρξης. The two events here alluded to are (1) the invasion of Greece in the time of Darius Hystaspes, ending in the defeat of the Persians at *Marathon*, B.C. 490, (2) the expedition led by Xerxes, who was defeated at the battle of *Salamis*, B.C. 480.

1. 84. καί, 'also,' not 'and;' ἐνίκων being the principal verb in the sentence. Cp. III. 32 n.

1. 85. καὶ . . καί, here 'both . . and.'

1. 86. ἄρτι, 'just now,' i. e. at the battle of *Cunaxa*, which had been fought nearly two months previously. See Chap. II.

l. 90. προσ-ήκει, here with acc. and infin. 'It is fitting that you should be,' cp. l. 81.

l. 92. ἐν-θυμήθητε, imperative; ἐν-εθυμήθητε would be indicative.

l. 93. οἱ μύριοι ἵππεῖς, 'their ten thousand horse,' lit. 'the ten thousand horse' which we know they have.

l. 94. οἱ ποιοῦντες, 'those who do.' The article with a participle = a relative pronoun and verb. Cp. VIII. 356 n.

γινήται, 'is done.'

l. 97. τὸ κατα-πεσεῖν, acc. after φοβούμενοι. Xenophon's is the kind of humorous argument by which one might make a child laugh through its tears. Really the Persians were good riders (*Cyropaedia*, II. 2) who would not 'be afraid of tumbling off,' and the Greeks soon found they could not get on without cavalry, see l. 150. What was really reassuring was the fact that Xenophon evidently did not despair, as he could make a joke of their fears.

l. 98. ἐστηκότες. "Ἐστηκα means 'I am standing.' Cp. II. 99 n.

l. 99. ἐνὶ μόνῳ, 'in one point alone,' like Lat. abl. of measure.

l. 100. ἡμῶν, gen. after the πρὸ in προ-έχουσιν, 'are before us,' 'superior to us.'

l. 101. σκέψασθε, distinguish from ἐσκέψασθε: cp. l. 92.

βασιλέως ἄκοντος, 'against the king's will;' Lat. *invito rege*.

l. 110. ὥς, 'with the intention of.' Cp. II. 70 n.

l. 113. τρίς-ἄσμενος, to be taken *adverbially* with ἐποίει. 'Thrice-gladly' = 'very, gladly.' [So τρίς-ἄθλιος, 'very wretched,' τρίς-μακάρ, 'very blest,' or, as we sometimes say, 'thrice blest.' Cp. the Latin *ter felix*, etc.]

ἐποίει ἂν..., εἰ ἑώρα, 'would have done this, if he had seen,' or more accurately, 'would have been (now) doing this, if he *were seeing*.'

The four forms of a conditional sentence are (1) 'if it is, it is,' (2) 'if (ever) it be, it will be,' (3) 'if it were to be, it would be,' (4) 'if it had been, it would have been' [but it is not]. This is the 4th form, and implies 'but the king does not see us preparing to settle:' just above we had the 3rd form δοίη ἂν..., εἰ βούλονται, 'he *would* give, etc., if they *were to* consent,' etc.

l. 119. ἐνθάδε belongs to κομισαμένοις, 'having come here.'

l. 121. πρόσθεν must be omitted in translation, as πρίν follows in the next clause. We say (for instance), 'I will not do it, before you come,' the Greeks often said, 'I will not *first* (πρόσθεν) do it, *before* (πρίν) you come.'

l. 123. ἀπο-λέσθαι ἂν, 'that we should be ruined;' the ἂν, 'in that case,' always implies an *if*, so that 'if they took' is implied in λαβόντες.

l. 124. τοὺς νῦν ἄρχοντας, 'our *present* commanders.' Any word or words coming between the article and its noun stand as an *epithet* of the

noun (cp. I. 109); hence such phrases as οἱ νῦν, οἱ πρόσθεν, etc., are conveniently used instead of a longer expression. [So we sometimes say 'the *then* king.' Cp. 1st Ep. to Timothy v. 23 'thine *often* infirmities.']

1. 125. γενέσθαι, 'prove themselves,' lit. 'become.' Never translate γενέσθαι as if it were merely the same as εἶναι, 'to be.'

1. 126. τῶν-πρόσθεν-ἀρχόντων, gen. of comparison, 'than,' etc. νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν, being without the article, are real adverbs qualifying πειθομένους: ἢ means 'than.'

ἐάν τις ἀπειθῇ, δεήσει, this is the 2nd form of conditional sentences: cp. 1. 113 n. 'If (ever) anyone should disobey.'

1. 127. αἰί, 'at the time,' or 'from the time.' Cp. V. 287.

ὑμῶν is the partitive gen. after τόν, 'the man (anyone) of your number who comes across [the offender] in each case.'

1. 128. σύν, 'with the *help* of.'

1. 130. ἀνα-τεινάτω, 'let him raise.' The subject is understood in ὅτῳ, 'whoever.'

1. 133. πλαίσιον, 'a square.' The object of the square was that it had four fronts, and so could fight on any side if an enemy attacked them. Each face of the square had a separate commander.

1. 134. δύο . . ἐπ-εμελοῦντο, not ἐπ-εμελείσθην, because there is no stress laid on the fact of there being *two only*. Cp. I. 1 n.

1. 137. δι-έβησαν. Remember this is the 2 aor.

Ζαπάταν, 'the Zab.' Cp. III. 100 n.

1. 140. ἐτόξευον . . ἐσφενδονῶν . . ἐτίτρωσκον. Observe the force of the *imperfects*.

1. 142. διωκτέον. Verbal adjectives in -τέος imply that something *must* or *ought* to be done, as φιλη-τέος (Lat. *amandus*), 'he must be loved.' These have two constructions, (1) like the Latin gerundive, as οἱ πολέμοι διωκτέοι εἰσί: (2) as here, like the Latin gerund, as διωκτέον ἐστὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, 'we must pursue the enemy.' [Φιλητός is not the same as φιλητέος, but is simply like Lat. *amabilis*, 'loveable.']

1. 148. ἐπισταμένους. Do not confound ἐπίσταμαι, 'I understand,' (1) with ἐφ-ίσταμαι mid. of ἐφ-ίστημι, 'I place upon,' or (2) with πιστ-εύω, 'I believe,' or with any word derived from πίστ-ις, 'faith.'

σφενδονῶν, infin. after ἐπισταμένους, 'knowing how to sling.' [Verbs in -άω only contract into α and ω, and always contract into α when no ο is present; -ᾶν is the contraction of the infinitive.]

1. 158. ἔξω βελῶν, 'out of *shot*' (as we say). Βέλος is lit. 'out of [range of] missiles.'

1. 160. οἱ μὲν, i. e. the Greeks, οἱ δέ, the enemy.

For εἶποντο from ἔπομαι cp. II. 158 n.

1. 162. μακρότερον, 'longer,' i. e. 'further than . . .'

1. 165. πλαίσιον, 'square,' ἰσόπλευρον, 'equal-sided,' i. e. an exact

‘square.’ A square is a good form in which to resist a charge of cavalry, but a very clumsy form to march in.

l. 167. ἐκ-θλίβεσθαι, ‘to be forced out of their rank,’ lit. ‘squeezed out.’ [Hence in Latin Prosody *Ecthlipsis* is the ‘squeezing out’ of final *m* when the next word begins with a vowel, as *multu(m) ille*.]

l. 168. τὰ κέρατα συγ-κύπτει, ‘the outer flanks close in,’ lit. ‘bend together,’ i. e. ‘contract by bending.’ The opposite, viz. ‘to get separated,’ is expressed by διά-σχη, below l. 171.

l. 170. δυσ-χρήστους. The subject is τοὺς ὀπλίτας from l. 167.

l. 171. τοὺς τότε θλιβομένους, ‘those who were squeezed together in the former case,’ i. e. when the wings (κέρατα) had to close in.

l. 172. τὸ μέσον τῶν κεράτων, etc., ‘the space between the wings became empty of men,’ i. e. when there was a gap. Probably it means here a gap where the flanks of the square joined the front or rear of it.

l. 173. τοὺς ταῦτα πάσχοντας, ‘those who suffered this,’ i. e. found a gap near them.

l. 174. ἄλλην τινὰ διάβασιν, i. e. ‘any other crossing-place’ *except* a bridge, such as a ford, etc.

l. 175. ἔσπευδε (imperf.), ‘would hurry on.’ Cp. III. 28 n.

l. 178. ἕξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, ‘six companies of 100 men each.’ This is the *distributive* force of ἀνὰ. Κατὰ is similarly used. Cp. 231 n. Distinguish ἕξ, ‘six,’ from ἐξ, ‘out of.’ The aspirate in ἕξ represents the *s* in Lat. *sex*.

ἐπ-έστησαν is here the 1 aor. because it is transitive. Cp. II. 99 n.

l. 179. πεντηκοντήρας, ‘leaders of fifty,’ i. e. leaders of half-companies, or ‘lieutenants.’ A half-company contained fifty men, and two of them made a λόχος or company. Each half-company was again subdivided into two sections, these were called *Enomotiae* (ἐνωμότιαι, lit. ‘a band of men *sworn in*,’ from ἐν-όμνυμι), and their leaders were called ἐνωμότ-αρχαι, ‘section-commanders,’ ‘sublieutenants,’ or ‘ensigns.’ The whole number amounted to about 10,000 (I. 318); these six companies were only a small division, which could be shifted so as to give elasticity to the whole. Probably three marched in front, one in the centre of the front line, and one where each flank joined the front; and the other three in the same positions in the rear.

l. 181. συγ-κύπτοι. Cp. l. 168 n.

οἱ λοχαγοὶ ὑπ-έμενον ὕστερον, ‘the captains used to wait behind,’ i. e. made their companies drop out to the rear and give room for the others.

l. 182. παρ-ῆγον, ‘used to pass outside the wings,’ i. e. into line at the extremities of the wings.

l. 184. τὸ μέσον does *not* mean the inside of the square, but the *centre* of the troops in front and rear.

1. 185. διάβασιν. Cp. l. 174 n.

1. 190. Distinguish αὐτῆς τῆς ὁδοῦ, 'the road *itself*,' i. e. 'right over the road,' from (1) τῆς αὐτῆς ὁδοῦ, 'the *same* road,' and (2) ταύτης τῆς ὁδοῦ, 'this road.'

1. 192. ὁρῶν οὖσαν, 'seeing that it was.' Cp. II. 108 n.

1. 196. οἱ-ὑπὲρ-τῆς-ὁδοῦ-πολέμιοι. Cp. I. 109 n.

1. 199. τοῖς-παρ'-ἑαυτῶ-ὄντας-πελταστάς. Cp. I. 109 n.

1. 200. ἐπιλέκτους, 'as [a reserve of] picked troops.'

1. 202. οἱ-ἐπὶ-τοῦ-λόφου-πολέμιοι. Cp. I. 109 n.

1. 204. ὥρμησαν must be from ὁρμάω, 'I hasten.' Ὀρμέω, 'I anchor,' has no 1st aor., and would not make sense.

1. 205. δια-κελευομένων, 'cheering their own troops.'

1. 209. ἐπὶ marks the *object* for which they were striving, i. e. their return to Greece. So we find ἐπὶ τί; 'for what *purpose*?' Ἰέναι ἐπὶ τι, 'to go in *quest* of anything.'

1. 213. ὀχεῖ might be 'he carries,' or 'you are carried.' The context decides.

1. 215. ὠθεῖται. The *present* makes it graphic, 'shoves out of his place,' then ἐπορεύετο, the *imperf.*, 'went on marching.'

1. 217. δὲ καί. Δὲ couples the sentences, καὶ means 'also.'

ἐτύγχανε ἔχων, 'had *at the time*,' lit. 'happened having.' Cp. l. 5 n.

1. 218. θώρακα τὸν ἵππικόν. The cuirass or breast-plate of a cavalry officer was much heavier than that of a foot-soldier, and Xenophon had the infantry-soldier's shield to carry as well.

1. 219. ὑπ-άγειν, 'march *slowly*.' Ὑπὸ, 'under,' hence 'underhand,' then 'little by little.'

1. 221. ἔστε ἡνάγκασαν, 'till (*as a matter of fact*) they forced him.' With the opt. it would mean 'till *such time as* they should force him.'

1. 222. ἀνα-βάς, sc. τὸν ἵππον, 'having mounted' again.

1. 225. φθάνουσι .. γενόμενοι, lit. 'anticipate the enemy having arrived,' i. e. 'arrived *before* the enemy.'

1. 228. ἔνθεν .. ἐνθεν, 'on one side and on the other.'

1. 229. ὄρη ὑπερ-ύψηλα, the great mountain range, which commands the principal pass of the Tigris, near Jezireh.

1. 231. κατὰ τετρακισ-χιλίους, '4000 at a time.' Κατὰ is here *distributive*. Cp. ἀνὰ l. 178 n.

1. 232. ἐπι-δῶτε, 'give me *besides*,' i. e. as a present.

1. 233. ὅτου, 'what,' not 'whatever.' Ὅστις is used in an indirect question like τίς in a direct.

1. 234. φυσηθέντα, 'if blown up.' The 'if' is implied by the ἂν which follows.

1. 236. διάβασιν, here 'the *means* of crossing,' not as in ll. 174, 186, 'the *place* to be crossed.' [Verbal nouns in -σις properly mean the *act*

of doing a thing, as ποίη-σις, 'a producing;' those in -μα signify the thing *done*, as ποίη-μα, 'a production' (thing *produced*).]

1. 242. κωλύσουσι μὴ ὀλισθάνειν, Lat. 'prohibebunt quominus labantur.' Where the main verb has a 'not' the Greeks put a 'not' with the dependent verb as well; so here the μὴ merely emphasises the 'not' already contained in κωλύω, and therefore must not be translated in English.

1. 246. οὐκ ἂν ἐπ-έτρεπον, 'would not have let the Greeks do this,' i. e. 'if they saw them trying it.' The clause to be supplied would run εἰ ἑώρων αὐτοὺς πειρωμένους. For ἂν with the imperf. cp. 1. 113 n.

1. 249. Καρδ-ούχους. The root of this word is still preserved in the modern *Kurd*, *Kurdistan*.

1. 250. ἦρχεν, 'was satrap over,' from ἀρχή, 'province.' Cp. I. 6 n.

1. 252. πάροδος, 'passage by *the side* of it,' i. e. between the river and the cliffs.

1. 253. ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, '*right* over the river.' For the distinction between αὐτὸς ὁ and ὁ αὐτὸς cp. 1. 190 n.

1. 255. τῆς νυκτός, 'during the night.' The gen. of time is really a *partitive* gen. denoting a period *within* which something takes place, as ἡμέρας, 'by day,' νυκτός, 'by night.' So in older English 'he did it *o' nights*.' Observe also that νυκτός means generally 'by night,' τῆς νυκτός, 'during this *particular* night.'

1. 257. εἶπετο, 'was following.' Cp. II. 158 n.

1. 260. ἔχοντες. The part. ἔχων may often be translated 'with,' as ἦλθεν ἔχων τὸν υἱὸν, 'he came *with* his son.'

1. 263. δὴ emphasises τότε, 'at that *moment*,' Lat. *tum demum*.

1. 267. οὕτως, 'in this order;' Cheirisophus leading and Xenophon bringing up the rear (cp. 1. 256).

1. 269. ἱκανὰ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, '*the* provisions (which they had) were not sufficient.' The position of the article between the adjective and noun makes ἱκανὰ the *predicate* of the sentence. Cp. III. 206 n.

1. 272. τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι depends on ἐγίγνετο, 'for the rear-guard.'

1. 273. Distinguish ᾗτιᾱτο, imperf. of αἰτιά-ομαι, 'I blame,' from ᾗτέιτο, imperf. mid. of αἰτέ-ω, 'I ask.'

1. 278. οὐ φασιν εἶναι, 'say that there is not,' Lat. *negant esse*. Οὐ-φημι is to be taken as one word, 'I deny,' not 'I do not say.'

1. 279. δύο ἄνδρας, not ἄνδρε, because no stress is laid on the fact of there being only *two*. Cp. I. 1, V. 17 n.

1. 282. εἰδεῖν, 3rd plur. opt. of οἶδα, 'whether they *knew*.' The opt. here answers to imperf. subj. of indirect question after past time.

ἢ τὴν φανηράν, 'than (i. e. besides) the apparent one.' See above 1. 275 μία ἐστὶν ὁδὸς, ἣν ὁρᾷς.

1. 283. οὐκ ἔφη. Cp. l. 278 n. Also for οὐ φαίη l. 285.

1. 284. ὁρῶντος τοῦ ἑτέρου, the gen. absolute, 'the other seeing,' i. e. 'before the eyes of the other.' Cp. βασιλέως ἄκοντος l. 107 and n.

1. 286. παρ' ἄνδρι, properly 'in her husband's house.' Lat. 'apud virum.' Ἐκ-δίδωμι, 'I give in marriage,' usually takes the simple dative.

αὐτὸς ἔφη ἡγήσασθαι, 'said that he would guide.' The αὐτὸς is the nom. before the infin. When the subject of the infinitive is the same as that of the principal verb, the Greeks put it in the *nominative*, not in the *accusative* as in Latin. In Latin this would be 'dixit se ducturum esse,' but ἔφη αὐτὸν ἡγήσασθαι would mean that some *other* man would guide them.

1. 289. προ-κατα-λήψοιντο. The *fut. opt.* is used in a reported speech, wherever the speaker himself would have used the *fut. ind.* Here he would have said εἰ μὴ προ-κατα-λήψεσθε τοῦτο, ἀδύνατον ἔσται, etc.

1. 291. ὅστις ἐθέλοι ἄν, 'who would be willing.' Cp. l. 233 n.

1. 292. ὑποστάς, 'having undertaken (the work).' Take πορεύεσθαι after ἐθέλοι ἄν understood.

1. 293. ὥς, 'as it were,' i. e. 'about.'

1. 298. τοὺς ἄνω ὄντας, 'that those who were above,' i. e. the 2000 volunteers, who are supposed to have gained the summit.

1. 299. φανεράν ἔκβασιν, the same as φανεράν ὁδὸν l. 282, where see note. But Xenophon here calls it an ἔκβασις, or 'egress,' because it was a way of *getting out* of their difficulty.

1. 300. αὐτοί, 'themselves,' i. e. the rest of the army, who were to remain below till the volunteers had secured the summit.

1. 305. οἱ περι-ῥόντες, the 2000, who were taking a *circuitous* route to the summit.

1. 309. φερόμενοι .. δι-εσφενδονῶντο, 'falling against the rocks were hurled about in fragments,' like stones from a sling (σφενδόνη). Διὰ signifies *division* into parts. [So Euripides (*Phoenissae*, 1190) says of a man struck by lightning, ἐσφενδονᾶτο χαρὶς ἀλλήλων μέλη, 'his limbs were shot far from one another,' as if from a sling.]

1. 311. λήσειν, fut. of λανθάνω, which with ἀπ-ιόντες means 'get away *unnoticed* by the enemy.'

1. 313. οἱ δὲ ἔχοντες, etc. Cp. ll. 295, 305.

1. 317. ὥς, 'as if,' i. e. 'thinking that,' etc.

1. 318. παρ' ὧν, 'leading to which.' Παρὰ with *accus.* signifies motion *to get* alongside of a thing, hence simply motion *to* it.

1. 320. φανερά ὁδῷ. Cp. ll. 282 n, 299 n.

1. 327. εὖ-ζωνοι, lit. 'well-girt,' or 'girt up for action,' hence 'active.' Cp. Lat. *accinctus*.

1. 328. τῆς σάλπιγγος. The trumpet was the signal to let the others know that the 2000 had gained the height. Cp. l. 298.

1. 330. ἡ ἑκαστοι ἔτυχον ὄντες, 'where each party were *at the time*,' lit. 'chanced *being*.' Cp. 1. 5 n. [For this use of the participle compare the English 'I cease *speaking*,' παύομαι λέγων, 'I begin *speaking*,' ἀρχομαι λέγων, etc.]

1. 333. τῇ αὐτῇ ὁδῷ, 'the *same* road;' [αὐτῇ τῇ ὁδῷ would be 'the road *itself*,' or 'the *very* road.' Cp. 1. 190 n.] So τῷ αὐτῷ τρόπῳ 1. 340, 'in the *same* way.'

1. 346. τῷ πρώτῳ λόφῳ, 'the first of the three crests' which Xenophon's men had taken, mentioned in 1. 335 as 'overhanging the road.' Some men had been left to guard this, while Xenophon with the rest of the army went on to attack the next position (1. 340). It must not be confounded with the first position of all, which the volunteers took.

Λειφθέντες, 'left,' from λείπω; distinguish from ληφθέντες, 'taken,' from λαμβάνω.

1. 350. ἀπ-ῆται, imperf. of ἀπ-αιτέω, 'to ask back.' Distinguish from αἰτιάομαι, 'I blame.' Cp. 1. 273 n.

ἐπὶ τούτῳ ὥστε μὴ ἀδικεῖν, 'on condition of their not injuring;' lit. 'on this (condition) *so as* not to injure.' Ἐπὶ meaning 'upon,' and the dative implying 'rest at;' ἐπὶ with dat. means 'resting on a certain *basis*,' hence 'on certain *terms*' or '*conditions*.'

1. 355. δῆ, 'at once,' marking the precise *moment* at which the thing was done.

1. 356. ἐγένοντο, 'they got.' Cp. γενόμενοι, 1. 225.

1. 358. κατ-έαξαν, 1st aor. of κατ-άγνυμι. Distinguish the tenses of ἄγ-νυμι, 'I break,' from those of ἄγ-ω, 'I lead.' Both verbs have the fut. ἄξω, but the 1st aor. of ἄγνυμι is ἔαξα, that of ἄγω (not often used) is ἦξα. Also ἄγω makes its perf. ἦχα, while the 2nd perf. of ἄγνυμι is ἔαγα, and means, 'I am broken.'

1. 359. ὑπασπιστής, 'armour-bearer,' lit. 'shield-supporter.' The ἀσπίς, or large shield, was a great encumbrance when not in actual use.

1. 360. προ-βαλλόμενος, 'putting forward' as a defence.

1. 362. τοῖς ἤδη συντεταγμένοις, 'those already posted there.' These were the men whom Xenophon had ordered to march on (1. 345) while he ascended the hill with a chosen band. They had halted under arms, and were waiting for Xenophon in the road below.

1. 365. λάκκοις κονιατοῖς, 'plastered cisterns,' made by digging holes in the ground, and plastering the inside with lime (κονία). Many of these cisterns have been found in Syria and Kurdistan of the present day. [Λάκκος is the same word as the Latin *lacus*.]

1. 368. πάντα τὰ νομιζόμενα, 'all (the funeral rites) which are considered customary,' i. e. all the *regular* funeral rites,

CHAPTER V.

THE MARCH THROUGH ARMENIA.

1. 2. ὥς κωλύσοντας, 'as if they meant to hinder them.' So ὥς ἐπεκείσομένους 1. 6 below. Cp. II. 70 n.

1. 6. συν-ειλεγμένους, 'collected.' Λέγω, 'I gather,' has perf. εἴλοχα, perf. pass. εἴλεγμαι, but only in compounds; λέγω, 'I speak,' has no perf. act. in use, but perf. pass. λέλεγμαι.

1. 9. αὐτόματοι, 'of their own accord.' Αὐτόματος is literally 'self-moving' or 'self-acting,' from αὐτός, 'self,' and the stem μα, 'to move,' found in the old 2nd perf. μέ-μα-α. Hence it means 'acting of one's own will,' without any external force; and we call a self-acting machine an *automaton*.

περι-ρρυῆναι, 2nd aor. pass. infin. of περι-ρρέω, fut. ρεύ-σομαι, perf. ἐρρύ-ηκα, 2nd aor. pass. ἐρρύ-ην (with active meaning). In verbs beginning with ρ, the ρ is doubled (1) after the augment, as ἔρ-ρεον, (2) after a preposition ending in a vowel, as περι-ρρέω.

αὐτῷ is the *dativus commodi*, lit. 'slipped round for him,' i. e. 'slipped off him.'

1. 10. δια-βαίνειν, 'he went free,' lit. 'with the legs apart (διά).' [Usually δια-βαίνειν is 'to go through,' or 'go across,' as in ll. 21, 23, 24, 25, etc.]

1. 17. Why δύο νεανίσκω (dual) here, but τοὺς νεανίσκους and οἱ νεανίσκοι (plural) in ll. 29, 35 below? Because on the *first mention* of the young men one's attention is directed to the fact of there being *two* of them, whereas afterwards they are merely alluded to as 'the young men,' without any stress being laid upon this fact. But even in the former case it was not thought necessary to put the *verb* in the dual; so we have προσ-έτρεχον, not προσ-ετρεχέτην. Cp. I. 1 n.

1. 20. ὥσπερ μαρσίπους, 'what seemed like bags,' lit. 'as it were bags;' Lat. *quasi* or *tanquam*.

1. 22. ταύτῃ, sc. χώρα, 'at this point.' So ἧ, 'in which place' = 'where.' Lat. *qua*. Cp. I. 71.

1. 23. δι-εβαίνομεν, imperf., 'tried to cross,' or 'began to cross.' But δι-έβημεν, 2nd aor. in next line, 'we (actually) did cross.'

1. 24. ὥς νευσόμενοι. Ὡς with fut. part. denotes a *purpose*. Cp. II. 70 n.

For πρόσθεν followed by πρίν in the next clause cp. IV. 121 n.

1. 30. Distinguish ταῦτά from ταῦτα. Cp. I. 275 n.

1. 34. ἐν μέσῳ τούτων, 'between them.' Μέσος means (1) the middle of a thing, as μέση ἡμέρα or μέσον ἡμέρας (II. 17); (2) a space midway between, with the gen., as here.

1. 38. ἀνὰ κράτος. Cp. II. 5 n.

1. 40. ἐπεὶ δι-έβη, 'when he *had* crossed.' The aor. in a minor sentence must often be translated by the pluperfect. Cp. I. 254, II. 118.

1. 43. τοὺς πολεμίους, etc., the Armenian infantry, who had been drawn up on the higher ground behind the cavalry. Cp. I. 4.

1. 48. ὡς ἐπι-θησόμενοι, 'in order to attack.' Cp. II. 70 n.

1. 51. σκευοφόρων, neuter, as is shown by τὰ ὑπο-λειπόμενα. Τὰ σκευόφορα are the same as ὑποζύγια, 'baggage animals'; οἱ σκευόφοροι are the sutlers or camp-followers, who helped to carry the baggage. These are also called ὁ ὄχλος (I. 53).

Distinguish μετὰ τούτων (gen.), 'with these,' or 'among these,' from μετὰ ταῦτα, 'after these things.' Cp. I. 128 n.

1. 54. ἔθετο ἀντία αὐτοῖς τὰ ὅπλα, 'drew up (his men) opposite them.' Θέσθαι ὅπλα means 'to pile arms,' or 'halt under arms' (cp. I. 241 n.): hence, with ἀντία added, 'to take up a position under arms over against the enemy.'

1. 55. ποιήσασθαι τοὺς λόχους, 'to form their companies' into divisions of so many men each. Here the divisions were of twenty-five each, called ἐνωμότιαι. Cp. IV. 179 n.

1. 56. πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων, 'towards the Carduchi.' Πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους would mean 'to the Carduchi.'

οὐράγους, 'leaders of the rear,' from οὐρά, 'rear' (lit. 'a tail'), and ἡγ-έομαι, 'I lead.' [The Greeks spoke of an army metaphorically as a wild beast; hence στόμα, 'mouth,' i.e. 'front'; κέρα, 'horn,' i.e. 'wing'; πλευραὶ, 'flanks'; οὐρά, 'tail' or 'rear.']

1. 59. ᾧδάν τινες ᾄδοντες; so Tacitus describes the ancient Germans as singing while they advanced to battle.

1. 62. ἐκεῖνος (Lat. *ille*), referring to Xenophon, who is not the subject of the sentence. If there were no pronoun it would be doubtful whether he or Cheirisophus was meant.

1. 65. ὡς δια-βησομένους. Cp. II. 70 n.

1. 66. πρὸσω τοῦ ποταμοῦ, 'far into the river,' lit. 'to a further point of the river,' the *partitive* genitive.

1. 67. σφενδόνη, here 'a stone from a sling,' though properly it means the sling itself. Hence ἐπειδὴ σφενδόνη ἐξ-ικνοῖτο = 'as soon as they got within a sling's cast.' Cp. I. 261 n.

1. 68. ἀσπίς ψοφοῖ, 'a shield should ring,' i.e. with the missiles from the slings of the enemy striking on it.

1. 70. τὸ πολεμικόν, sc. σημεῖον, 'the signal for battle;' i.e. what was

the *usual* signal for battle, and what the enemy would understand as such, though the Greeks had orders to take it the contrary way on this occasion.

1. 71. ἧ, sc. χώρα = 'where,' Lat. *qua*. Cp. I. 22 n.

1. 72. τὴν τάξιν, 'his station.' The article in Greek often = a possessive pronoun. Cp. I. 15 n.

1. 75. ἤρχοντο, imperf. of ἄρχομαι, 'I begin.' Cp. II. 50 n. [But the imperf. of ἔρχομαι does not seem to be used except in *compounds*, as προηρχόμεν, etc.]

1. 76. ὥρμησαν. Cp. IV. 204 n.

1. 78. σημαίνει. The signal agreed upon to mislead the enemy. Cp. I. 70 n.

1. 82. οἱ πολλοί, 'the greater part.' The article with πολλὸς gives the force of a superlative, hence οἱ πολλοί = πλεῖστοι.

1. 83. οἱ ὑπὸ Χειρισόφου, etc. Cp. I. 60.

1. 85. ἢ ἔδει, 'than they ought to have done,' according to the instructions given above in I. 66.

1. 88. Τηλεβόαν ποταμόν, now the Kara Su, which flows into the Eastern branch of the Euphrates. The Greeks were now ascending into the plain which lies below the still higher elevation of Erzroum. The cold of this district, especially at Erzroum itself, is unusually severe in winter; and this was in the beginning of December. See Table of Dates, p. vii.

1. 93. τῆς νυκτός, gen. of time. Cp. IV. 255 n.

ὥστε ἀπ-έκρυψε, 'so that it covered' (stating a fact); ὥστε ἀποκρύψαι (infin.) would mean 'with the *intention* of covering.'

1. 97. τις καὶ ἄλλος. What does καὶ mean here? Cp. I. 21 n.

1. 98. ἔσχιζεν (imperf.), 'began to cleave them,' or 'would cleave them.' ἐκ τούτου. Cp. I. 85 n.

1. 100. δια-σκηνηῆσαι, 'to take up *separate* quarters.' Διὰ is connected with δις and δύο, and denotes *separation* or *distribution* into parts. Cp. IV. 309 n.

1. 107. ἐβουλιμίασαν, 'suffered from *bulimia*,' or 'became faint from fasting.' Βου-λίμία is literally 'ravenous hunger,' the prefix βου- (from βούς, 'an ox,') denoting anything *large* or *excessive*. [Thus βού-παις means 'an overgrown *lout* of a boy.' We use the prefix *horse* in the same way, as in 'horse-chestnut,' 'horse-laugh.']

1. 108. πάθος, 'complaint,' from παθ- the stem of πάσχω, (= πάθ-σκω), 'I suffer.' [From the corresponding Latin word *patior* we get 'patient,' meaning one who is ill, lit. 'a sufferer.']

1. 109. φαγόντες = εἰ φάγοιεν, 'if they ate.' Cp. I. 261 n.

1. 116. Distinguish αὐται, nom. pl. fem. of οὗτος, 'this,' from αὐταί, nom. pl. fem. of αὐτός, 'self.'

τίνες εἶεν, 'who they *were*,' the opt. in an indirect question. Cp. IV. 282 n.

1. 120. κωμάρχην, 'head man,' a sort of chief magistrate or bailiff of the village, responsible of course to the Persian government.

1. 123. οἱ μὴ δυνάμενοι, '*whoever* were unable,' = εἰ τινες μὴ δύναιτο, Lat. '*si qui* nequirent.'

1. 126. δι-εφθαρμένοι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς, '*having* their eyesight destroyed,' lit. 'destroyed in *respect* of their eyes.' So in next line ἀπο-σεσηπότες τοὺς δακτύλους.

1. 129. τῆς χιόνος, 'from the snow,' lit. '*as regards* the snow,' gen. of respect.

1. 132. ὑπο-δεδεμένοι, '*with their shoes on*.' These were sandals, consisting of a mere sole fastened by straps going round the feet. Hence ὑπο-δέω (lit. 'I tie below') means 'I put on sandals,' and ὑπο-δεδεμένοι, in a middle rather than a passive sense, is 'having their sandals on their feet.'

1. 134. γάρ explains the reason why they suffered in the manner described, i. e. *because* their new shoes were made of undressed leather.

1. 140. ἐκάθηντο, pluperf. of κάθ-ημαι, with meaning of imperf. because κάθ-ημαι is used as a *present*. Why is the augment placed before the preposition in ἐ-καθ-ήμην? Cp. IV. 60 n.

1. 141. οὐκ ἔφασαν. Cp. IV. 278 n. It was here that the incident occurred which Xenophon relates in chap. VI. 275, of a soldier attempting to bury a sick comrade, to save the trouble of carrying him.

1. 145. φοβῆσαι. Distinguish φοβεῖν, 'to frighten,' Lat. *terrere*, from φοβεῖσθαι, 'to fear,' Lat. *timere*.

1. 150. ἦκαν, 1st aor. of ἵμι. Ἔθηκα, ἦκα, and ἔδωκα are the three 1st aorists which end in -κα. Do not confuse ἦκαν with ἦκον, imperf. of ἵκω, 'I am come.'

1. 156. σκεψομένους, fut. part. 'to see,' Lat. *visuros*.

1. 158. παρ-έδοσαν κομίζειν. The Greek infin. can be used to express a *purpose* or *intention*, instead of ἵνα or ὅπως with the subj. and opt. In Latin you could not say 'aegrotos iis tradiderunt portare,' but 'ut portarent.' The Greek infin. is much more like the English than the Latin. Cp. III. 197 n.

1. 169. οἶνος κρίθινος, probably a sort of 'whisky,' as would appear from its effects. Cp. l. 172.

1. 170. Distinguish αὐταὶ αἱ κριθαί, 'the grains *themselves*,' from αἱ αὐταὶ κριθαί, 'the *same* grains.' Cp. IV. 190 n.

1. 172. ἄκρατος, lit. 'unmixed,' from ἀ-, 'not,' and κεράννυμι (perf. κέ-κρῶ-κα), 'I mix.' Hence (of wine) 'strong,' because the ancients generally mixed their wine with water before drinking.

1. 173. ἐπεὶ τις συν-εθισθείη, 'as soon as one got used to it.' The opt. with ἐπεὶ implies 'whenever the time might be.'

1. 176. Φᾶσιν, not the Colchian Phasis, which flows westward into the Euxine, but the Araxes or modern Aras, which flows eastward into the Caspian Sea. This latter river also had the name of Phasis, and Xenophon seems to have confounded the two. The district is still called Pasin, and the river Pasin Su.

παρά, not 'to' the river Phasis, but 'along' it.

τῇ-εἰς-τὸ-πεδῖον-ὑπερβολῇ. Cp. I. 109 n.

1. 182. τοῦ ὄρους. Distinguish ὄρος, gen. ὄρεος, -ους, neut. 'a mountain,' from ὄρος, gen. ὄρου, masc. 'a boundary.'

1. 185. ὥς τάχιστα, lit. 'as (anyone would do it) most quickly.' i.e. 'as quickly as possible.' Lat. *quam celerrime*. Cp. ὥς κράτιστα

1. 191, ὥς ῥᾶστα 1. 192, ὥς ἐλαχίστους 1. 193.

1. 186. The accent on οἷ does not belong to it, but is thrown back from the τε following. Therefore οἷ is the article with πολέμοι, and the intervening words νῦν-ἡμᾶς-ὀρώντες are taken together as one word = an epithet of πολέμοι. Cp. I. 109 n.

1. 189. μετὰ τοῦτον, 'after him,' to be distinguished from μετὰ τούτου, 'with him.' Cp. μετὰ ταῦτα I. 128 and n.

1. 190. γιγνώσκω, 'I judge' or 'decide,' to be distinguished from οἶδα, 'I know.' Γιγνώσκειν means 'to get a notion' of a thing, hence 'to learn,' 'perceive,' or 'judge.' [There is much the same difference between the French *connaître* and *savoir*.]

11. 191, 192, 193. ὥς κράτιστα, ὥς ῥᾶστα, ὥς ἐλαχίστους. Cp. 1. 185 n.

1. 194. κλέψαι τι τοῦ ὄρους, lit. 'to steal a portion of the mountain,' i.e. 'steal our way over the mountain.' Κλέπτειν means (1) 'to steal,' (2) 'to do anything by stealth,' just as we speak of *stealing* a march upon the enemy. The point of the 'banter' in the following extract lies in the double meaning of the word.

1. 196. καὶ...δέ. When καὶ and δέ come in the same clause, δέ couples the sentence, καὶ emphasises the word which follows it. Here 'and (or but) I think it is not impossible even (καὶ) to steal our way.'

1. 199. ἀτάρ, 'but yet,' marking a sudden change of thought. The precise idea is 'but, in consequence of thinking of the matter again,' etc.

συμ-βάλλομαι λόγους, 'I talk,' lit. 'put words together,' Lat. *conferre sermones*.

1. 201. ἐκ παίδων, 'from childhood,' lit. 'from (being) children.' Lat. *a pueris*.

1. 202. ὅσα νόμος μὴ κωλύει, 'whatever the law does not forbid.' Cp. 1. 123 n.

1. 203. ὥς κράτιστα. Cp. 1. 185 n.

1. 206. κλέπτοντές τι τοῦ ὄρους. Cp. l. 194 n.

πληγὰς λάβωμεν literally refers to the punishment inflicted at Sparta upon those who were caught stealing. (Cp. l. 204.) As applied to the present circumstances it means being 'beaten' by the enemy.

[This law of theft was one of the institutions ascribed to Lycurgus. By it the Spartan boys were not encouraged to steal in *all* cases, but only to obtain the necessaries of life; and if caught they were punished, not for the theft itself, but for having done the work badly. By thus forcing them to depend upon their own exertions for a bare subsistence, Lycurgus hoped to make them hardy and effective soldiers.]

1. 207. ἀλλὰ μέντοι, 'well, as for *that*.' The μέν has its usual force of 'indeed' or 'certainly'; τοί is perhaps an old form of σοί, and means 'let me tell you.'

1. 208. δεινοῦς κλέπτειν, 'clever at stealing.' Δεινός means (1) 'terrible,' (2) 'wonderful,' (3) 'clever'; compare our expression 'a terrible hand' at anything, i. e. 'very *clever*' at doing it.

τὰ δημόσια, 'the public money,' sc. χρήματα. The readiness of all public officers to take bribes was a crying evil in the Athenian republic.

1. 209. καὶ σοί. What does καὶ mean here? Cp. I. 21 n.

1. 211. κατα-ληψόμενος, fut. part. Cp. l. 156 n.

1. 215. εἰς τὸ ἴσον ἡμῖν, 'to a level with us.' Lat. *in aequum descendere*.

1. 216. καὶ here introduces a sudden and *impatient* objection, and may be translated 'but.' [This force of καὶ is commonly seen in the phrase καὶ πῶς; 'but how?' or, 'how then?']

1. 217. ἀλλά, 'nay but.'

1. 219. ὁπότε ἔχοιεν, the optative depending on the *past* tense ἐποίησαντο;—'they made an agreement that *as soon as they get possession of* the heights they should light many fires.' The orders given to the volunteers would be—ὁπότεν ἔχητε τὰ ἄκρα, πρὶν καίετε πολλά.

1. 221. ἀπ-ήρχοντο, imperf. of ἀπ-έρχομαι, not ἀπ-άρχομαι. Cp. l. 75 n.

1. 228. ἐφ-είπετο, imperf. of ἐφ-έπομαι (ἐπὶ and ἔπομαι), cp. II. 258, IV. 160 n.

1. 233. Ταόχους, probably the district between the modern Kars and Erzroum. But this part of the route is extremely uncertain¹.

¹ Ainsworth (Travels in the Track of the Ten Thousand) places the Taochi a long way northward in Georgia, and carries the Greeks so far out of their direct route. But Grote (Hist. of Greece, Appendix to chap. lxx) takes them only to the level of Erzroum, and argues that the time spent on the march is fully accounted for by the difficulties of the way.

l. 234. Distinguish ὥκουν, imperf. of οἰκέω, from ὥχόμεν, imperf. of οἴχομαι.

l. 238. αἰρετέον, 'must be taken.' Verbal adjectives in -τέος imply necessity (the Lat. gerundive, as *amandus*), those in -τός imply possibility, (Lat. adj. in -bilis, as *amabilis*). Cp. IV. 142 n.

ἔστι, the *pres.*, not ἔσται, the *future*, although εἰ μὴ ληψόμεθα follows. The sense is—'we have no provisions now, [*nor shall we get any*] unless we take this fort.'

l. 242. πειράται, the subj. (contracted from πειράηται), not the indic. (from πειράεται.) All compounds of ἀν, as ἐάν, ὅταν, etc. take the subjunctive mood. Cp. III. 67 n.

l. 246. Here and in l. 250 χωρίον means 'a space*of ground;' elsewhere (as in l. 236) it means 'a fort.' It is properly a diminutive of χώρα, i. e. 'a little place.'

l. 247. τρία ἡμί-πλεθρα, about fifty yards. The πλέθρον was a measure of length = 101 English feet.

l. 252. ἐνταῦθα ἔνθεν, 'to a point whence.' Ἐνταῦθα properly means 'in this place,' answering to the question *where?* but it is often used after verbs of motion, answering to the question *whither?* So we commonly say *here, there, and where* for *hither, thither, and whither*.

l. 255. μετὰ τοῦτο. Cp. l. 189, I. 128 n.

l. 260. ἐπεὶ προ-δράμοι, 'every time he ran forward,' Lat. *quoties procurreret*. Conjunctions of time with the opt. often denote *repeated* action, 'whenever.'

l. 261. ἄμαξαι, 'waggon-loads.' Ἀμαξα is here put for what it contains, just as in l. 67 σφενδόνη meant the *stone* from a sling and not the sling itself.

l. 262. The οὐ goes closely with πρῶτος, 'fearing lest he should not be the first to run,' etc., Lat. 'veritus *ne non* primus percurreret.'

l. 265. ἐπι-λαμβάνεται, 'catches hold of.' Λαμβάνειν is 'to take' and governs the accus., λαμβάνεσθαι (middle), 'to take hold of,' and governs the genitive (τῆς ἵππος). But the active λαμβάνειν also takes the gen. of the *part* seized, as ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης I. 276.

l. 266. μετὰ τοῦτον. Cp. l. 189 n.

l. 269. Distinguish ταῦτά, 'the same,' from ταῦτα, 'these things.' Cp. I. 275 n.

l. 270. κατα-ρρίψοντα. For the doubling of ρ in compound verbs cp. l. 9 n.

l. 271. ἐπι-λαμβάνεται αὐτῆς, cp. l. 265 n.

l. 273. φερόμενοι 'with a rush,' lit. 'being borne along.' Lat. *cum impetu delati*.

ἐντεῦθεν, 'hence,' i. e. 'in consequence of this.'

l. 277. Ἄρπασον. The Harpasus is possibly a north-western tri-

butary of the Araxes (called Phasis in l. 176.) It has been supposed that after crossing the latter river the Greeks had marched nearly 100 miles out of their way to the north east, and were now returning in a direction nearly parallel to their former route, through the country of the Chalybes. (See foot-note on p. 141.) But it is more likely that the Harpasus is the modern Tcholak Su, which flows into the Black Sea near Batoum. (See Vocabulary.)

l. 280. πέντε ἡμερῶν, 'in five days.' The genitive implies *close connexion*, 'a part of,' 'within' a certain period. Cp. τῆς νυκτός IV. 255 n.

l. 282. Distinguish ὄρος, 'a mountain,' from ὄρος, 'a boundary.' Cp. l. 182 n. Where this Theches was is uncertain; but it appears to have been off the direct road to Trapezus, into which the Greeks returned, after dismissing their guide (l. 300.)

l. 287. αἰ, 'from time to time' or 'in succession.' Cp. τὸν αἰ ἐν-τυγχάνοντα IV. 127 n. The next αἰ means 'continually.'

ἔθειν δρόμῳ. Cp. II. 54 n.

l. 288. μείζον τι, 'something very important,' lit. 'greater (than ordinary).'

l. 295. περι-έβαλλον. Note the force of the *imperf.*, 'they began to embrace' or 'fell to embracing.'

l. 296. φέρουσι .. ποιοῦσι. The change to the historical pres. from the past tenses ἀφ-ίκοντο, περι-έβαλλον marks the *rapidity* of the action. [There is a good English example of this change of tenses in the *Pilgrim's Progress*, in the story of Giant Despair: 'So when he *arose*, he *getteth* him a cudgel, and *goeth* down into the dungeons to them . . . Then he *falls* upon them, and *beats* them in such sort that they *were* not able to help themselves.']

l. 301. τῆς νυκτός. Cp. l. 280, IV. 255 n.

ὄρος μέγα, 'a high mountain-range,' running east and west, parallel to the sea-coast. The Colchi occupied the coast of the Euxine from Trapezus to the Phasis (beyond Batoum).

l. 306. ἀντι-παρ-ετάξαντο φάλαγγα, 'drew up against them *in line*.' The word φάλαγξ does not *necessarily* mean a compact mass; it was only the Macedonian phalanx that was so, and our use of the term comes from this. The proper meaning is 'a line,' Lat. *acies*, as opposed to 'a column.' In the present instance the Greeks first formed a *line*, but finding this inconvenient for marching up the hill, they 'disposed their companies in *columns*' (ἐποίησαντο ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους l. 313). [Soldiers cannot march '*in line*,' (i. e. standing side by side) unless the ground is quite clear, like a parade ground. Going along roads and all ordinary marching is done '*in column*,' i. e. some four or more abreast, and the rest following behind in a string.]

1. 310. κωλύουσι τὸ μὴ εἶναι. The Greeks use what is really the natural method of putting a 'not' in each part of the sentence. *We* say 'prevent (i. e. 'do not let,') your being.' *They* say 'prevent your [not] being.' [Cp. κωλύουσιν μὴ ὀλισθάνειν IV. 242, and the multiplied negatives in I. 141 n.]

πάλαι ἐσπεύδομεν, 'we have long been desiring.' The Greeks use πάλαι thus with a present or imperfect, where we use a perfect, as πάλαι ὀρώ, 'I have long seen,' Lat. 'jamdudum' or 'jampridem video.'

1. 311. ὦμούς κατα-φαγεῖν, 'eat up alive,' lit. 'eat up raw,' a proverbial expression for the quick and utter destruction of people you hate. [Cp. Homer, Iliad v. 35 ὦμόν βεβρώθοις Πρίαμον Πριάμοιό τε παῖδας, 'mayst thou devour Priam and his sons alive.']

1. 313. ὀρθίους τοὺς λόχους, 'in columns.' Cp. I. 306 n.

1. 315. δρόμῳ θέοντας, 'running at full speed.' Cp. II. 54 n.

1. 319. τῶν κηρίων, the partitive genitive, as we say 'to eat of a thing.' Thus πίνειν τοῦ οἴνου is 'to drink some of the wine,' but πίνειν τὸν οἶνον would be 'to drink up all the wine.'

1. 322. τὴν αὐτὴν ὥραν, i. e. 'the same hour' at which they were taken ill the day before.

ἀν-εφρόνου, 'began to recover their senses.' [Ἀνὰ, means 'up again,' as in ἀνα-θαρρεῖν, 'to take heart again,' ἀνα-πνεῖν, 'to recover one's breath.']

1. 323. τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ, 'on the third or fourth day,' lit. '(some) on the third and (others) on the fourth day.' So εἷς καὶ δύο, 'one or two,' Lat. 'unus et alter.'

This poisonous honey seems to have been obtained from the flower of a kind of azalea, still common in those parts.

1. 325. Τραπεζοῦντα, Trapezus, the modern Trebisonde. The name is from τράπεζα, 'a table,' because of a hill near the town, level at the top and forming a 'table land.' Cp. the 'Table' Mountain near the Cape of Good Hope.

1. 330. εἰστήκεσαν. As the perf. ἔστηκα is intransitive and means 'I am standing,' the pluperf. εἰστήκειν has the force of an imperf., 'I was standing.' [The perf., pluperf., and 2nd aor. are intransitive, the other tenses are transitive. Cp. II. 99 n.]

1. 331. τῷ ἀγῶνι. Distinguish ἀγών, -ῶνος, 'a contest,' from ἄγων, -οντος, pres. part. of ἄγω, 'I lead.'

1. 336. ἔδει αὐτοῦς, 'they were required' by the rule of the race; lit. 'it was necessary for them.'

1. 338. βωμόν, probably the 'altar' on which the customary sacrifices had been offered before the games, and which now served for a goal. [But βωμὸς (from stem βα- in βαίνω), 'a step,' may mean any raised place to which you go up, Lat. *suggestus*.]

CHAPTER VI.

TRAPEZUS AND SINOPE.

1. 4. φυλακάς, 'watches,' from φυλακή, not from φύλαξ, 'a guard,' which would make acc. pl. φύλακας, cp. III. 201 n.

1. 8. λέγοι, 'they applauded [saying] that he spoke well,' the optative marks an oblique or reported speech after past time.

Distinguish ταῦτά, 'the same,' and ταῦτα, 'these things;' cp. I. 275 n.

1. 12. περιμένετε may be indic. or imperative. The sense decides.

ἔστ' ἄν, i. e. ἔστε ἄν, 'until.' Compounds of ἄν take the subjunctive. Cp. III. 67 n.

1. 13. ἦσθησαν, 1st aor. pass. of ἥδομαι. Distinguish ἦσθην from ἡσθόμην, 2nd aor. of αἰσθάνομαι, which has (1) no aspirate, (2) the *subscriptum*.

1. 14. ὥς τάχιστα, 'as quickly as possible.' Cp. V. 185 n.

1. 15. ἐν ᾧ, sc. χρόνῳ, 'while.' Cp. note on ἐκ τούτου I. 85.

1. 16. ἐπὶ λείαν, 'to get booty.' Ἐπὶ with the accus. signifies motion towards a thing, hence 'for the purpose of.' Cp. IV. 209 n. [In English *upon* was once used in the same sense, and we still speak of going *upon* an errand.]

1. 21. μητρόπολις here means 'chief town' or 'fort,' just as we use the word 'metropolis.' But it usually means the 'mother-city' of a colony.

συν-ερρυήκεσαν, pluperf. of συρ-ρέω (= συν-ρέω). For the tenses of ρέω cp. V. 9.

1. 22. ἰσχυρῶς, 'exceedingly,' lit. 'strongly.' So in Latin *valde*, contracted from *valide*, means 'very,' as *valde magnus*, etc.

1. 23. πρόσοδοι, 'approaches [were] difficult.'

1. 25. συν-είποντο, imperf. of συν-έπομαι. For the distinction between εἰπόμην and εἶπον cp. II. 158 n.

1. 26. πλείους, being for πλείονες, is the nominative.

1. 31. θέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, 'to stand under arms,' or 'to halt.' Cp. I. 241 n.

1. 35. εἶα, imperf. of εἶαω, contr. for εἶαε, the augment contracting into *ει* instead of *η*, because of a lost letter *F* (the digamma), which came between the two *ε*'s. Cp. I. 280.

1. 36. ποιῆσαι τὸν λόχον, 'to form his company.' Lat. *aciem instruere*.

1. 39. δι-ηγκυλωμένους, 'having (their fingers) passed through (διὰ) the loop (ἀγκύλη) of the javelin,' i. e. ready to hurl it.

1. 40. ἐπι-βεβλημένους ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, 'having (their arrows) fixed on the string,' i. e. ready to shoot.

1. 41. διφθέρα, 'a hide,' here a 'leathern bag' or 'pouch' for carrying stones: it was hung from the slinger's neck.

1. 42. παρ-εσκεύαστο, plupf. pass., distinguish from παρ-εσκευάσατο, 1st aor. mid.

1. 44. λόγχοι κ.τ.λ. are in apposition to τὰ βέλη.

1. 45. ἦσαν οἱ, 'some,' lit. 'there were (those) who.' Lat. *erant qui*. We have εἰσιν οἱ and ἦσαν οἱ in the nominative—but ἐστὶν ὧν for εἰσιν ὧν in the genitive, and so in the other cases.

1. 47. ὥστε . . ἀνέβησαν, 'so that they scaled it,' i. e. *in consequence of* the enemy retiring, Agasius and Philoxenus were enabled to scale the fort unarmed. Ὡστε when it marks that a result *actually* did occur does not affect the mood: when it simply means a probable result, it takes the infinitive. Compare the English 'so that he did' and 'so as to do it.'

1. 48. μετὰ τούτους. For μετὰ, 'after,' with the accus. cp. V. 189, I. 128 n.

1. 49. ἦλωκει, plupf. of ἀλίσκομαι.

1. 50. The πελτασταί, 'targeteers,' were distinguished from the ψιλοί, 'light-armed' (also called γυμνήται) by wearing the small shield (πέλτη). They came therefore between the ψιλοὶ and the ὀπλίται or 'heavy-armed.' Among the ψιλοὶ were included the 'slingers' (σφενδο-νήται) and the 'archers' (τοξόται).

1. 55. ἃ ἔλαβον, 'what they *had* taken.' The aor. in a *minor* sentence must often be rendered by the English pluperf. Cp. I. 254 n., II. 118 n.

1. 57. ἐκ-πίπτοντες, 'driven out.' Ἐκ-πίπτω is used as the passive of ἐκ-βάλλω, especially in the phrase ἐκ-πίπτειν τῆς πατρίδος, 'to be banished from one's country.' [So κεῖμαι = 'I am placed' (pass. of τίθημι), ἀπο-θνήσκω, 'I am killed' (pass. of ἀπο-κτείνω).]

Distinguish ἄκρᾱ, fem. sing. 'a citadel,' from ἄκρᾱ, neut. pl. of ἄκρον, 'heights.'

1. 60. The first infin. λαμβάνειν depends on βουλομένους, the second infin. ἰέναι upon ἀν-εἰπεῖν, with τοὺς βουλομένους as the acc. before it,—'to proclaim *that* those who wished *to* take anything *should* go inside.'

1. 63. ἔθεντο τὰ ὄπλα, 'grounded their shields,' 'posted themselves.' Cp. I. 31 n, I. 241 n.

1. 67. ληπτέον, 'to be taken;' for force of -τέος cp. V. 238 n.

1. 71. καὶ . . καί, 'either . . or' as we should say; lit. 'both remaining and going away were difficult.'

1. 72. ἐν ᾧ, 'while.' Cp. I. 15 n.

1. 76. καί, 'also,' i. e. as well as those on the right: so I. 78 καὶ ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκῶν.

1. 77. καί, 'even,' 'quite,' i. e. the houses not merely 'caught fire' but did so 'rapidly.' Cp. I. 21 n.

1. 79. τὸ μέσον ἐαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων, 'the space between them and the enemy.' Cp. V. 34 n.

1. 84. Distinguish αὐτῆς τῆς ἄκρας from τῆς αὐτῆς ἄκρας, cp. IV. 190 n.

1. 88. ἀπ-ιτέον, Lat. *abeundum esse*: -τέος implies 'must.' Cp. V. 238 n.

1. 89. τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα ἔτη, just as we say 'over forty.' The full phrase would be τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα ἔτη γεγονότας ('born.')

1. 91. [τοσαῦτα] τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα μή. Σκευῶν is partitive, ὅσα μή means *all which* were not required: ἀ οὖ would mean 'those *particular* ones which.' Cp. ὅσα νόμος μὴ κωλύει V. 202 and n.

1. 92. Κερασοῦντα, Cerasus or Kerasunt, noted as being the place from which *cherries* were imported into Europe by the Roman general Lucullus, B.C. 73; hence the Lat. name *Cerasus*.

1. 101. ἀλλήλων, the gen. after συν-ήκουον, 'they could hear each other shouting.' The imperf. denotes 'whenever they shouted their neighbours could hear them.' For ἀκούειν with the gen. cp. II. 43 n.

κοιλή, 'hollow,' i. e. 'full of hills and dales.'

1. 104. τῶν εὐδαιμόνων, 'the richer sort; ' εὐ-δαίμων is from εὖ, 'well,' and δαίμων, 'fortune,' hence literally 'blest by fortune,' i. e. 'prosperous,' 'wealthy.' So in English the notions of *weal* and *wealth*, prosperity and riches are closely combined.

ἔστιγμένους. Herodotus mentions the practice of 'tattooing' as prevalent among the Thracians of the upper classes.

1. 108. οὓς δι-έλθοιεν. The opt. here is like the imperfect subjunctive of a minor sentence in oblique oration. The direct statement would be οὔτοι βαρβαρώτατοι ἦσαν πάντων, οὓς δι-ήλθομεν.

1. 111. πράξειαν ἄν, sc. ἄνθρωποι, from 1. 109, i. e. 'what *people in general* would do.'

1. 112. δι-ελέγοντο ἑαυτοῖς, etc. 'they would talk *to* themselves and laugh *at* themselves,' i. e. when quite alone.

ὅπου τύχοιεν. The opt. here adds to ὅπου the sense of 'wherever.' Cp. V. 173 n.

1. 122. ἐκ Σινώπης. Sinope was the parent city, of which Cotyora was a colony.

1. 123. δεινὸς λέγειν, 'clever at speaking,' Lat. *habilis ad dicendum*. Cp. V. 208 n.

1. 125. ἐκ τούτου. Cp. I. 85 n.

1. 126. ἐξένιζον, imperf. of ξενίζω. Do not mistake this verb for a compound with the prep. ἐξ.

1. 127. αὐτῶν, 'from them,' 'of them,' gen. after πυνθάνομαι.

1. 131. ἔξομεν πράγματα, 'shall have trouble.' Πρᾶγμα is lit. 'a thing done,' in pl. πράγματα, 'affairs,' 'business,' hence 'troublesome business.'

πλείω, contr. from πλείονα, comp. of πολὺς.

1. 133. εἶναι τοὺς μαχομένους, 'you will have to be the fighters' (and we shall have no trouble).

1. 134. ἂ γινώσκω, 'what I think.' For γινώσκω, as distinguished from οἶδα, cp. V. 190 n.

1. 136. κατ-εχομένων, 'if held,' because of the ἂν, 'in that case,' which follows with δύναιντο. Cp. IV. 234 n.

1. 137. οὐδέ, 'not even.'

οἱ πάντες ἄνθρωποι, 'all men combined.' Οἱ πάντες means 'the whole' or 'all collectively,' πάντες means 'every' or 'all distributively.'

1. 141. Ἄλυν, for the Halys and the other rivers, see Map at the end.

1. 142. τὰ πλοῖα. Observe the force of the article, 'the transports' which you will require. 'Who will give?' is a more lively way of saying 'no one will give.'

διαβῆτε, the aorist gives the force of a perf. subj., 'shall once have crossed.'

1. 144. μὲν οὖν. Οὖν means 'in fact I think,' 'in consequence of what I have told you,' the μὲν really belongs to τὴν-κατὰ-γῆν-πόρειαν, which is opposed to ἐὰν δὲ πλέητε.

1. 146. Ἡρακλείαν. Heraclea (Pontica), situated on the Lycus in Bithynia, was a Greek colony from Megara. Its king Lycus was said to have treated the Argonauts with kindness. The modern Erekli is only a small part of the ancient city, but there are extensive ruins, and traces of old walls, to the east and north.

1. 151. ἐπὶ τούτοις, 'with a view to this,' i. e. to see what was the will of the gods in the matter.

1. 152. λάθρα στρατιωτῶν, Lat. *clam militibus*; λάθρα with gen. = 'without the knowledge of.'

Silanus was an Ambracian prophet, who had foretold to Cyrus, before the battle of Cunaxa, that the king would not fight within ten days. For this prophecy Cyrus gave him ten talents, which he wanted to take home safely to Greece (l. 154); hence his opposition to Xenophon's scheme.

1. 158. τοῖς πολλοῖς, 'the majority,' lit. 'the many,' the article implying a division into two parts, of which the other was smaller; hence πολλοὶ, 'many,' but οἱ πολλοὶ, 'most,' like a superlative.

1. 160. ἐφόβησαν. Distinguish between φοβέω, 'I frighten,' and φοβέομαι, 'I am frightened,' i. e. 'I fear.'

1. 169. ἐπὶ τούτῳ, 'with this object.' Cp. note on ἐπὶ τούτοις

l. 151.

1. 172. ὑπ-άρξει, not merely ἔσται, but 'shall be with you *to start with*,' [and you will get others].

1. 174. ἐν τούτῳ, sc. χρόνῳ, 'meanwhile,' 'for the time.' Ἐν marks the time *within* or *during* which anything takes place. Cp. ἐν ᾧ 11. 15, 72.

1. 176. ὅπως λέξω. Λέξω must be 1 aor. subj. though in form it might also be the fut. indic.

1. 178. περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου εἰ ἄμεινον εἴη, 'about this very point, [*to see*] if it were better.' Αὐτὸς retains the meaning of *ipse* not only in nom. but in gen., dat., and acc. also, when attached to a noun or a *pronoun* as here.

1. 181. ὅτι φαίνονται. The opt. shows that this was merely what Silanus *said*, and that it might not be true. So also ὡς ἐγὼ δια-νοοίμην below. But it is ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπ-εβούλευε (the indicative) in the next line, because the 'plotting' of Silanus was a *certain fact*.

1. 183. δια-βάλλειν. See note on I. 12.

1. 185. εἰ ἑώρων .. ἂν ἐσκόπουν, 'if I had been observing you, etc., . . . I should have [now] *been considering* (imperfect).' Aorists would mean, 'if I *had seen* you, I *should have considered*.'

1. 191. The stress is on σωζομένους, 'that we should sail away *in safety*.'

1. 194. γιγνώσκω, 'I perceive,' or 'I judge,' lit. 'I *get* knowledge,' as distinguished from οἶδα, 'I know.'

ὁμοῦ ὄντες, 'if you are together,' = ἐὰν ᾗτε.

1. 195. καὶ ἔντιμοι ἔσεσθε, 'then you will both be held in honour.'

1. 199. ταῦτά. Cp. II. 143 n.

1. 200. ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ, 'in safety.' Lat. *tuto*. The adj. is used substantively. Cp. ἐν ἀπόροις, etc., III. 50 n.

κρίνεσθαι depends on δοκεῖ.

1. 201. ἐπὶ τούτοις, lit. 'on these conditions,' i. e. 'for this proposal,' signifying their *assent* to what had been proposed.

1. 202. τὸν βουλόμενον, lit. 'that *he who* wished,' i. e. '*whoever* wished,' = ὅστις βούλοιτο.

1. 204. ἀπο-διδράσκοντα, '*trying to run away*,' (force of the *present*). For the meaning of ἀπο-διδράσκω cp. I. 272 n.

1. 205. ὑπ-έσχοντο. Translate by the pluperf., '*had promised*,' and cp. I. 254, II. 118 n.

1. 206. οὐκ ἔφασαν, in one word, = 'refused.' Cp. IV. 278 n.

1. 210. εἰς Φᾶσιν. This is the Colchian Phasis, which rises in Mount Caucasus and flows westward into the Euxine. It is not the same Phasis as the one mentioned in V. 176, which was properly called the Araxes. Cp. V. 176 n.

1. 214. ἐπύθεντο, 'heard,' 2nd aor. of πυ(ν)θ-άν-ομαι, 'I learn by

enquiry.' The pres. is doubly *nasalized* (like λα(ν)θ-άν-ω, etc.) by the insertion of ν and of the syllable αν. Cp. note on τυγχάνω I. 220.

l. 215. δια-νοοῖτο, 'was intending,' or 'intended,' *not* 'would intend;' for the opt. after ἔλεγεν ὅτι cp. l. 184 n.

l. 218. κύκλοι, 'circles,' i. e. 'groups.'

l. 219. ὥς τάχιστα, 'as soon as possible.' Cp. V. 185 n.

l. 220. αὐτομάτους, 'of their own accord' [lit. 'self-moving']. Cp. V. 9 n.

l. 222. ἤκουσαν τοῦ κήρυκος. For ἀκούειν with gen. of the person cp. II. 43 n.

l. 224. δια-βάλλειν. Cp. l. 183 above, and I. 12 n.

ὥς, supply φάσκοντα to agree with τινά, 'saying that,' etc.

l. 226. φαίνωμαι, 'I am shown,' or 'proved;' rather stronger than δοκῶ, which would mean, 'if I seem *in your opinion* to be doing wrong;' φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν would mean, 'if I am *clearly* doing wrong.'

l. 227. ἐπι-θέτε μοι δίκην, 'impose a penalty on me,' i. e. 'punish me.' Cp. I. 134 n.

l. 228. χρῆσθε αὐτοῖς, 'deal with them,' lit. 'use them.' [So the common phrase τί χρῶμαι αὐτῷ; = 'What am I to *do with* him?' also the Lat. *utor*, 'treat' as a friend, etc.]

l. 229. οἶμαι, 'I suppose,' contr. from οἶομαι.

Distinguish ὅθεν, 'from what quarter,' from ὅπου, 'in what quarter.' [Adverbs in -θεν are local ablatives, denoting motion *from* a place, as πόθεν, 'whence,' those in -ου are local genitives denoting rest *at* or *in* a place, as ποῦ, 'where.']

l. 232. εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, 'into [the country of] the barbarians,' i. e. into Asia. The Greeks contemptuously called all foreigners βάρβαροι.

Distinguish ἔω, accus. of ἑως, 'the morning,' or 'the east,' from ἐῶ, contr. from ἐάω, 'I allow.' Sense and not accent distinguishes ἑως, 'until,' from ἔως, 'morning.'

l. 234. φᾶσιν. Cp. l. 210 n.

l. 235. καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰσίν, lit. 'there are fair sailings,' i. e. 'the wind is fair for sailing.' [Πλοῖ, contr. from πλόοι, nom. pl. of πλόος, πλοῦς.]

l. 240. μὴ βουλομένους, 'if you did not choose,' = εἰ μὴ βούλοισθε. Οὐ βουλομένους would mean, 'since [as a matter of fact] you do not choose,' = οἱ οὐ βούλεσθε.

l. 241. καὶ δὴ ἔάν, etc., 'and even *supposing* that by an act of deception I should carry you to the Phasis.'

The ἐξ-απατήσας is contrasted with βιασαίμην in the former sentence ('if I could not *force* you to go, I might perhaps *deceive* you into going'). It literally means 'having deceived you,' i. e. 'by deceiving you,' like the Latin gerund in -do. Καὶ δὴ means 'suppose that,' 'put

the case that,' so καὶ δὴ τεθνᾶσι, 'Well suppose they are dead, [what then]?' (Eur. *Medea* 386).

l. 246. δικαίως γε, 'justly at least,' i. e. 'their jealousy cannot be *well founded* whatever else it may be; it may be real, or well assumed, but not just.'

l. 252. δια-βαλόντας. Cp. I. 12 n.

δοῦναι δίκην, 'to give *satisfaction*,' i. e. 'to be punished,' Lat. *dare poenas*; λαβεῖν δίκην is 'to take satisfaction,' i. e. 'to punish,' Lat. *sumere poenas*. So also ἐπιθεῖναι δίκην l. 227.

l. 253. ὑπο-σχεῖν δίκην, 'submit to [give] an account,' i. e. 'be put on their trial.'

ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ, i. e. since the time when the five new generals were chosen in place of those murdered by Tissaphernes. See III. 175, and IV. 62.

l. 255. πρῶτον, neutr. sing. of πρῶτος, used as an adverb with λέξαντα.

l. 256. ποῦ, i. e. at what stage of the journey. The καί emphasises the verb in question, 'Where was it *then* that,' etc.? 'Where were you so struck?'

l. 257. ὅπου ἀπ-ωλλύμεθα, etc., i. e. during their march through Armenia (Chap. V. pp. 48, 49).

l. 258. ἀλλὰ μήν, 'well indeed.' Μήν is a strengthened form of μὲν, = 'certainly,' often = 'yet.'

l. 260. ὑβριστότερος, 'more vicious.' Ὑβρις is used of all kinds of *wanton* actions, and the ass was proverbial for being wanton even when tired.

Distinguish ὅμως, 'nevertheless,' (1) from ὁμοῦ, 'together,' (2) from ὁμοίως, 'likewise.'

l. 263. οὐδὲν εἶναι τούτων, 'that it [the reason he was beaten] was none of these things.'

l. 264. οὐκ ἔφη, 'denied' or 'said no.' Cp. I. 206 n.

l. 265. οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἔφη, 'said he did not do this *either*.' Οὐδὲ means 'not even,' 'nor yet,' or 'not either.'

l. 267. ἀν-εγίνωσκεν, 'began to recognise,' lit. 'began to perceive again [who he was].' Cp. 194 n. for meaning of γιγνώσκω. [In I. 237 ἀνα-γιγνώσκω had another meaning, 'to read.']

l. 268. ἦ σὺ εἶ, 'surely you are [are you not?].' Distinguish ἦ, 'surely,' from ἢ, 'or,' 'than.'

τὸν κάμνοντα, 'the sick man.' Κάμνω, 'I labour;' hence with νόσῳ understood, 'I labour under a sickness,' i. e. 'I am ill.' Cp. the Lat. 'morbo laborare.'

l. 270. ἀλλά, 'well but.' Xenophon admits that he did 'throw the things about,' but is going to explain why.

1. 271. δι-έδωκα, 'I distributed.' Διὰ means, 'in different directions,' or (as here) 'to different persons.'

καὶ σὺ, 'you also,' 'you on your part.'

1. 274. ἀπ-έδειξας, 'you produced.' He was required to produce the man committed to his charge at the end of the day's march, as a condition of getting back his goods.

ὑμεῖς. This is said to the assembled soldiers, but Xenophon resumes his address to the man in the next sentence (ἡνάγκασά σε, etc.).

1. 275. κατ-ελείπετο, imperf., 'was on the point of being left behind.'

1. 279. ὥς, with the fut. part. signifies a purpose. Cp. II. 70 n.

1. 281. ζῶη, opt. pres. of ζάω. Contracted verbs generally have their opt. in -οίην, -ώην instead of -οῖμι, -ῶμι. Cp. III. 133 n. [Remember that ζάω and χράομαι contract everywhere into η instead of α, hence ζῆ from ζάει, ἔζη from ἔζαε.]

1. 284. ἐπεὶ, 'after,' Lat. *postquam*. He means to say that the sick man died some time or other, notwithstanding his having been 'produced' at the end of that day's march. Cp. l. 274 n. Xenophon points out the difference between dying in the natural course of things, and being buried alive.

1. 285. καὶ γάρ, 'well, for the matter of that,' lit. '[yes] for we also,' etc.

1. 286. τούτου οὖν ἔνεκα, 'for this reason therefore,' i.e. 'Is this any reason why?' The οὖν connects δεῖ with ἀπο-θανοῦμεθα in the preceding sentence, 'Is it *therefore* necessary?'

1. 288. παῖσειεν ὀλίγας πληγὰς, 'gave him [too] few blows,' the cognate accus., or the accus. of a noun of *kindred* meaning with the verb. So we say, 'I struck him *a blow*,' 'they fought *a battle*,' etc.

II. 289, 290. Note the force of the imperfects ἐκέλευεν, ἀν-ίστατο, ἔλεγεν, 'proceeded to command,' 'offered to rise,' 'went on to say.'

1. 291. παῖσαι δῆ, 'that I *certainly* have struck.'

1. 293. πλεονεκτεῖν, 'to get the advantage of,' lit. 'to have' or 'try to have more than.' Hence it takes the gen. because of the comparative πλέον.

εἰ ἐποιούμεν, (imperf.), 'if we had been doing this (as a *habit*).'

ἀν ἀπ-ωλόμεθα, (aorist), 'we should (*once for all*) have been lost.'

1. 295. οὐκ ἐθέλοντας, 'refusing.' Cp. I. 127 n. Distinguish ἐθέλοντας, pres. part. of ἐθέλω, from ἐθελοντάς, acc. pl. of ἐθελοντής, 'a volunteer,' (II. 295. p. 41).

1. 297. καὶ ἑμαυτῷ, 'even for myself.' Cp. I. 21 for the different senses of καί.

1. 299. ἤλαυνον, (imperf.) 'I *would* urge him on,' i.e. *used* to do so every time the occasion occurred.

l. 300. ὑγρότητα, 'suppleness.' The adj. ὑγρὸς means (1) 'moist,' (2) 'soft,' (3) 'pliant,' especially of the limbs. [So Virgil, Georg. iii. 76, speaks of the 'mollia crura,' the 'lithely moving' legs of a high-stepping colt.]

l. 301. ὑπὸ τοῦ καθῆσθαι, 'by the [act of] sitting down.' The article with the infin. shows that the verb is used as a gerund or substantive. Lat. *sedendo*.

οἱ δάκτυλοι .. ἀπ-εσήποντο. See the narrative in Chap. V. 127 (p. 49).

l. 303. ἀπολειπομένους, etc. See the same narrative a little further on, ll. 137-144.

l. 304. πύξ, 'with the fist.' These adverbs in ξ denote the instrument, as λαξ, 'with the heel,' ὀδὰξ, 'with the teeth,' and a few others. They are probably shortened forms of dative plurals. [For πύξ cp. Lat. 'pug-nus'; Germ. *fust*; Eng. 'fist.']

l. 306. ἐπὶ ἀγαθῷ, 'for good.' Ἐπὶ with the dative implies *purpose*. Cp. ἐπὶ θανάτῳ I. 276 n.

l. 307. δοῦναι δίκην. Cp. l. 252 n. The sentence means, 'I am content (lit. 'think it right') to render the same kind of account [to you], as parents do to their children, etc. [when they have chastised them].' In other words, 'I claim to stand in the position of a parent or a master to you.'

l. 308. ὕβρει, 'through wantonness,' 'wantonly,' 'through an overbearing spirit.' Cp. l. 260 n.

l. 310. ὅμως. Cp. l. 260, second note.

l. 311. ἐν εὐδίᾳ, 'in calm weather,' i. e. 'in prosperity.' All that follows down to l. 315 is a metaphor from a ship at sea.

l. 314. καί, 'even.' Cp. l. 297 n.

ἐμ-ποιήσει, 'will involve,' lit. 'will cause in the matter.'

l. 315. ἀπ-ηχθόμεν, 2 aor. of ἀπ-εχθάνομαι. Distinguish it from ἀπ-ήχ-θην, 1st aor. pass. of ἀπ-άγ-ω.

l. 317. ἀλλὰ μὴν, 'but surely.' Cp. l. 259 n.

l. 320. περι-εγένετο, 'turned out in the end,' 'came round,' as we say.

l. 321. ἕως means 'while' or 'as long as,' with a pres. or imperf. as here; with an aorist 'until:' that is to say, with the continuous tenses it has the continuous sense of 'while,' with the momentary tense the momentary sense of 'until.'

l. 325. ὥστε, 'on condition that,' Lat. *ea conditione ut*.

l. 329. θύσαντες .. ἐδείπνουν. The sacrifices were momentary, the feasts lasted some time.

l. 330. ἐγένοντο, 'had been made;' ἐπαίνισαν, 'had sung the paean.' The Paean (1) a song of victory, as when Apollo killed the dragon

Python; (2) a battle song; (3) as here, 'a festal hymn' to the gods. The aorist in a minor sentence must often be rendered by the pluperf. Cp. I. 254, II. 118 n.

1. 331. ὠρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, i. e. the dancers imitated military movements by attitudes and gestures. These warlike dances were very fashionable among the Greeks and Romans; they resembled the modern *ballet* in many respects.

1. 334. τεχνικῶς πως, 'in a sort of artistic manner,' lit. 'somehow artistically.' [Distinguish πως, 'somehow,' from πῶς, 'how?']

1. 336. τὸν Σίταλκαν, 'the Sitalcas-song,' originally a song in honour of Sitalcas, a Thracian king.

1. 340. Καρπαΐαν, perhaps the 'wrist-dance,' from καρπός, 'a wrist,' because the hands of the vanquished man were tied behind him (l. 347). [Others say the 'harvest dance' from καρπός, 'fruit,' but (1) the farmer was sowing and not reaping, and (2) the brigand tried to get the oxen and not the corn.]

1. 342. σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ, i. e. imitates the motions of one sowing and driving oxen. The whole performance was in *pantomime*. [Ζευγηλατ-έω is compounded of ζεύγος, 'a yoke (of oxen),' and ἐλατ(ήρ), 'a driver,' from ἐλατός, ἐλαύνω, 'I drive.']

1. 345. τέλος, 'at last,' lit. 'as regards the end,' accus. of respect, used adverbially.

1. 347. τῷ χεῖρε, instead of τὰ χεῖρε. In Attic (or Athenian) Greek the feminine forms of the dual in -α and -αιν were seldom used. Thus we find τῷ γυναικε, τῷ πόλεε, etc.

1. 350. τοτὲ μὲν, 'at one time,' . . . τοτὲ δέ, 'at another time.'

ὥς, 'as if,' Lat. *tanquam*.

1. 352. ἐξ-εκυβίστα, imperf. 3rd sing. of ἐκ-κυβιστάω. The κυβιστῆρες, or 'tumblers,' are mentioned both in the Iliad and the Odyssey. Xenophon elsewhere describes the feats of one of them, who turned somersaults over a circle of upright swords.

1. 353. τέλος. Cp. l. 345 n.

τὸ Περσικόν, sc. ὄρχημα, 'the Persian dance.'

1. 354. ὤκλαζε, 'kept crouching down.' From the verb ὀκλάζειν this Persian dance was sometimes called ὀκλασμα. [Hence also the adverb ὀκλᾶξ, 'in a crouching posture,' formed like λᾶξ, ὀδᾶξ, etc.] Cp. l. 304 n.

1. 361. ὥς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα. This is the full form of the expression, which commonly appears as ὥς κάλλιστα, etc. Cp. V. 185 n.

1. 362. τὴν Πυρρίχην. This was one of the great military dances. It had its origin in Crete and Sparta, and its step was very quick and light; hence in prosody a foot consisting of two short syllables (υυ) was called the *Pyrrhic* foot. The Pyrrhic dance continued till quite a late

period and was adopted by the Romans. The dance is still kept up and called the *Romaika*; so Byron says—

‘You have the *Pyrrhic* dance as yet,
Where is the *Pyrrhic* phalanx gone?’

1. 366. μήτε ἀδικεῖν, etc. These were the terms which Corylas had proposed on behalf of the Paphlagonians, and which the Greeks now accepted. Cp. l. 325.

μετὰ τοῦτο. Μετὰ with acc. means ‘after;’ cp. I. 128.

1. 367. ἐπειδή, ‘now that.’ The δὲ defines ἐπεὶ more precisely as to the *time*.

1. 369. ἀνα-βάντες, ‘having embarked,’ εἰς τὰ πλοῖα being understood.

1. 370. Σινώπην. The Sinopians were colonists from Miletus (on the West coast of Asia Minor), who had settled in Paphlagonia.

CHAPTER VII.

SINOPE TO CHRYSOPOLIS.

1. 4. γίνεσθαι, imperf. infin., ‘that they *were getting* near Greece.’

1. 5. ἐλέσθαι, 2nd aor. mid. of αἰρέω. Αἰρεῖσθαι in the middle means, ‘to choose.’ The passive, ‘I am taken,’ is expressed by ἀλίσκομαι.

1. 6. ἔπειθον, imperf., ‘*tried* to persuade.’

1. 8. μείζω, with γενέσθαι (making the *predicate*), ‘would become greater,’ or ‘increase.’

1. 10. καί. Cp. I. 21 n. Think what καὶ must mean here.

τὴν προ-εργασμένην δόξαν, ‘the reputation he had already achieved, lit. ‘worked out beforehand (by him).’

1. 13. See the account of Xenophon’s dream and the way he interpreted it in IV. 43 and following lines.

1. 15. ἡρέθη, ‘was chosen.’ Cp. l. 5 n.

1. 16. συμ-μαχοῦμενος, the fut. part., ‘*intending* to join Cyrus.’

1. 19. μέντοι, ‘but,’ or ‘however,’ corresponding to the μὲν in the previous line [μὲν .. δὲ is sometimes μὲν .. μέντοι].

ἔφη, understand ὁ μάντις.

1. 20. ἐπι-τίθεσθαι, ‘attack.’ Ἐπι-τίθεμαι (middle) is lit. ‘I set upon,’ ‘attack.’

1. 21. The stress is on πετόμενον, ‘gets its food *when flying*.’

1. 25. εἶλοντο. Cp. l. 5 n.

1. 26. ἀλλά, 'well.' Lit. ['I don't refuse it] but for all that.' Cp. VI. 270 n.

ἴστε. The sense decides whether it is the imperative, 'I wish you to know this,' or the indicative, 'ye know this.'

1. 27. καὶ ἐγὼ leads up to καὶ ὑμεῖς.

1. 28. ὅ τι ἄν, 'whatever.' Ἄν adds the force of 'ever.' When combined with conjunctions or relative pronouns it is always followed by the subjunctive.

1. 29. For ὥς with fut. part. cp. II. 70 n.

1. 30. τῶν ἄλλων, neuter, 'what remains (to be done),' 'all other points.' Cp. 1. 35.

1. 34. οἷς, the contracted acc. pl. of οἷς, gen. οἶδς, acc. οἶν, Lat. *ovis*. The acc. pl. of nouns of the 3rd declension, whose stem ends in a vowel, often becomes, when contracted, the same as the nom. sing., as βοὺς, ναῦς, ἥρως for βό-ας, νῆ-ας, ἥρω-ας.

1. 37. πορευτέον εἶη, 'they ought to travel.' For verbals in -τέος cp. VI. 88 n. The optative is the past of the deliberative present subj. πῶς πορευτέον ᾗ;

1. 40. σιτία τριῶν ἡμερῶν, 'provision for three days,' or, as we say, 'three days' provision.'

1. 42. κυζικηνούς. The κυζικηνός, sc. στατήρ, was a gold coin of Cyzicus, worth about 20 francs, or a Napoleon, 15s. or 16s.

ll. 46, 47. Notice the force of the tenses here: συν-ῆγον, imperf., 'began to collect.'

ἐκέκλειντο, pluperf. '[had already been shut],' 'were kept shut.'

ἐφαίνετο, imperf., 'began to appear.'

1. 47. ὅπλα, for ὅπλῃται, 'armed men.' [So πελταὶ, 'targets,' is sometimes used for πελτασταὶ, 'targeteers.']

1. 49. ἐκ τούτου, 'after this.' Cp. I. 85 n.

1. 50. ὥς αἰσχροὺς εἶη. The opt. marks that this was what the Arcadians and Achaeans said, whether it were true or not. Cp. VI. 181 n.

1. 51. ᾗν δέ, etc. The subject of ᾗν is ὑπερ-ῆμισυ, the complement Ἄρκαδες καὶ Ἀχαιοί. 'More than half the army consisted of Arcadians and Achaeans.'

1. 53. ὥς δέοι. For the opt. cp. 1. 50 n, above.

καθ' ἑαυτοῦς, 'by themselves,' Lat. *seorsum*, lit. 'as regards themselves.'

1. 55. συν-ἕστησαν, the 2nd aor. of συν-ίστημι, because it is intransitive, 'stood together,' i.e. 'combined.' [In ἵστημι the 2nd aor., perf., and pluperf. are intransitive, the other tenses are transitive.] Cp. II. 99 n.

εἶλοντο. Cp. 1. 5 n.

1. 62. ἵππικόν, sc. στράτευμα, 'a cavalry force.'

1. 63. ἀπο-βαίνουσιν, 'disembark,' τῶν πλοίων understood.

1. 64. τῆς ἐν Ἀσίᾳ Θράκης, a portion of Bithynia inhabited by Thracians, and called 'Asiatic Thrace' to distinguish it from Thrace in Europe, or Thrace *proper*. [So we speak of Turkey in Europe and Turkey in Asia, Russia in Europe and Russia in Asia.]

1. 68. ἐπι-τίθενται, 'attack.' Cp. l. 20 n.

1. 69. Distinguish αὐτὸν τὸν Σμίκρητα, 'Smicres *himself*,' from τὸν αὐτὸν Σμίκρητα, 'the *same* Smicres.' [Sometimes the article is omitted in the former case, as αὐτὸς Ἡγήσανδρος, l. 72 below.]

1. 73. τῆς νυκτός, 'during *the* night,' to be distinguished from νυκτὸς, 'by night.' Cp. IV. 255 n.

The stress is on πολλοί, 'assembled *in great numbers*.' Οἱ πολλοὶ Θράκες would be, 'the numerous Thracians,' or 'most of the Thracians.'

ll. 74, 75. ἐτάττοντο .. ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο .. προς-έβαλλον. Observe the force of the imperfects. '[When the day dawned], *there they were drawing* themselves up, etc., .. where the Greeks *were being* encamped, and they *began* to attack,' etc.

1. 76. τέλος, 'at last.' Cp. VI. 345 n.

1. 77. εἴργον, imperf. of εἴργω, 'I restrain,' 'keep off;' Lat. *arceo*. Distinguish εἴργ-ω from ἐργ-άζομαι, 'I work,' which has perf. pass. εἴργασμαι. [There is no such verb as ἔργω or ἔργομαι from ἔργον, 'work.']

καί. Think what is the sense of καί here. Cp. I. 21 n.

1. 80. οὕτως ἐπραξαν, not 'did' but '*fared* thus.' Πράττειν with an adverb means 'to fare.' [So we say, 'he is *doing* well,' 'how do you *do*?' etc.]

1. 82. παρὰ θάλατταν, 'along the coast;' lit. 'alongside of the sea.' Παρὰ with the acc. signifies *motion along* a given line, as well as *motion to get alongside* of a thing.

1. 83. τῆς Θράκης, i. e. Asiatic Thrace. Cp. l. 64 n.

1. 84. Ἡρακλεώτιδος, 'the *district* of Heraclea,' γῆς or χώρας understood. [So ἡ Μεγάρις, 'the *Megarid*,' or 'district about Megara,' etc.]

1. 85. Distinguish ποι, 'to some place' ('some-*whither*'), from που, in next line, 'in any place' ('any-*where*'). Ποι is properly a simple locative, like οἶκοι, but as που was used for 'where,' ποι was kept for 'whither.'

ἠρώτα, imperf., 'proceeded to ask them.'

1. 88. περὶ-κεκυκλώμενοι εἶεν, the perf. pass. in a *middle* sense,—'had got round them in a circle,' i. e. 'had surrounded them.' [So in Latin, '*circumfunduntur* hostem Romani,' 'the Romans surround the enemy.']

1. 90. σκοπεῖν, 'to reconnoitre.' The infin. in Greek, as in English, may express a result very nearly resembling a *purpose*. In Latin it would be *ut observaret* or *ad observandum*.

l. 92. ὅσα ὀρῶεν, 'whatever' [lit. 'as many things as'] 'they might see.' The opt. marks indefiniteness, i. e. 'at *any* time, in *any* place, in *any* way.' We might however use the indicative, 'whatever they saw.'

l. 93. ἐποίουν, imperf., 'proceeded to do.' Cp. l. 85 n.

l. 94. αἶθεσθαι, 'to be on fire' with watchfires. Distinguish from αἰσθέσθαι, to 'perceive.'

l. 95. ὥς εἰς μάχην, 'in preparation for fighting;' lit. 'as if for battle.'

l. 101. τῆς ἑσπέρας, 'in the evening,' gen. of time. Cp. l. 73 n.

l. 102. ᾔδει, pluperf. 3rd sing. of οἶδα, 'I know.'

l. 104. συμ-μίξαι, here 'to join.' Note the two seemingly opposite meanings of συμ-μίγνυμι, (1) 'I join' in a friendly way, as here; (2) 'I join battle with an enemy.'

l. 106. ἄσμενοι, lit. 'glad,' i. e. 'gladly,' or 'were glad to see;' ἄσμενοι being the real predicate.

l. 109. ἐν μέσῳ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, 'midway between Heraclea and Byzantium.' (See the Map.) Literally, in the middle *as regards* Heraclea and Byzantium' (gen. of respect).

l. 110. προκείμενον, 'jutting out,' lit. 'lying forward.'

l. 111. τὸ μὲν αὐτοῦ, with καθ-ἦκον, 'that portion of it which reaches down into the sea.'

l. 112. ἀπορρώξ, 'precipitous,' lit. 'broken off;' cp. ἀπ-έρρωγα, 2nd perf. of ἀπο-ρρήγνυμι, 'I break off.' Ἀν-ήκων, 'reaching upwards,' as opposed to καθ-ἦκον, 'reaching downwards.'

l. 113. μάλιστα, 'at most.'

τὸ εὖρος, '[in] breadth,' accus. of respect.

l. 115. οἰκῆσαι, the infin., as in English, 'to dwell in.' In Latin it would be *ad habitandum*, or *ubi habitarent*. Cp. l. 90 n.

Distinguish αὐτῇ τῇ πέτρᾳ, 'the rock *itself*,' from τῇ αὐτῇ πέτρᾳ, 'the same rock.' Cp. l. 69 n.

l. 116. πρὸς ἑσπέραν, '[looking] towards the west.'

ἡδέος, 'fresh,' lit. 'sweet,' as opposed to 'salt,' or 'brackish.' So 'aquae dulces' in Virgil, Aen. i. 167.

l. 117. ἐπικρατείᾳ, 'under cover of the fort,' i. e. 'commanded by it.' (ἐπὶ and κράτος, 'power.')

l. 119. ἀν-ήκει. Cp. l. 112 n.

l. 120. ἐπὶ, 'up to,' i. e. 'as much as.'

γεῶδες, 'earthy,' lit. 'earth-like,' contr. from γε-ο-εἶδης, from γῆ, 'earth,' and εἶδος, 'appearance.'

l. 121. παρ-ήκει, 'extends along.'

l. 122. ἡ ἄλλη χώρα, not 'the other district,' but 'the *rest* of the district.' [So in Latin *summus mons*, 'the top of a mountain,' *medius*

amnis, 'the middle of a river,' etc.] Distinguish χώρα, 'a district,' from χωρίον (its diminutive), 'a place,' or military 'position.'

1. 130. μνησθείη, 'should propose;' lit. 'make *mention* of.' So the Latin *memorare* commonly means not 'to remember,' but 'to tell' or 'relate.'

δίχα ποιεῖν, lit. 'to make twofold,' and hence 'to divide,' without reference to any particular number of parts. The army had actually split into *three* divisions (τρίχῃ). Cp. l. 57.

1. 133. ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ, 'with a *view* to marching,' i.e. to see whether they were to march or not.

1. 134. ἐκ τούτου, 'in consequence of this.' Cp. l. 49 n.

1. 135. ἤχθοντο. Distinguish ἤχθ-όμην, imperf. of ἄχθομαι, 'to be grieved,' or 'be in trouble,' from ἤχ-θην, 1st aor. pass. of ἄγω. It might also be the 2nd aor. of ἐχθάνομαι, but that verb is generally used in its compound ἀπ-εχθάνομαι. Cp. VI. 315 n.

καὶ γάρ, 'for in fact:' if 'for both' was meant, we should probably have τὰ τε γάρ.

1. 140. εἰς τρίς, 'up to thrice,' i.e. 'as many as three times.' [Eἰς implies going right *into* anything, hence with numerals it means 'fully,' as εἰς χιλίους, 'fully a thousand men.']

1. 141. ἐγίγνετο, sc. καλὰ. The phrase γίγνεσθαι τὰ ἱερὰ was often used with the καλὰ, or 'favourable,' understood.

οὐκ ἔφη ἂν ἐξαγαγεῖν, 'said that he would not lead out,' lit. 'denied that he would,' etc. The ἂν goes with ἐξ-αγαγεῖν, and the οὐκ-ἔφη is to be taken together as one word. Cp. IV. 283 n.

1. 145. οὐδὲ οὕτω, 'not even so,' i.e. 'not even *then*,' after they had tried so many times.

1. 147. δεινῶς ἔχοντας, 'in a dreadful *state*.' Ἐχειν with an adverb means, 'to be in a certain condition.' Cp. IV. 2 n.

τῇ ἐνδείᾳ, the instrumental dative, 'through their want.'

1. 150. Take πάντας τοὺς βουλομένους as the subject of ἰέναι after ἐκήρυξε, 'he proclaimed *that* all who wished *should* go.'

1. 153. ἐπὶ τὸ λαμβάνειν, 'in order to get (provisions),' lit. 'for the getting;' Lat. *ad rapiendum* or *rapiendi causa*. The article with the infin. shows that the verb is used as a gerund or a substantive. Cp. I. 24 n.

Pharnabazus was the Persian satrap of Bithynia.

1. 155. ἐκ τούτου. Cp. ll. 49, 134 n.

1. 161. τοὺς μὲν . . τοὺς δέ, 'some . . the others.' The μὲν, 'on the *one* hand' prepares the reader for a δέ, 'on the *other* hand.'

1. 162. εἰς τὰ ὄπλα, to the place where their arms were piled in camp. Hence τὰ ὄπλα came to mean generally 'the camp,' or 'quarters.' Cp. ll. 167, 172 n.

1. 163. νυκτός, 'by night,' gen. of time. [So 'of' was formerly used, as Hamlet says (Act i. Scene 5):—

'My custom always of the afternoon.'

Cp. IV. 255 n.

1. 166. ἐρυμνόν, the 'strong' or 'fortified position,' whose natural defences were described in ll. 110–114. This the Greeks were about to strengthen artificially by making a trench and palisade across the 'neck' of land (l. 112).

1. 167. ἀνα-λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα, 'having taken up their arms,' or, in other words, 'moving their camp.' Cp. l. 162 n.

1. 168. πρὶν . . εἶναι, 'before it was.'

ἄριστον, 'breakfast,' to be distinguished from ἀρίστου, gen. of ἄριστος, 'best.' Cp. III. 15 n.

ἀπ-ετάφρευσαν . . ἀπ-εσταύρωσαν. The ἀπὸ implies the cutting off of the promontory from the mainland by means of the trench and palisade.

1. 172. ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, 'piled their arms,' so as to form a camp in their newly-fortified position. Cp. l. 162 n.

1. 174. αὐτοῦ, 'there,' 'where they were,' gen. of place used as an adverb.

1. 183. ἔστησαν. Think whether this is the transitive 1st aor. or intransitive 2nd aor. of ἵστημι. Cp. II. 99 n.

1. 185. δια-βατέον, 'must be crossed.' Δια-βατὸν would mean 'possible to cross.' Either would make sense here, but what the soldiers were just now doubting was the *necessity* of crossing the ravine.

1. 186. παρ-εγγυῶσι, 'pass the word to.' Παρ-εγγυᾶν (lit. 'to pass on as a trust') is to pass along the word of command. Ἐγγύη is 'a pledge' (put ἐν γυίῳ, 'in the hand').

1. 188. ὥς τάχιστα. Cp. V. 185 n.

1. 189. συν-ῆλθον, 'had assembled.' The aor. in a minor sentence must often be rendered by the pluperf. Cp. II. 118 n.

ἴστε, 'know,' the imperative, as it generally is when used alone like this; in form it might also be the 2nd pl. indicative; the sense decides. Cp. l. 26 n.

1. 190. ἀμαχεὶ μὲν, etc. The μὲν is answered by δὲ in l. 196, 'without fighting we cannot get away. . . but still let us attack the foe.' (ἰώμεν δὲ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.)

1. 194. ἐμ-ποιεῖ θάρρος καί, etc., 'puts courage even into,' etc. For senses of καί cp. I. 21 n.

1. 196. ὧν, instead of ἃ δια-πεπορεύμεθα. In Greek the relative is often made to agree with its antecedent in *case*, as well as in gender, number, and person. But this is only done when the relative would otherwise have been in the *accusative*. Cp. I. 290 n.

l. 199. ὅπου ἄν, 'wherever.' Cp. l. 28 n.

l. 200. παρ-αγγείλας. Notice the force of παρὰ, 'having passed word along the line.'

l. 201. Distinguish ἧ, 'where' (Lat. *qua*), from ἡ, the fem. article; ἡ, nom. fem. of ὅς; ἡ, 'or'; ἡ, 3rd sing. subj. of εἰμί; and ἦ, 'surely.'

ἐτύγχανεν ὦν. Cp. IV. 5 n.

l. 202. δι-έβησαν. Remember this is the 2nd aor.

ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, 'in line,' as opposed to ἐπὶ κέρως, 'in column.' Φάλαγξ means 'a rank,' or 'line' of heavy armed men, not necessarily a compact mass, which applies only to the later *Macedonian* phalanx or line of battle. [The word φάλαγξ is probably connected with 'pale,' 'pole,' etc.]

l. 204. παρ-ηγγέλλετο, passive impersonal, 'the word was being passed along.' Cp. l. 200.

l. 205. ἕως σημαίνει, supply ὁ σαλπικτῆς, 'until the trumpeter gave a signal.' ἕως, 'until,' is generally followed by an aorist, but σημαίνει is a regular expression for 'the trumpet sounds.' For the opt. cp. l. 92 n.

l. 206. καθ-ιέντας εἰς προβολήν, 'couching (their lances) for the charge,' lit. 'setting them down [off the shoulders] for a pushing forward.' Cp. our command, 'charge bayonets,' as opposed to 'slope arms' on the shoulder.

δρόμῳ, 'fast,' our 'at the double,' lit. 'at a run.' See note on θεῖν δρόμῳ II. 54.

l. 207. παρ-ῆει, 'went,' or 'was passed along the ranks.' Cp. l. 204 n.

ll. 212-215. Observe the change of tenses in this passage. Ὑπ-ηντίαζε (imperf.), 'began to confront them;' ἐφθέγγατο (aor. after ἐπεὶ in a minor sentence, II. 118 n.), 'had sounded;' ἐπαιάνιζον (imperf.), 'began the war-cry;' καθ-ίσαν (imperf.), 'were couching;' ἐδέξαντο (aor. in principal sentence), 'sustained;' ἔφευγον (imperf.), 'began to flee.'

l. 217. ἐφ-εἶπετο, imperf. of ἐφ-έπομαι, 'I follow after.' [Distinguish εἰπόμην, imperf. of ἔπομαι, from εἶπον, 'I said,' 2nd aor. of φημί. Cp. II. 158 n.]

l. 220. ἤδη, 'at once.'

l. 221. ἐπ-έκειντο, 'attacked.' Κεῖμαι, 'I lie,' with its compounds, is used for the passive or middle of τίθημι and its compounds; but ἐπι-τίθεσθαι also means, 'to attack.' Cp. l. 20 n.

l. 223. ἀπ-έθανον, 'were killed.' Ἀπο-θνήσκω is often used for the passive of ἀπο-κτείνω, 'I kill.'

l. 225. τὸ Φαρναβάζου ἱππικόν, sc. στράτευμα, the same as οἱ Φαρναβάζου ἱππεῖς l. 153.

l. 226. ἔτι συν-εστηκός, 'still unbroken.'

l. 228. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτους, 'against these also.' Cp. I. 21.

1. 228. ὥς μὴ τεθαρρηκότες ἀνα-παύσαιντο, 'that they might not take courage and recover themselves.' Θαρρέω is to 'rally,' 'feel confidence;' ἀναπαύομαι, to 'rest,' or 'recover one's strength.'

1. 229. δῆ, 'so then,' 'accordingly.'

1. 230. κατὰ (with gen.), 'down from.'

1. 235. ἕως .. κατα-μένοι, 'as long as the army remained,' or 'might remain.' The optative marks that the length of their stay was uncertain and variable.

1. 237. ἐπὶ λείαν, 'for plunder,' i. e. to get it. Ἐπὶ with accus. marks the *object* of their going. Cp. IV. 209 n.

1. 238. ὁπότε, with opt., 'whenever,' or 'as often as,' followed by the past tense ἔδοξεν, 'it was resolved.' [The actual words of the resolution would be ὁπότεν τὸ στράτευμα ἐξ-ίη, εἴαν τις λάβῃ τι, δοκεῖ εἶναι δημόσιον, 'whenever the army goes out, if anyone takes anything, it is resolved that this shall be public property.' Cp. l. 287.]

1. 240. ἐτύγχανεν ὄν. Cp. IV. 5 n.

1. 245. τὰ μέν, 'some,' or 'a part;' τὰ δέ, 'the others,' or 'the remainder.' Cp. l. 161 n.

1. 247. περι-εστῶτας, 2nd perf. = περι-εστηκότας, the perf. part. of περι-ίστημι. Ἔστηκα is used as a pres. and means, 'I stand.' [For the transitive and intransitive tenses of ἵστημι cp. II. 99 n.]

1. 248. ταῦτα, sc. τὰ πρόβατα, l. 245.

1. 251. ἀφ-αιρείται, 'rescues,' the middle voice. The passive of αἰρέω is supplied by ἀλίσκομαι, 'I am taken.'

1. 254. Distinguish αὐτὸς ὁ Κλέανδρος, 'Cleander himself, from ὁ αὐτὸς Κλέανδρος, 'the same Cleander.' Cp. l. 69 n.

1. 259. οὐκ ἔφη ἂν γενέσθαι, 'said that it could not be.' Οὐ-φημὶ is as one word, 'I say [a thing] is not,' and the ἂν goes with γενέσθαι. Cp. l. 141 n.

1. 260. τὸν ἀφ-ελόμενον, 'the rescuer of the prisoner,' acc. after ἐκδοῖεν. This was Agasias, l. 251.

1. 265. ποιῆσαι, 'to do to me,' i. e. 'that he may do.' The Greeks, like ourselves, could express even a purpose by the infinitive mood. In Latin it would be 'ut faciat.' Cp. l. 90 n.

ὅ τι ἂν, 'whatever.' Cp. l. 28 n.

1. 269. οἶδα ὄντα, 'I know that he is.' The Greeks used the participle after verbs of knowing, feeling, etc., where the Latin would require the accus. and infin., scio hunc esse. Οἶδα εἶναι means, 'I know how to be.' Cp. II. 108 n.

1. 271. αἰρεθείς, 'having been chosen.' The middle αἰρεῖσθαι means, 'to choose,' and the perf. and 1st aor. ἤρηναι and ἤρέθην, commonly have the same meaning in the passive, since ἀλίσκομαι is used for 'I am taken.' Cp. IV. 64 n.

πεντηκοντόρου, etc. While the Greeks were at Trapezus, waiting for the return of Cheirisophus (VI. 10), the Trapezuntines lent them a fifty-oared galley to collect transports with. Dexippus being put in command of the vessel made off with it, and thus placed the Greeks in an awkward position with the Trapezuntines.

ἦς for ἦν, the relative being *attracted* into the case of its antecedent. Cp. l. 196, I. 290 n.

l. 273. τούτου, 'from him,' governed by the ἀπὸ in ἀφ-ειλόμην, in the next line.

l. 274. ἀπ-ῆγες, imperf., 'if you *had been taking* him off.' Εἰ ἀπήγαγες (2nd aor.) would mean, 'if you *had taken* him off.'

l. 275. οὐκ .. οὐδέν. In Greek two or more negatives make the negation stronger. Here οὐκ ἂν ἐποίησα οὐδέν is, 'I would *not* have done *anything*.' Cp. II. 59 n.

l. 277. διὰ, with accus., 'for the sake of.' With the gen. it is 'by means of,' as διὰ σοῦ, 'by your means.'

ll. 278, 279. μὲν .. μέντοι = μὲν .. δέ, only the δέ is replaced by the stronger word μέντοι, 'however.'

l. 281. κελεύσω, the 1st aor. subj. not the fut. Compounds of ἂν (as ἐὰν, ὅταν, etc.) always take the subj., 'whenever I give the order.'

l. 282. Distinguish αἰτιῶμαι (contr. from αἰτιάομαι), 'I blame,' from αἰτέω, 'I ask.'

l. 283. αὐτός, the nom. in apposition to οὗτος, the subject of ὁμολογεῖ. In Latin it would be the accus. before the infin., 'confitetur se eripuisse.' Cp. IV. 286 n.

l. 285. ἔπαιον .. ἔβαλλον, imperfects, 'I *offered* to strike,' etc.

l. 286. εἴη, 'were,' not 'would be.' The opt. is used in Greek after ὅτι, when the principal verb is in the past tense, but we use the past *indicative* after 'saying that.'

l. 287. ἐὰν .. ληΐζηται, etc., the actual words of the resolution. Cp. l. 238 n. The present tense means, 'engages in plundering.'

l. 289. ἦγεν, imperf., 'was bringing.'

l. 290. τοῖς λησταῖς, i. e. the soldiers who wished to keep the booty for themselves, and got Dexippus to help them. See l. 245.

παρά, 'contrary to,' lit. 'beside the mark of.' Cp. III. 75 n.

l. 292. Think before translating καί here, and cp. I. 21 n.

l. 293. μετὰ ταῦτα. Cp. I. 128 n.

l. 300. ἀλλά, 'well.' Cp. VI. 258, 270 n.

l. 301. παρ-έσομαι ὑμῖν, 'will be *present* to you,' i. e. 'will help you;' Lat. 'vobis *adereo*.' [Cp. 'a *present* help in trouble,' Psalm xlv. 1.]

l. 303. ἐκ τούτου. Cp. I. 85 n.

ἐπὶ τῇ πορείᾳ, 'with a *view* to the march,' i. e. to see whether they were to march. Cp. l. 133 n.

1. 305. καί emphasises μᾶλλον, 'even more (than before).'
1. 308. οὐ γίγνεται, understand καλά. Cp. I. 141 n.
1. 310. ὥς ἂν δύνωμεθα κάλλιστα, lit. 'as we may be able in the best manner,' i.e. 'as well as ever we can.' The ἂν adds the meaning of 'ever' to the ὥς. Cp. I. 28 n.
1. 312. ἐξ-επορεύοντο, imperf., 'proceeded in their march;' ἀφ-ίκοντο, 2nd aor., 'arrived.'

CHAPTER VIII.

CONCLUDING SCENES OF THE RETREAT.

1. 3. ἔτυχεν ὧν, 'was at the time.' Cp. IV. 5 n.
1. 10. ὥς ἀπο-πέμψων, 'intending to send away.' Ὡς with fut. part. denotes a purpose. Cp. II. 70 n.
1. 11. ἤχθοντο. Cp. VII. 135 n.
1. 12. ἐπι-σιτίζεσθαι. The infinitive expresses the purpose for which they wanted money. Lat. 'quo commeatum facerent.'
1. 13. ὅτι μέλλοι, 'that he intended,' not 'would intend.' Cp. VII. 286 n.
1. 14. ἤδη, 'at once.' Cp. VII. 220 n.
1. 15. ὥς here means 'as if;' ὥς συμ-πορευσόμενος, 'under pretence of going with.'
1. 16. ἐπειδάν (=ἐπειδὴ ἂν), 'as soon as ever.' Ἐπειδὴ is stronger than ἐπεὶ, and the ἂν adds the force of 'ever.' Cp. VII. 28 n.
- γένηται does not simply=ἦ, 'shall be,' but 'shall have been got outside.' Cp. IV. 125 n.
1. 20. ὥς τάχιστα. Cp. V. 185 n.
1. 29. θέουσι δρόμῳ, 'run fast,' lit. 'at a run.' Cp. II. 54 n.
- εἰς-ιόντες is the fut. part. (since εἶμι = ibo), therefore with ὥς it marks a purpose. Cp. I. 10 n.
1. 30. Eteonīcus had been posted at the gate, with orders to secure the bolt as soon as all the soldiers had gone out.
1. 31. αὐτοί, nom. in apposition with the subject of ἔλεγον. Cp. VII. 283 n. Οἱ στρατιῶται, i.e. the soldiers *outside*.
1. 32. ἂν-οίξουσιν, the fut. ind. instead of the opt. in a reported speech. The soldiers would say, 'We *will* smash the gates, unless you *will* open them' (ἀνοίξετε), and the Greek historian in repeating their words

keeps the *tense* and *mood*, only changing the *person* from second to third.

l. 35. ἐτύγχανον ὄντες. Cp. IV. 5 n. There had not been time to get the whole army out of the town, before those outside began the disturbance.

l. 36. ἀνα-πεταννύουσι, 3rd pl. pres. ind. of ἀνα-πετάννυμι. Verbs in -νυμι often form this person as if from a verb in -ύω, instead of making it end in -ύασι.

l. 38. τὰ γιγνόμενα, imperf. part., 'what was being done.' [Τὰ γενόμενα, 2nd aor., would mean 'what *was* done.']

l. 42. οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον. Οἱ δὲ means, 'those who fled to the ships.'

l. 45. τὴν ἀκραν, the same as τὴν ἀκρόπολιν in the next line,—the 'citadel' or 'castle.'

l. 51. ἀνδρι ἀγαθῷ, the dat. in apposition to σοι, which is governed by ἔξ-εστιν. [So in Latin 'Themistocli licuit esse otioso.']

l. 52. εἰ βούλοιο . . ἂν ὀνήσαιο. The opt. means, 'if you *were* to desire it, you *would* benefit.' Cp. IV. 113 n. for the four forms of conditional sentences, of which this is the *third*.

l. 54. ἀλλά, 'well.' Cp. VI. 270, VII. 300 n.

l. 55. θέσθε τὰ ὅπλα, lit. 'ground your shields,' i. e. 'fall in,' or 'stand ready under arms,' not 'lay down your arms.' Cp. I. 241 n. Xenophon knew that his only chance of restoring order was to get them to fall in to their proper position in rank.

l. 56. ὥς τάχιστα. Cp. V. 185 n.

l. 57. παρ-αγγέλλειν, 'to pass the word *along* the line (παρά).' Cp. l. 204 n.

l. 59. ἔκειτο, used as the passive of τίθημι (VII. 221 n.), therefore τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο means, 'the arms were grounded,' i. e. the soldiers stood ready. Cp. l. 55 n.

l. 62. τῷ θυμῷ, not 'mind,' but 'your passion.' Θυμὸς (from θύω, 'I rush'), means the part which *feels*, and gets excited, i. e. the passions and emotions (Lat. *animus*), νοῦς being the part which *thinks*, i. e. the intellect (Lat. *mens*).

τιμωρησώμεθα, 'punish,' lit. 'avenge ourselves upon.' Cp. I. 151 n.

l. 64. ἃ ἔσται ἐντεῦθεν, lit. 'what will be thence,' i. e. 'what will be the consequences.' Ἐντεῦθεν = ἐκ τούτων.

l. 71. ἀφ-αιρησόμενοι, fut. part., 'intending to take away;' Lat. *adempturi*. So ἀπο-κτενοῦντες, 'intending to kill;' Lat. *occisuri*.

l. 72. πρὸς θεῶν, lit. 'before,' or 'in presence of the gods;' hence in taking an oath, 'by the gods:' Lat. *per deos* (*vos oro*).

l. 73. ταῖς πατρίσι, 'to our (respective) fatherlands,' i. e. the several states in Greece to which we each belong.

l. 77. The stress is on Ἑλληνίδα and πρώτην, 'the *first* Greek city we

entered,' lit. 'a *Greek* city into which (as the) *first* we came,' *πρώτην* being in apposition with *ἤν*. [Cotyora is called 'a Greek town' (VI. 117), so also were Trapezus and Heraclea; but being in Asia and under the king of Persia, they are here ranked as 'barbarian' as compared with Byzantium.]

1. 79. *ποιήσοντες*, 'with the *intention* of doing.' Cp. l. 71 n.

1. 81. *οὐκ ἔξ-απατώμενοι*, etc.= 'not *because* we are deceived, but *because* we consent.' A Greek participle must often be translated by a conjunction and the indicative of the verb. Cp. I. 261 n.

1. 85. *πειθομένοις*, 'if they obeyed,' lit. 'obeying.' See preceding note, and reference to I. 261.

1. 86. *ἐκ τούτου*. Cp. I. 85 n.

1. 88. *δια-πράξασθαι ὅπως*, etc., lit. 'to manage matters (with Anaxibius) so that,' etc., i. e. 'to arrange that,' to get leave from Anaxibius. *Διὰ* gives the force of 'effecting thoroughly.'

1. 91. *ἤκω*, 'I *am* come,' or 'have come,' = the *perf.* of *ἔρχομαι*, 'I come,' or 'am coming.'

1. 97. *δι-εφέροντο*, 'were disputing,' lit. 'were going *different* ways' (*διά*). So we say 'to have a *difference*,' i. e. 'a quarrel.'

1. 99. *ἀπο-διδόμενοι*. Distinguish *ἀπο-δίδωμι* (act.), 'I give back,' from *ἀπο-δίδομαι* (mid.), 'I sell.'

1. 100. *οἱ δέ*, 'and others,' besides those who sailed away.

κατὰ τὰς πόλεις, 'in the *different* towns.' *Κατὰ* is here *distributive*. Cp. IV. 231 n.

1. 101. *γίγνομένων*, imperf. part., 'if this went on.' Cp. l. 38 n.; i. e. by getting this done he would please Pharnabazus.

1. 102. *χαρίζεσθαι* *Φαρναβάζω*, because Pharnabazus, the satrap of Bithynia (VII. 153 n.) was afraid of having the Greek army so near his province. See ll. 1, 2 of this Chapter.

1. 104. *ἄρμοστής*, 'as governor,' in apposition to *διάδοχος*.

1. 105. *ἀπο-δόσθαι*, 'sell as slaves.' Cp. l. 99 n.

1. 107. *ἐλάττους*. What is the uncontracted form of this word?

1. 108. *παρα-πλεύσας*, lit. 'having sailed along (the coast),' i. e. 'having coasted along.'

1. 109. For Parium and Perinthus (l. 112), see the Map and Vocabulary.

1. 110. *ὥς τάχιστα*. Cp. V. 185 n.

τοὺς δι-εσπαρμένους τῶν στρατιωτῶν, lit. 'the dispersed (ones) of the soldiers,' i. e. 'those of the soldiers *who* had been dispersed' (l. 100). *Στρατιωτῶν* is the *partitive* gen.

1. 111. *δια-βιβάζειν*. Remember that *βιβάζω* and its compounds are *transitive*, 'to cause to go.'

1. 114. *εἶποντο*, to be distinguished from *εἶπον*. Cp. II. 158 n.

1. 115. ὡς δια-βησόμενοι, lit. 'as about to cross,' i. e. 'because they were going to cross,' or 'at the thought of crossing' (after ἄσμενοι).

1. 119. ὑπ-ισχνούμενος, 'though he promised,' the participle, or 'though promising.' Καίπερ is usually added to a participle to mark that it means 'although.' Cp. I. 261 n.

1. 121. εἶπε τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ περαιούσθαι, 'told the soldiers *not* to cross;' Lat. 'militibus imperavit *ne* trajicerent.' [Εἶπε τοὺς στρατιώτας οὐ περαιούσθαι, would be, 'said that the soldiers were not crossing;' Lat. 'dixit milites *non* trajicere.']

1. 123. ἐκέλευσεν, 'had ordered.' The aor. in a minor sense is generally translated by the pluperf. Cp. II. 118 n.

1. 130. τῆς νυκτός. Cp. IV. 255 n.

1. 135. δύο ἄνδρας. A dual adj. may always be put with a plural noun (and *vice versa*), unless particular stress is laid upon the fact that *two only* are meant.' Cp. I. 1 n.

1. 136. ἐπ-ήρετο. Distinguish (1) ἡρόμην, 2nd aor. of ἔρομαι (pres. ἐρωτάω), 'I ask,' (2) ἡρόμην, imperf. pass. of αἶρω, 'I raise;' (3) ἡρούμην, imperf. of αἰρέομαι, 'I choose.'

ὃ τι βούλοιτο χρῆσθαι, lit. 'in what he wished to use,' i. e. 'what *use* he wished to make of.' Ὅ τι is the accus. of respect, 'as to what.'

1. 138. Θυνῶν. The Thyni originally inhabited the Thracian district near Salmydessus on the Euxine; but were driven into Asia, and colonised Bithynia, formerly called Bebrycia.

1. 139. The dominions of Maesades were a dependency of the Odrysian kingdom. When the power of the Odrysae declined, the whole kingdom was divided, and then Seuthes lost that portion of it which his father had ruled. The Odrysae once had a very extensive dominion, on both sides of the Hebrus (now the Maritza river). At one time their power extended beyond the Haemus (Balkan) range to the Danube, and as far west as the Strymon; thus including most of the eastern portion of the modern Roumelia and Bulgaria. It was now on the decline.

ἐκ-πίπτει, lit. 'falls out,' i. e. 'is banished.' Ἐκ-πίπτω is used as the passive of ἐκ-βάλλω, 'I cast out.'

1. 141. τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ, 'the *present* king.' Any word or words between the article and its noun=an adjective. Cp. I. 109, IV. 124 n.

1. 142. ἄλλοτρίας. Ἀλλότριος is the possessive of ἄλλος, 'belonging to another.' Cp. the Lat. *alienus* from *alius*.

1. 144. τιμωροίμην, *middle*, 'take vengeance on,' i. e. 'punish.' Cp. I. 151 n.

1. 145. ἀπο-βλέπων, 'looking' for my daily maintenance, as a dog watches for scraps from the table. Ἀπο-βλέπειν is lit. 'to look *away from*' everything else towards one object, hence 'to look *eagerly*.'

1. 146. ἐκ τούτου, here 'in consequence of this,' not merely 'after this,' as in former instances (I. 85, etc.).

1. 147. ὄψεσθε. Observe the *tense* before translating.

11. 148, 149. εἰ . . παρα-γένοισθε, etc., 'if you *were* to join me, I think I *should*,' etc. The opt. marks that the event of the Greeks joining Seuthes is as yet uncertain, a mere *possibility* in fact. This is the *third* out of the four forms of conditionals, IV. 113 n.

1. 151. εἰ ἔλθοιμεν, 'if we *were* to come.' See the last note.

11. 155-157. ἐὰν μὴ δια-πράξωμεν . . σὺ δέξει. This is the *second* form of conditional (IV. 113 n.); 'if (by any chance) we shall not have succeeded in doing this for you, *will* you receive us,' etc. [When the principal verb is in the fut. ind., the 'if' clause generally has ἐὰν with the subj.]

1. 156. Supply ἐὰν from the former line before ἦ.

1. 157. βουλώμεθα, not βούλωνται, because the antecedent to ὅσοι is ἡμᾶς, 'as many of us as desire.'

1. 160. τὴν θυγατέρα. The article τὴν marks the possessive of the same person as the verb δώσω. Cp. I. 15 n.

1. 161. Although τίς has an accent, it means 'any,' not 'who?' The accent does not belong to it, but is thrown back from the σοι following; εἰ would not have any accent if it had not the accent thrown back from τις.

1. 162. The custom of *buying* a wife prevailed in other Eastern nations besides Thrace, and anciently in Greece itself. [Hence one meaning of the word ἔδνα in Homer is money paid by the suitor to the parents of the bride.] For *Bisanthe* see Map and Vocabulary.

1. 163. τῶν-ἐπὶ-θαλάττη-χωρίων. For the article and noun with words between, cp. I. 109 n.

1. 169. The stress is on ἐνθάδε μένοντες, 'whether you will *stay here* and consult, or,' etc.

1. 175. ἀπ-ιόντες, fut. part., lit. 'about to depart,' i.e. 'for departure.'

1. 176. συ-σκευάξεσθε, 'pack up.' Συ-σκευάξεσθαι is 'to collect (and pack up) one's baggage (τὰ σκεύη).' Lat. *vasa colligere*.

1. 178. μετὰ ταῦτα. Cp. I. 128 n.

εἶποντο. Cp. I. 115, II. 158 n.

1. 182. ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν. Supply the 2nd pl. pres. ind. act. of the verb from which λήψεσθε comes.

1. 184. δια-τιθέμενος, 'disposing of (by sale).' Διατίθημι is lit. 'I put in different places,' Lat. *dispono*, whence our 'dispose.'

πορίζω. Think what mood this must be after ἴνα.

1. 185. ἐπ-ήρετο. Cp. I. 136 n.

πόσον, 'how much?' i.e. 'how far?' Lat. *quantum*.

11. 186, 187. οὐδαμῇ, πολλαχῇ, properly datives of *place*, meaning

‘no-where,’ ‘in many places,’ but here rather implying *time*, ‘on no occasion,’ ‘on many occasions,’ i. e. ‘often.’ [Though these words were originally datives, the *ι subscript* was dropped when they came to be used simply as adverbs. So πανταχῇ, ἀλλαχῇ, etc.]

1. 187. ἐπὶ τούτοις, ‘on these conditions.’ Cp. IV. 350 n.

1. 190. κατὰ τάξεις, lit. ‘according to ranks,’ i. e. ‘in separate ranks.’ Cp. I. 100 n.

1. 191. ὥς παρ-ιόντες. For ὥς with the *fut. part.*, cp. II. 70 n.

1. 195. μέγιστα, superl. of μεγάλως, adv. of μέγας. The superlative of an adverb is generally only the *neut. plur.* of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

ὅ τι ἂν ἔχῃς, ‘whatever you have’ or ‘may have.’ Cp. VII. 28 n.

1. 196. The stress is on εὖνους, ‘it is because I am well-disposed to you that,’ etc. Cp. I. 261 n.

1. 198. πείσει. Remember (1) that πάσχω may mean to ‘get good’ as well as to ‘get harm;’ (2) that πάσχω being used as passive of ποιέω (‘to treat well’ or ‘ill’) is followed by ὑπὸ marking the agent.

1. 201. τρίποδες, ‘three-legged tables.’ Each guest had a table to himself, and these were brought in and removed at each course.

1. 204. παρα-κειμένους, ‘which were set near him.’ Κεῖμαι is used for the passive of τίθημι. Cp. III. 207, VII. 221 n.

1. 205. κατὰ μικρόν, ‘in small pieces.’ Κατὰ is distributive. Cp. I. 100 n.

1. 206. ἔκειντο. Cp. I. 204 n.

1. 207. Distinguish ταῦτά, ‘the same things,’ from ταῦτα, ‘these things.’ Cp. I. 275 n.

δεινὸς φαγεῖν, as we say ‘a terrible one to eat,’ i. e. ‘a great eater.’

1. 210. ἐδέειπνε, imperf. ‘went on with his supper.’

1. 214. τί λέγοι, ‘what he said,’ the indirect question after ἡρώτα. But in the next line it is ὅ τι λέγοι, ‘what,’ i. e. ‘that which he said.’

1. 216. μὲν δῆ. The μὲν leads up to the δὲ in the next section, the δῆ winds up this paragraph. The two = ‘so then,’ and are used to mark the end of one subject and the beginning of another.

1. 218. προ-πίνω σοι, lit. ‘I drink before you,’ i. e. ‘I drink your health.’ In asking a man to drink wine with you, the Greek custom was to *drink first* yourself and then pass on the cup.

1. 220. διώκων, ‘when you pursue,’ ἀπο-χωρῶν, ‘when you retreat.’ Cp. I. 261 n. Observe καί . . . καί answering to one another.

1. 221. ἀπο-φεύξει. Remember that the *fut.* of φεύγω is φεύξομαι, not φεύξω. Ἀπὸ implies ‘get clear off.’

1. 223. ὅ τι ποιοῖ, ‘what he should do,’ the *deliberative opt.* after ἡπορεῖτο.

1. 223. ἐκάθητο. Why is the augment before the preposition? Because

κάθ-ημαι was so much oftener used than the simple verb ἦμαι, that it ceased to be treated as a compound at all. Cp. IV. 60 n.

1. 227. εἶναι, the infin. in Greek expressing a result or consequence, where the Latin would require *ut* or *qui* with the subj., (*qui simus* or *futuros*). Cp. VII. 90 n.

1. 229. Distinguish μετὰ τούτων, 'with these (men),' from μετὰ ταῦτα (1. 234), 'after these (things).'

1. 232. αὐτοί, 'of their own accord.'

1. 234. αὐλοῦντες κέρασι, 'playing on horns.' Αὐλέω is lit. 'I play the flute,' or 'flageolet,' hence simply 'I play (any instrument).'

1. 235. πολεμικόν, 'a war-cry,' some neuter word, such as βόαμα, 'a shout,' being understood.

ἐξ-ήλατο, 1st aor. of ἐξ-άλλομαι. Seuthes was performing a mimic war-dance, like the one described in Chap. VII. 330.

1. 240. φυλάξασθαι, middle, 'are on their guard.' Cp. III. 91 n.

1. 243. ὅποταν, 'as soon as ever.' Compounds of ἄν always take the subj.; ἄν when not attached to a conjunction can never go with the subj. Cp. VII. 28 n.

1. 247. εἶποντο. Cp. II. 114, 178 n., also II. 158 n.

1. 249. αὐτός, the nom. in apposition with the subject of ἔφη. In Latin it would be 'dixit se ipsum speculaturum esse.' Cp. IV. 286 n.

1. 251. λήσομεν .. ἐπι-πεσόντες, lit. 'we shall escape notice having fallen upon,' i. e. 'we shall fall upon unperceived.' Λανθάνειν with a participle (or a verb with the part. of λανθάνω) may often be translated by an adverb 'secretly,' 'unawares,' etc., as λανθάνω ποιῶν or ποιῶ λαθῶν, 'I do it secretly.'

1. 255. ἤδη, 'already,' Lat. *jam*, in 1. 257 'at once,' Lat. *jam* or *profecto*.

1. 258. κατα-θεῖν. Remember this has nothing to do with κατα-θεῖναι.

1. 259. ὥς τάχιστα. Cp. V. 185 n.

1. 267. ἀλλά, 'well.' Cp. VI. 270. Ἐγὼ μὲν answers to σὺ δὲ in next line.

1. 268. παρα-τεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα, 'to extend his line along.' Φάλαγξ in Xenophon does not mean a *compact* body of men, but 'a line of battle.' Cp. VII. 202 n.

1. 270. αὐτοῦ. Cp. VII. 174 n.

1. 273. ἀπο-δόσθαι, the Greek infin. marking *design*. Lat. *ut venderet*. Cp. 1. 227, VII. 90 n.

1. 277. ὃ ἐφέροντο, imperf., 'which they were carrying,' i. e. 'while they were carrying it.'

1. 278. ὁ οἶνος, etc. So Ovid, writing from his dreary place of exile at Tomi, near the mouths of the Danube, says (*Tristia*, i. 10. 23)—

‘Udaque consistunt formam servantia testae

Vina, nec hausta meri, sed data frusta bibunt.’

‘Liquid wine grows solid, keeping the shape of its jar, and they drink not *draughts* of wine, but *pieces* of it.’

l. 279. ἀπ-εκαίοντο, lit. ‘were *burnt* off,’ i. e. ‘were frost-bitten.’ The imperfect implies the frequency of the occurrence. The expression ‘burning’ is sometimes used of intense cold, as well as of intense heat. [So Virgil uses *adurere* of the north-wind, and Milton in *Par. Lost*, ii. 294, says,

‘The parching air

Burns froze (=frozen) and cold performs the effect of fire.]

l. 280. αὐτοῦ. Cp. l. 270 above.

l. 282. ἀνωτάτω, *adverb*, superl. of ἄνω. Comp. ἀνωτέρω. Coming between the article τῇ and its noun κώμη it has the force of an adjective. Cp. I. 109 n.

l. 286. ἐπι-τίθενται. Cp. VII. 20 n.

l. 289. ἐξ-ιόντα ἀπο-θνήσκειν, ‘to come out and be killed.’ ‘Απο-θνήσκω is used for the passive of ἀπο-κτείνω, ‘I kill.’

l. 290. οἱ περὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, lit. ‘those about Xenophon (*including* himself),’ i. e. ‘Xenophon and his friends.’

l. 291. Σιλανὸς Μακίστιος, a neighbour of Xenophon. This is why Xenophon mentions him here particularly. (See Vocabulary.)

l. 294. οἱ μὲν, ‘some.’ οἱ δέ, ‘others.’ Cp. VII. 161 n.

l. 297. ἀπ-έθανε. See note on l. 284 above.

l. 300. καί. Think before translating. Cp. I. 21 n.

τριπλασίαν, i. e. ‘three times as much’ as he had before the Greeks joined him.

l. 304. ἃ λέγοιεν, ‘what they *said*,’ not ‘might say;’ the *opt.* is used in Greek in a reported speech after a principal verb in the past tense (ἐπ-εδείκνυν), where we should use the *indicative*.

l. 306. οὐκ-ἔφη, as one word, ‘refused.’ Cp. IV. 278, 283 n.

τιμωρήσασθαι, ‘to avenge himself upon,’ i. e. ‘to punish.’ Cp. I. 151 n.

l. 308. ἔχειν δίκην, lit. ‘have penalty,’ i. e. ‘are punished.’

εἰ ἔσονται, ‘if (*as is the case*) they will be,’ or ‘*since* they will be.’ Cp. VI. 113 n.

l. 309. ὁμήρους, ‘as hostages,’ in apposition to τοὺς δυνατωτάτους.

l. 310. κακόν τι ποιεῖν depends on δυνατωτάτους.

Distinguish ἔαν, infin. of ἔάω, ‘I allow,’ from ἔαν, ‘if;’ also οἴκοι, ‘at home,’ from οἴκοι, ‘houses.’ Cp. I. 298 n.

l. 314. ἧς, instead of ἣν, after ἀπ-έδοτο. The relative is ‘attracted’ into the case of its antecedent λείας. Cp. I. 290 n.

1. 314. ἀπ-έδοτο, 'had sold,' being in a minor sentence. Cp. I. 118 n.

Distinguish ἀπο-δίδωμι, 'I give back,' 'render,' from ἀπο-δίδομαι (mid.), 'I sell.' Cp. l. 99 n.

1. 316. πλεῖον τῆς λείας, 'more of the spoil' than had produced the pay for twenty days.

1. 319. πλήρη τὸν μισθόν, 'the pay in full,' πλήρη, i. e. 'the pay which you brought would have been in full,' being the predicate to τὸν μισθόν. Cp. note on ἡδὺν τὸν τρόπον III. 206.

ἐδύνω, 2nd sing. imperf. of δύναμαι, shortened from ἐδύνα(σ)ο. Εἰ μὴ ἐδύνω, 'if you *had* not been able.'

1. 320. τοῦτον, sc. τὸν μισθόν.

καὶ ἀπέδου ἄν, 'you would *even* have sold.' This is the last of the four conditional forms given in the note on IV. 113.

1. 322. δι-έβαλλε. Cp. I. 12 n.

1. 323. ὅ τι, the accus. of respect, 'in whatever *respect*,' i. e. 'as much as.' ὅτι in the next line is 'that.'

1. 325. ἤχθετο. From what verb does this come? Cp. VII. 135 n.

1. 326. δι-έκειτο, 'was disposed.' Cp. III. 207 n.

1. 329. παρὰ Θίβρωνος. The Ionian cities of Asia Minor had sought Spartan protection from Tissaphernes, who was now avenging himself upon those who had supported Cyrus in his rebellion (see beginning of Chap. I.). The Spartans sent out Thibron (or Thimbron) with a large force to oppose Tissaphernes.

1. 335. ἀπο-διδῶς, (active voice). Cp. l. 314 n.

1. 336. ἀπ-αιτήσουσι takes two accusatives, like a factitive verb.

1. 339. ἀπο-διδόη, 'was ready to give up.' Cp. l. 304 n.

ἐξένιζεν, imperf. of ξενίζω. Do not mistake this word for a compound with the prep. ἐξ.

1. 342. εἴη, 'was,' not 'might be,' the indirect *question* of past tense with ποῖος after ἐρωτῶντων. Cp. l. 214 n.

1. 344. χεῖρον εἴη αὐτῷ. Understand ὅτι from the former clause, '(that) it was worse for him,' i. e. 'against his interests.' Like εἴη in l. 342, it is opt. of past indirect *statement* after ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι.

1. 345. Distinguish ἦ, 'really?' Lat. *num?*), from ἢ, 'or,' 'than.' Cp. VII. 201 n.

1. 346. πάνυ μὲν οὖν, 'nay, very much (so).' Μὲν οὖν in answer to a question states the case more precisely and emphatically, 'nay, rather.'

1. 348. ἀλλά, 'well, but,' i. e. 'well (he may oppose it), but if,' etc.

1. 351. ἐπειδὴν ἴδωσιν, 'as soon as ever they have seen us.' Cp. VII. 28 n.

1. 355. τοὺς Λάκωνας, i. e. Charmīnus and Polynicus (l. 328). As no stress is laid upon their number, they are spoken of in the *plural* (cp.

I. 1 n.); but in the next clause, where they form the subject of the verb, it is τῶ Λάκωνε. This gives a sort of picture of 'the two Laconians' getting up to speak.

1. 356. τῷ ἀδικήσαντι, 'who has injured.' The article with a participle = a relative pronoun and verb. Ἀδικήσαντι alone would mean, 'having injured,' i. e. 'since he has injured.' Cp. I. 261 n.

1. 357. τιμωρήσεσθε. Cp. l. 306 above, I. 151 n.

1. 358. τε . . καί. Καί is stronger than τε, 'both .. and what is more,' 'not only .. but more than this.'

1. 360. κατ-ηγορήσων, fut. part. 'to accuse.' Lat. accusaturus. Cp. l. 71 n.

1. 361. καὶ πάλαι, 'even long ago,' 'ever so long ago.' Cp. I. 21 n.

1. 363. καὶ νύκτα καὶ ἡμέραν. The stress is on νύκτα, 'night as well as day.'

1. 364. οὐδέν, acc. of respect, lit. 'in nothing,' i. e. 'not at all,'—'we have had no rest at all.'

1. 365. Distinguish μετὰ τοῦτον, 'after him,' from μετὰ τούτου, 'with him.'

ἄλλος καὶ ἄλλος, i. e. 'one after another.'

ἀν-έστη ὁμοίως, 'stood up (and spoke) to the same effect.'

1. 366. ἐκ τούτου. Cp. I. 85 n.

1. 367. ἀλλὰ .. μὲν, 'well indeed,' or 'nay indeed.' Here the μὲν is not followed by a δέ, because it is connected with ἀλλὰ, 'but in truth.' Its position emphasises πάντα, 'I may well expect any sort of ill-treatment,' etc.

προς-δοκᾶν. A compound not of δοκέω, 'I seem,' but of an unused pres. δοκάω, 'I watch for.' Δοκεύω is the simple verb in use.

1. 368. αἰτίας ἔχω, 'I have (receive) blame,' i. e. 'I am blamed;' hence followed by gen. of agent with ὑπό. As αἰτιάομαι, 'I blame,' is itself the middle voice, it can have no pres. pass.

1. 370. The μὲν is answered by δέ in μετὰ δέ ταῦτα in l. 372.

γε, 'at all events I turned back [if I did not show zeal in any other way].'

Take ἤδη with ὠρμημένος (perf. pass. part. of ὀρμάω), 'though I had already started.'

1. 373. εἰ πείσαιμι, 'in case I should persuade,' or 'on condition of my persuading.'

1. 374. αὐτοί. Think what this means in the nominative with ὑμεῖς.

1. 375. ὥς τάχιστα. Cp. V. 185 n. Xenophon had intended to take the army across from Perinthus into Asia at the bidding of Anaxibius, but was prevented by Aristarchus the new governor of Byzantium. See above, ll. 110, 120.

1. 377. ὑμᾶς βουλομένους, 'that you were wishing it.' The Greeks

used the participle after verbs of knowing, etc., to express the *fact* known, etc. Cp. II. 108 n.

1. 379. ὅ τι δέοι, 'what was or might be necessary,' the *deliberative* opt. after βουλευσαίμεθα, the past of the *delib.* subj. βουλευόμεθα ὅ τι δέη. Cp. I. 223 n.

1. 380. δὴ emphasises ἐνταῦθα, 'then in fine,' 'then, and not till then.' Lat. *tum demum*.

1. 381. ἐνταῦθα, 'herein,' 'in this,' = ἐν τούτῳ.

11. 383, 384. Ὀν and ὑμᾶς are both governed by ἀπο-εστερημέναι. Verbs of depriving in Greek take (1) a double accus., as ἀπο-στερῶ σε τὸν μισθόν, 'I deprive you (of) your pay;' (2) acc. and gen., as ἀπο-στερῶ σε τοῦ μισθοῦ. Cp. I. 472.

1. 384. μηδὲ ἔχειν, 'that I have *not even*.' The μηδὲ in this and next sentence should go directly before ἄ.

1. 387. ἦσυχυνόμην ἂν δὴ, 'I should (now) certainly (δὴ) have been feeling ashamed,' εἰ ἔξ-ηπατήθην, 'if I *had been* deceived.' See the four forms of conditional sentences, IV. 113 n.

πολεμίου γε. Notice the emphasis, 'if it had been by an *enemy* that.'

1. 388. ὄντι, lit. 'to me being,' i.e. 'if I am,' 'in a case where I am.'

1. 389. πρὸς τούτοις, 'besides this;' Lat. *praeterea*, to be distinguished from πρὸς ταῦτα, 'therefore;' Lat. *propterea*.

1. 391. οὐκ εἶα, (imperf. of εἰάω), not merely 'would not allow,' but 'was preventing.'

1. 394. οὐκ ἦν ἡμῖν, 'it was not (possible) for us.'

1. 398. προσ-εγίνετο ἡμῖν, imperf., lit. 'were being added to us,' i.e. 'we found ourselves acquiring.'

1. 399. οὐκέτι .. οὐδένα, 'no longer .. *a single* enemy.' Two or more negatives in Greek do not make an affirmative, but a stronger negation. Cp. II. 59 n.

1. 401. Remember that ἀποροῦσι may be another part of the verb besides the 3rd pl. pres. ind. Cp. II. 149 n.

εἰ μὴ .. ἄχθεσθαι, 'if he was not giving you so very much pay *besides* (πρὸς), what need was there for you to be distressed?' i.e. 'even putting aside the question of *pay*, you had got many advantages from the alliance with Seuthes.'

1. 405. ἄγετε δὴ, 'come now!' Lat. *agedum*.

καί, 'also,' not a conjunction joining ἄγετε with σκέψασθε.

παρὰ ταῦτα, 'in comparison with these,' or, as we say, 'by the side of these.' [In comparing two things together, you put one *beside* the other. Hence παρα-βολή, 'a *parable*,' or 'comparison,' in the New Test.]

l. 406. ὠρμώμην, imperf., 'was starting.' Cp. ὠρμημένος l. 370 n.

l. 407. καί. For the meanings of καί cp. I. 21 n.

l. 409. οὐκ ἂν με ἔπεμπον, 'they would not *have been sending* me,' the fourth conditional form, IV. 113 n.

The ἄλλως, 'otherwise,' = εἰ μὴ ἐπιστευόμην, 'if I had not been trusted.'

l. 410. δια-βεβλημένος. Cp. I. 12 n.

l. 413. περὶ ἐμέ, lit. 'about me,' i. e. 'in my case,' or 'to me.' Cp. l. 425.

l. 414. ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν, etc. Observe Xenophon's tact in his constant repetition of ὑμεῖς, ὑμῶν, etc., throughout this speech. He wished to insist strongly upon the fact that he had been a *fellow-labourer* with them in all their past achievements. [His language in the latter part of the speech much resembles that of St. Paul to the Corinthians, in his second Epistle, chap. xii.]

l. 418. ὅποι ἂν βούλησθε, 'wherever you [may] choose;' lit. 'whithersoever.' Compounds of ἂν have the force of 'ever,' Lat. *-cunque*, and always take the subj. Cp. VII. 28 n.

l. 419. δὴ emphasises νῦν, 'Do you think *the present* is a fit time?' etc. Distinguish καιρὸς, 'a *particular* time,' 'occasion,' from χρόνος, 'time' in general.

l. 420. οὐ μὴν, 'certainly not,' goes with ἐλέγετε: οὐδέν, 'anything at all.' Cp. l. 399, II. 59 n.

l. 422. ὑπ-ισχνεῖσθε, the imperf., because it is joined by καὶ to ἐκάλει. In *form* it might also be the pres.

l. 423. οἱ νῦν ἤκοντες ἐφ' ὑμᾶς, i. e. the Lacedaemonians, Charmīnus and Polynīcus, who wanted the army. Cp. l. 331. 'Εφ' ὑμᾶς means 'after you,' i. e. 'to fetch you.' Cp. VI. 16 n.

l. 425. βελτίους, 'any the better' for your treatment of me, by showing yourselves so ungrateful.

περὶ ἐμέ. Cp. l. 413 n.

l. 427. ἀλλ' ἐμοὶ μέντοι, lit. 'well *to me* however,' i. e. 'in *my* opinion, whatever others may think.'

ll. 429, 430. For the conversation here referred to see the section beginning at l. 342, p. 98.

l. 430. εἴη, opt., indirect *question*, where we use the past ind. Cp. l. 342 n.

l. 431. εἴη, opt., indirect *statement*, see l. 344 n.

ll. 434, 435. ἀπο-δόμενος, ἀπ-έδωκε. Cp. l. 99 n.

l. 439. εἰν σωφρονώμεν. Polycrates had said, 'If *we are wise*, we shall apprehend Heraclides' (l. 436). Heraclides, purposely repeating his words, says to Seuthes, 'If *we are wise*, we shall get away as fast as we can.'

l. 440. τοὺς ἵππους, the article is possessive, 'their.' Cp. I. 15 n.

l. 445. ὑπ-έσχετο, 'had promised.' The aor. in a *minor* sentence must often be rendered by the pluperf. Cp. II. 118 n. For the promises of Seuthes see above, ll. 154-163.

l. 446. πότερα, '[to see] whether,' this being implied in ἐθύετο.

παρὰ Σεύθη. Παρὰ with dat. = Fr. *chez*, 'at house of,' 'with,' lit. 'beside.'

l. 449. ἐκ τούτου. Cp. I. 85 n.

πóρρω, or πρόσω, lit. 'further;' hence 'far from.'

ll. 453, 454. ἀδικεῖτε . . ὑμῖν. Since Medosades is addressing Xenophon as the representative of the army, he uses the *plural* instead of ἀδικεῖς and σοί.

l. 458. οὐ παρα-καλέσαντες. Seuthes had not invited Xenophon to the conference with the Spartan envoys. Cp. l. 340.

l. 461. προ-είποι, opt., in a reported speech, after ἔλεγεν ὅτι, where we use the indic. Cp. l. 304 n.

l. 463. ἀπ-ίοιμεν ἂν . . ἔχοιεν, lit. 'we *would* go away, as soon as these men *should* have,' i. e. 'we *will* go away, as soon as these men *have*.' The Greeks often employed the opt. with ἂν as a milder way of saying 'I *will*,' as λέγοιμι ἂν for λέξω, 'I *will* speak.' [So also the 2nd pers. of the opt. for the imperative mood, as λέγοις ἂν for λέγε, 'speak.']

l. 465. Distinguish the act. τιμωρέω from the mid. τιμωρέομαι, 'I punish.' Cp. I. 151 n.

l. 467. Distinguish ἐδεῖτο, imperf. of δέομαι, 'I ask,' from ἔδει, imperf. of the impers. verb δεῖ, 'it is necessary.'

l. 469. αἰτιώμενος. Distinguish αἰτιάομαι, 'I accuse,' from αἰτέω, 'I ask.'

l. 472. ἀπο-στερῆσαι ὑμᾶς τὸν μισθόν. For the construction of verbs of depriving cp. l. 383 n.

l. 476. ἃ ὑπ-έσχετο. Cp. l. 445 n.

l. 478. δι' ὑμᾶς, 'because of you.' Δι' ὑμῶν would be 'by your means,' which would also have been true in the present instance, though Xenophon does not exactly say so.

l. 481. ὥς ἀπ-ιών, 'with intent to depart.' Ὡς with the fut. part. denotes a purpose. Cp. II. 70 n.

l. 484. ἀπ-αγάγει . . παρα-δοίη, 'they begged him not to depart before he *should have* led away the army and delivered it up to Thibron.' Πρὶν with opt. is used after *negative* sentences of *past* time (answering to πρὶν ἂν with subj. of present time). The opt. implies it was quite uncertain when this could be done.

l. 485. Λάμψακον. See Vocabulary.

l. 486. Distinguish ἀπ-αντᾶ from ἅπαντα (1) by the *breathing* and

accent, (2) by the *ι subscriptum*, (3) by the *hyphen* showing that ἀπ-αντᾶ is a compound of ἀπό.

l. 488. ἔχοι, 'had,' not 'might have.' Cp. l. 342 n.

ἔσεσθαι μῆδέ, 'that there would *not even* be.'

l. 489. ἰκανὸν ὥστε ἀπ-ιέναι, lit. 'sufficient so as to depart,' i. e. 'sufficient to enable him to get away.'

ἀπό-δοιτο, *middle voice*. Cp. l. 99 n.

l. 491. ἔπεμψαν, aorist after ἐπεῖ, 'had sent' (II. 118 n.). But ἔθυε (next line), imperf., 'was sacrificing.'

l. 492. ἰδὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα, i. e. when Euclides 'inspected the entrails,' he found unfavourable signs.

l. 493. μὴ ἔχειν, 'that he had not,' after πείθοιτο.

l. 494. ὅτι joins οἶδα to ἔσται, 'I know that there will be.' The clause with ἐάν depends on ἔσται, 'there will be, etc., if you intend,' etc.

l. 497. εἰ ἤδη θύσειε, 'if he had *ever* sacrificed.' Ἦδη, Lat. *jam*, 'already,' 'before now.'

l. 498. οὐκ-ἔφη, as one word, 'denied,' 'said that he had *not*.' Cp. IV. 270, 283 n.

Διὶ τῷ Μειλιχίῳ, 'to Zeus the *Gracious*.' Though Xenophon had of course often sacrificed to Zeus, he had never sacrificed to him under this particular title, and the various *attributes* of one god were often personified into separate deities. Thus the dream related in Chap. IV. 42, etc., is said to have come from Ζεὺς βασιλεὺς, i. e. Zeus under his title of *King*.

ἐξ ὅτου, lit. 'from whatever (time),' i. e. 'ever since.'

l. 499. συν-εβούλευσεν, 'advised.' Distinguish the act. συμ-βουλεύειν, 'to advise,' from the mid. συμ-βουλεύεσθαι, 'to consult.' Cp. IV. 14 n.

ll. 503, 504. ἀπ-έδοσαν, *act.* ἀπ-έδοτο, *mid.* Cp. l. 99 n.

l. 508. Πέργαμον. See Vocabulary.

l. 510. Though τίς has an accent, it means 'a certain one,' not 'who?' The accent does not belong to it, but is thrown back from ἔστιν. Cp. l. 161 n.

l. 511. εἰ ἔλθοις .. λάβοις ἄν, 'if you *were to* come, you *might* take,' the *third* of the four conditional forms given in IV. 113 n.

l. 515. εὖ ποιήσειεν. Εἰ ποιεῖν is to 'treat well,' so to 'benefit.'

l. 517. αὐτὸν τὸν Ἀσιδάτην, 'Asidates *himself*;' distinguish this from τὸν αὐτὸν Ἀσιδάτην, 'the same Asidates.' Cp. IV. 190 n.

l. 518. κατὰ κράτος, here, 'by storm,' lit. 'according to force.' It usually means 'at full speed.' Cp. II. 53 n.

l. 520. δι-ωρώρυκτο, plup. pass. of δι-ορύττω, 'the breach was completed.' Distinguish ἡσθόμην, 2nd aor. of αἰσθάνομαι, from ἡσθην, 1st aor. pass. of ἡδομαι. Cp. II. 91 n.

1. 521. τοῦ ἐγγυτάτω, sc. ὄντος, as ἐγγὺς is an adverb. The form of comparison in -τέρω and -τάτω properly belongs to adverbs ending in -ω, as ἄνω, κάτω (cp. ἀνωτάτω, l. 277), but it was used with a few others besides, as ἐγγὺς, πέρα (περαιτέρω, -τάτω).

1. 522. ὥστε μὴ . . εἶναι, 'so as not to be safe,' i.e. 'so as to *make it* unsafe.' Ὡστε οὐκ ἦν (indic.) would be, 'so that (as a matter of *fact*) it was not,' or 'therefore it was not.' Cp. VI. 47 n.

1. 523. πᾶμ-πολλοι, after ἐκ-βοηθοῦσι and in apposition with ἄλλοι, 'come to the rescue *in great force*.'

1. 524. πλησίον, an *adverb*, but standing between the article and its noun, it is equivalent to an adjective. Cp. I. 109 n.

1. 525. ἀπο-χωροῖεν, 'should get away,' the deliberative opt. after ἐσκόπουν. Cp. l. 379 n. The direct deliberative would be πῶς ἀποχωρῶμεν (subj.), 'how are we to get away?'

1. 526. βόες, πρόβατα, ἀνδράποδα, nominatives by *attraction* into the relative clause introduced by ὅσοι, instead of accusatives after λαβόντες, = λαβόντες βοῦς etc., ὅσοι ἦσαν.

1. 528. ἐπι-κειμένους = ἐπι-τιθεμένους. Cp. VII. 20, 221 n.

1. 530. Προκλήης. This Procles has been mentioned in Chap. II. 117 as having announced the death of Cyrus after the battle of Cunaxa. He was governor of Teuthrania, a district of Mysia, and was descended from the Spartan Demaratus, who had been driven out by the joint-king Cleomenes, and had taken refuge at the court of Darius nearly 100 years before the date of this expedition.

1. 534. ὥς (with numerals), lit. 'as it were,' i.e. 'about.'

1. 535. τῆς νυκτός, gen. of time. Cp. IV. 255 n.

1. 542. ἐξ-αίρετα, 'select portions,' from the mid. αἰρέομαι, 'I choose,' not from the act. αἰρέω, 'I take.'

1. 543. Θίβρων. For Thibron (or Thimbron) cp. l. 329 n.

1. 544. Ἑλληνικῶ, sc. στρατεύματι. Σο τὸ ἵππικόν, τὸ πελταστικόν, τὸ Περσικόν, etc.

1. 545. ἐπολέμει, imperf., 'proceeded to make war.'

VOCABULARY.

[N.B. *Hyphens* are used, not on strictly *philological* principles, but only to draw attention to different elements in the stem of a word, and to show more clearly the meaning of the compound.]

For tenses of compound verbs not inserted, see the simple verb.

A.

ἄ-βατος, -ον, *impassable*, (of a river) *not to be forded*. (ἄ, *not*, and βατὸς, verbal adj. of βα-ίνω, *I go*.)

Ἀβροκόμας, -ου, m. *Abrocomas*, satrap of Phoenicia, head of Persian troops between the Mediterranean and Euphrates (I. 149).

ἀγαγεῖν, ἀγαγών, 2 aor. infin. and part. of ἄγω.

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν, *good, brave*; τὰ ἀγαθὰ, *goods, wealth*; comp. ἀμείνων, βελτίων: superl. ἀριστος, βέλτιστος.

Ἀγασίας, -ου, m. *Agasias*, a brave captain from Stymphālus in Arcadia (VII. 251).

ἀγγεῖον, -ου, n. *a vessel, pail*.

ἀγγέλλω, *I announce, report*; fut. ἀγγελῶ, 1 aor. ἤγγειλα, perf. pass. ἤγγελμαι.

ἄγγελος, -ου, m. *a messenger*.

ἀγείρω, *I collect, assemble*; 1 aor. ἤγειρα, 1 aor. pass. ἤγέρθην.

ἄγκυρα, -ας, f. *an anchor*. βάλλειν ἄγκυραν, *to cast anchor*.

ἀγνοέω, *I am ignorant*; fut. ἀγνοήσω. (ἄ, *not*, and γνο-, root of γι-γνώ-σκω, *I learn*.)

ἀγνώμων, -ον, *senseless, foolish*. (ἄ, *not*, and γνώμη, *sense*.)

ἀγορά, -ας; f. *a market-place, provisions; a meeting*. (ἀγείρω.)

ἄγριος, -ία, -ιον, *living in the fields, wild*. (ἀγρὸς, *a field*.)

ἄγρός, -οῦ, m. *a field, land; the country*. (Lat. *ager*.)

ἄγω, *I lead, bring*; fut. ἄξω, perf. pass. ἤγμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἤχθην, fut. pass. ἀχθήσομαι, 2 aor. ἤγαγον.

γυναῖκα ἄγειν, *to marry* (of the man). (Lat. *uxorem ducere*.)

ἄγε, *well! come on!*

βίον ἄγειν, *to lead a life, live*. (Lat. *vitam agere*.)

ἄγών, -ῶνος, *a contest; an assembly*.

ἀγωνίζομαι, *I contend*, περί τινος, *for anything*. (ἀγών, *a contest*.)

ἄ-δειπνος, -ον, *dinnerless or supperless*. (ἄ, *not*, and δεῖπνον, *dinner or supper*.)

ἀδελφός, -οῦ, m. *a brother*.

ἄ-δηλος, -ον, *not clear, uncertain*. (ἄ, *not*, and δηλός, *clear*.)

ἀ-δικέω, *I do wrong, harm, injure*; with acc., fut. ἀδικήσω, 1 aor. ἠδίκησα, perf. pass. ἠδίκημαι, 1 aor. pass. ἠδικήθην.

ἀ-δικία, -ας, f. *injustice, wrong, injury*.

ἄ-δικος, -ον, *unjust, unfair*. (ἄ, *not*, and δίκη, *justice*.)

ἀ-δίκως, *unjustly, wrongly*, (adv. of ἄδικος.)

ἀ-δόλως, adv. *without fraud*.

ἀ-δύνατος, -ον, *unable to do a thing*. (ἄ, *not*, and δυνατός, verb. adj. of δύναμαι, *I am able*.)

ἀ-δύνατον, *impossible*; (neut. of ἀδύνατος.)

ᾄδω, *I sing* (contracted from ἀείδω), fut. ᾄσομαι.

ἀεί, (adv.) *always, continually; from time to time.*

ἀετός, -οῦ, m. *an eagle.*

Ἀθῆναι, -ῶν, f. *Athens, the capital of Attica.*

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον, *Athenian.*

ἄθλον, -ον, n. *a prize.*

ἀθροίζω, *I collect, assemble, fut. ἀθροίσω. (ἀθρός.)*

ἀθρόος, -ον, *collected, in crowds.*

ἀθυμέω, *I am without courage, I despond; fut. ἀθυμήσω. (ἀ, not, and θυμός, courage.)*

ἀ-θυμία, -ας, f. *want of courage, despondency.*

ἄ-θυμος, -ον, *desponding. (ἀ, not, and θυμός, courage.)*

ἀ-θύμως, *despondingly, (adv. of ἄθυμος.)*

αἰγιαλός, -οῦ, m. *the sea-shore, beach.*

αἶθω, *I burn, kindle, (only used in pres. and imperf. ἥθον.) (Mid.)*

αἶθομαι, *I am on fire.*

αἷμα, -ατος, n. *blood.*

αἶξ, αἰγός, m. and f. *a goat.*

αἰρεθείς, *chosen, I aor. participle pass. from αἰρέομαι.*

αἰρετέος, *must be taken, (verb. adj. from αἰρέω).*

αἰρέω, *I take, (Mid.) αἰρέομαι, I choose; fut. αἰρήσω, perf. ἤρηκα, perf. pass. ἤρημαι, I aor. pass. ἤρέθην, 2 aor. εἶλον.*

αἶρω, *I raise, lift up; fut. ἀρῶ, I aor. ἦρα, perf. ἦρκα, perf. pass. ἦρμαι.*

αἰσθάνομαι, *I perceive, feel, understand; fut. αἰσθήσομαι, perf. ᾔσθημαι, 2 aor. ᾔσθόμην.*

Αἰσχίνης, -ον, m. *Aeschines, an Acarnanian (V. 40).*

αἰσχίων, αἰσχιστος, comp. and superl. of αἰσχύρος.

αἰσχύρος, -ά, -όν, *base, disgraceful, shameful. (αἰσχος, shame.)*

αἰσχύνη, -ης, f. *shame, disgrace, reproach. (αἰσχος, shame.)*

αἰσχύνω, (Act.) *I put to shame, (Pass.) αἰσχύνομαι, I am ashamed, with accus. of the thing: so with infin.*

ποιεῖν, *I am ashamed to do it (and therefore do not do it); but with part. ποιῶν, I am ashamed at doing it (but yet do it).*

αἰτέω, *I ask, request; fut. αἰτήσω, perf. ᾔτηκα, perf. pass. ᾔτημαι.*

αἰτία, -ας, f. *a cause, a fault, blame; αἰτίαν ἔχειν τινός, to be accused of a thing.*

αἰτιάομαι, *I blame, accuse: fut. αἰτιάσομαι (with acc. of person and gen. of thing).*

αἷτιος, -α, -ον, *causing harm, guilty; τὸ αἷτιον, the cause; ὁ αἷτιος, the accused. (Lat. reus.)*

αἰχμάλωτος, -ον, *taken in war, captive. (αἰχμή, a spear, and ἄλωτος, verbal adj. of ἀλίσκομαι, I am taken.)*

ἀ-κόλαστος, -ον, lit. *undisciplined, unpunished. (ἀ, not, and κολάζω, I punish.)*

ἄκοντίζω, *I hurl a javelin at one; I aor. ἤκόντισα.*

ἄκόντιον, -ον, n. *a javelin (dim. of ἄκων, a dart).*

ἀκούω, *I hear; ἀκούω εἶναι, I hear a report that it is; ἀκούω ὄν, ὄντα, I hear a report that it (or he) certainly is; fut. ἀκούσομαι, I aor. ἤκουσα, perf. pass. ἤκουσμαι.*

ἄκρα, -ας, f. *a point, a peak, a citadel.*

ἄ-κράτος, -ον, *unmixed, strong (of wine). (ἀ, not, and κεράννυμι, I mix.)*

ἄκρο-βολίζομαι, *I throw from afar, I skirmish. (ἄκρος, outermost, and βάλλω, I throw.)*

ἄκρό-πολις, -εως, f. *the upper city, citadel, castle.*

ἄκρος, -α, -ον, *highest, topmost, τὸ ἀκρότατον, the highest point, τὰ ἄκρα, the heights.*

ἄκων, -ουσα, -ον, *unwilling. (ἀ, not, and ἐκὼν, willing.)*

ἀλαλάζω, *I raise the war cry; fut. ἀλαλάξω.*

ἀλέξω, *I ward off, (with dative) I defend; fut. ἀλεξήσω, I aor. mid. ἤλεξάμην.*

ἀ-λήθεια, -as, f. *truth*; τῇ ἀληθείᾳ, *in truth, in fact.* (ἀληθής, *true.*)

ἀ-ληθής, -ές, *true*, (lit. *un-concealed*, ἀ, *not*, and λανθάνω, *I escape notice.*)

ἀ-λίθος, -ον, *without stones.* (ἀ, *not*, and λίθος, *a stone.*)

Ἁλίσαρνη, -ης, f. *Halisarne*, a town in the Troad.

ἀλίσκομαι, *I am taken* (used as the passive of αἰρέω); fut. ἀλώσομαι, perf. ἔάλωκα or ἤλωκα, 2 aor. ἔαλων or ἤλων.

ἀλλά, (conjunction), *but, well*; ἀλλὰ γὰρ, *but really*; ἀλλὰ γε, *but still.*

ἄλλη, (adv. really dat. fem. of ἄλλος, understand ὁδῶ) *in another way.*

ἄλλη καὶ ἄλλη, *here and there.*

ἀλλήλους, *one another, each other* (wants nom. and sing.).

ἄλλοθεν, (adv.) *from another place.* (ἄλλος.)

ἄλλομαι, *I leap*; imperf. ἡλλόμην, 1 aor. ἡλάμην, 2 aor. ἡλόμην.

ἄλλος, -η, -ο, *another, different.* (Lat. *alius.*) ἄλλοι, *some others*; οἱ ἄλλοι, *the rest*; so τὰ ἅλλα, *in all other respects.*

ἄλλοσε, (adv.) *to another place.* (ἄλλος.)

ἄλλότριος, -α, -ον, *belonging to another, foreign, strange.* (ἄλλος.)

ἄλλως, (adv.) (1) *in another way, otherwise*; (2) *at random.*

ἀ-λόγιστος, -ον, *unreasoning.* (ἀ, *not*, and λογίζομαι, *I reason.*)

Ἁλυσ, -vos, m. *the Halys*, the chief river of Asia Minor (vi. 141).

ἄλφιτον, -ου, n. *barley* (generally in plural ἄλφιστα).

ἅμα, (adv.) *at the same time, at once, together.* (Lat. *simul.*)

ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, *at day-break.*

ἅμαξα, -ης, f. *a waggon.*

ἁμαρτάνω, *I err, do wrong*: with gen. *I miss* (a mark); fut. ἁμαρτήσομαι, perf. ἡμάρτηκα, 2 aor. ἡμαρτον, 1 aor. pass. ἡμαρτήθην.

ἁμάρτημα, -ατος, n. *a fault, mistake.*

ἀ-μαχεί, (adv.) *without fighting.* (ἀ, *not*, and μαχή, *fight.*)

ἄμεινον, adv. of ἀμείνων.

ἀμείνων, *better, braver*, used as comp. of ἀγαθός.

ἀ-μελέστερον, comp. of ἀμελῶς, *more carelessly, somewhat carelessly.*

ἀ-μελῶς, (adv.) *carelessly.* (ἀ, *not*, and μέλει, *it is a care.*)

ἀμιλλάομαι, *I contend, struggle*: fut. ἀμιλλήσομαι. (ἄμιλλα, *a contest.*)

ἄμπελος, -ου, f. *a vine.*

ἀμύνω, *I ward off, defend*, with dat. In middle ἀμύνομαι, with accus. *I ward off from myself, punish*; fut. ἀμύνω, 1 aor. ἤμυνα.

ἀμφί, (with gen. and acc., never with dat. in Attic prose), lit. 'on both sides' (ἄμφω, Lat. *ambo*, 'both,' so Lat. *amb-* in *amb-ire*.) I. with gen. *about*, as δια-φέρεσθαι ἀμφί τινος, *to quarrel about a thing.* II. with acc. (i.) *around, near, with*, especially of persons, as οἱ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον, *Cyrus and his attendants* (lit. 'those around Cyrus'); (ii.) of things, *about, concerning*; (iii.) of time, *about*, as ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας, *about midnight*; (iv.) of numbers, as ἀμφὶ τοὺς δισ-χιλίους, *about 2000.* In Composition ἀμφί mostly means, *on both sides, around, about.*

ἀμφοτέρως, -α, -ον, *both.* (Lat. *ambo*.)

ἀμφοτέρωθεν, (adv.) *on both sides.*

ἄμφω, -οι, *both.*

ἂν, conditional particle, lit. 'in that case:' I. with opt. λύοι ἂν, 'he would loose' (if something were to happen). II. with aor. indic. ἔλυσεν ἂν, *he would have loosed* (if something had happened). III. when compounded with relatives or relative particles, as ὅς ἂν, *whoever*, ὅτ-αν, *whenever*, εἰ ἂν, *if ever.* Compounds of ἂν can only go with the subj.

ἀνά, (with accus. only), lit. *up* (cp. ἄνω, 'upwards'): I. of place, *along, throughout, on*; ἀνὰ τὴν πόλιν,

through the city: II. of manner, at the rate of; ἀνὰ κράτος, up to one's strength, i. e. at full speed: III. of numbers, at the rate of; ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν, 100 each. In Composition, up, again, back.

ἀνα-βαίνω, I go up, ascend, mount, go on board; fut. -βήσομαι, perf. -βέβηκα, 2 aor. ἀν-έβην.

ἀνά-βασις, -ews, f. a going up, an expedition into the interior.

ἀνα-βοάω, I cry aloud, shout; fut. -βοήσομαι.

ἀν-αγγέλλω, I bring back news, report; fut. -αγγελῶ, 1 aor. -ήγγειλα.

ἀνα-γινώσκω, I understand, recognise; read; 2 aor. ἀν-έγνων.

ἀναγκάζω, I force, compel; fut. ἀναγκάσω, 1 aor. pass. ἡναγκάσθην.

ἀναγκαῖος, -ον, necessary, needful.

ἀνάγκη, -ης, f. necessity, need.

ἀνα-γνούς, 2 aor. participle of ἀνα-γινώσκω.

ἀν-άγω, I lead up, bring up; 2 aor. ἀνήγαγον, 1 aor. pass. -ήχθην. (Mid.)

ἀν-άγομαι, I put to sea. (ἀνὰ, up, and ἄγω, I lead.)

ἀνα-θορυβέω, I cry out loudly, applaud. (ἀνὰ, up, i. e. aloud, and θόρυβος, noise.)

ἀνα-καίω, I kindle; fut. ἀνα-καύσω.

ἀνα-κοινόω, I communicate (something to another); fut. ἀνα-κοινώσω.

ἀνα-κομίζω, I carry up, store; 1 aor. ἀν-εκόμισα.

ἀνα-κράζω, I cry aloud; fut. ἀνα-κράξομαι, 2 aor. ἀν-έκραγον.

ἀνα-λαμβάνω, I take up, recover; fut. ἀνα-λήψομαι, perf. ἀν-είληφα, 2 aor. -έλαβον.

ἀνα-λάμπω, I blaze up, take fire; fut. ἀνα-λάμψω.

ἀν-αλίσκω, I spend, squander; fut. ἀν-αλώσομαι, perf. ἀν-ήλωκα.

ἀνα-μένω, I wait for; fut. ἀνα-μενῶ, 1 aor. ἀν-έμεινα.

ἀνα-μιμνήσκω, (Act.) I remind, (Mid.)

ἀνα-μιμνήσκομαι, I remember; fut.

ἀνα-μνήσω.

Ἀναξίβιος, -ου, m. Anaxibius, a Spartan admiral.

ἀναξυρίδες, trousers, (probably a Persian word).

ἀνα-παύω, (Act.) I make to cease, stop, (Mid.) ἀνα-παύομαι, I cease, rest.

ἀνα-πετάννυμι, I spread out, open; fut. ἀνα-πετάσω.

ἀν-ἀριστος, -ον, without breakfast. (ἀ, not, and ἄριστον, breakfast.)

ἀν-αρπάζω, I snatch up, plunder; fut. ἀν-αρπάξω, or ἀν-αρπάσω.

ἀν-αρχία, -ας, f. want of government, lawlessness. (ἀ, not, and ἀρχή, rule).

ἀνα-στρέφω, I turn upside down, return, (of an army) rally; fut. ἀνα-στρέψω, 2 aor. pass. ἀν-εστράφην.

ἀνα-τείνω, I stretch upwards, extend; fut. ἀνα-τενῶ, perf. ἀνα-τέτακα, perf.

pass. ἀνα-τέταμαι.

ἀνα-τίθημι, I lay up, set up, deposit; fut. ἀνα-θήσω, 1 aor. ἀν-έθηκα.

ἀνα-φεύγω, I escape; fut. ἀνα-φεύξομαι, 2 aor. ἀν-έφυγον.

ἀνα-φρονέω, I recover my senses; fut. ἀνα-φρονήσω.

ἀνα-χωρέω, I retire, retreat, withdraw; fut. ἀνα-χωρήσω.

ἀνα-χωρίζω, I cause to retire, draw off; 1 aor. ἀν-εχώρισα.

ἀνδράποδον, -ου, n. a slave taken in war. (Lat. mancipium.)

ἀν-εγείρω, I wake up, rouse; fut. ἀν-εγερῶ, 1 aor. act. ἀν-ήγειρα,

1 aor. pass. ἀν-ηγέρθην.

ἀν-ειπεῖν, to proclaim. (ἀνὰ, εἰπεῖν 2 aor. infin., φημί.)

ἀν-εκ-πίμπλημι, I fill up again; fut. ἀν-εκ-πλήσω.

ἀν-έκραγον, 2 aor. indic. from ἀνα-κράζω.

ἀν-έλκω, I draw up, pull up; imperf. ἀν-εἴλκων.

ἄνευ, (prep.) without. (Lat. sine.)

ἀν-έχω, I hold up, put up with, endure; fut. ἀν-έξω or ἀνα-σχήσω, 2 aor. ἀν-εσχον.

ἀν-ήκω, *I come up to, extend upwards.*

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, m. *a man*, (Lat. *vir*.)

ἀνὴρ, *man*, opposed to *woman*.

ἄνθρωπος, *human being*, opposed to *beast*.

ἀν-ήχθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἀν-άγω.

ἀνθ-ίστημι, (Act.) *I set against*,

(Mid.) ἀνθ-ίσταμαι, *I oppose*; fut.

ἀντι-στήσω, perf. ἀνθ-έστηκα, 2 aor.

ἀντ-έστην. (ἀντὶ, *against*, and

ἴστημι, *I set up*.)

ἄνθρωπινος, -ον, (adj.) *human* (ἄνθρωπος).

ἄνθρωπος, -ου, m. *a man*. (Lat. *homo*).

See ἀνὴρ.

ἀνιάω, *I grieve, hurt*; fut. ἀν-ιάσω,

1 aor. pass. ἠνιάθην. (ἀνία, *grief*.)

ἀν-ίημι, *I send up, let go*; fut. ἀν-

ήσω, 1 aor. ἀν-ήκα, perf. ἀν-εἶκα.

ἀν-ίστημι, (Act.) *I set up*, (Mid.)

ἀν-ίσταμαι, *I rise up, stand up*.

So also 2 aor. act. ἀν-έστην, and

perf. and pluperf. act. are intransitive.

ἀν-ίσχω = ἀν-έχω, intrans. *I rise* (as the sun).

ἀν-οίγω, or ἀν-οίγνυμι, *I open*; fut.

ἀν-οίξω.

Ἀντανδρος, -ον, f. *Antandrus*, a city in the Troad (VIII. 506).

ἀντί, (with gen. only), I. *overagainst*,

opposite; II. *in return for, instead of*.

In Composition, *against, exchange*. (ἀντὶ, *against*, must be

distinguished from Lat. *ante, before*;

ἀντὶ probably meant originally,

‘before the face of.’)

Ἀντιλέων, -οντος, m. *Antileon*, a soldier

from the Greek colony of Thurii in

Italy (VI. 2).

ἀντίος, -α, -ον, *opposite*; often with

ἵεναι, ἐλαύνειν, etc.; ‘to go, ride,

etc., *against the enemy*.’

ἀντι-παρα-σκευάζομαι, *I prepare my-*

self in turn; fut. -άσομαι, perf.

-παρ-εσκεύασμαι.

ἀντι-παρα-τάττω, *I draw up op-*

posite, I range in battle against;

fut. -τάξω, perf. -τέταχα.

ἀντι-φυλάττω, (Act.) *I watch in turn*,

(Mid.) *I am on my guard against*

one; fut. -φυλάξω.

ἀντρ-ώδης, -ες, *cavern-like, full of*

caves. (ἀντρον, *a cave*, and εἶδος,

form.)

ἄνω, (adv.) *upwards*. Comp. ἀνω-

τέρω, superl. ἀνωτάτω. Sometimes

as a prep. with gen. *above*.

ἄνωθεν, (adv.) *from above, from the*

interior (of a country).

ἄξια, -ας, f. *worth, value*.

ἄξινη, -ης, f. *an axe*. (ἄγνυμι, *I break*.)

ἄξιος, -α, -ον, *worth, worthy* (with

gen.); ἄξιόν ἐστι (Lat. *operae*

pretium est), *it is worth while*;

πολλοῦ ἄξιος, *valuable*.

ἄξιόω, *I think it right, claim, ask*,

with gen. of person. (ἄξιος, *worthy*.)

ἄξων, -ονος, m. *an axle*.

ἀπ-αγγέλλω, *I bring back word,*

announce, report; fut. ἀπ-αγγελῶ,

1 aor. ἀπ-ήγγειλα.

ἀπ-άγω, *I lead away, bring back*;

2 aor. ἀπ-ήγαγον.

ἀπ-αγωγή, -ῆς, f. *a leading away,*

withdrawal.

ἀπ-αιτέω, *I demand back*: 1 aor. ἀπ-

ήτησα.

ἀπ-αλλάττω, *I get rid of*: (intrans.)

I get off: (Mid.) *I depart*; fut.

-αλλάξω, perf. pass. -ήλλαγμαι.

ἀπαλός, -ή, -όν, *soft to the touch,*

tender. (ἅπτομαι, *I touch*.)

ἀπ-αντάω, (with dat.) *I come to meet,*

encounter; fut. ἀπ-αντήσω, 1 aor.

ἀπ-ήντησα.

ἄπαξ, (adv.) *once*. (Lat. *semel*.)

ἀ-παράσκευος, -ον, *unprepared*. (ἀ,

not, and παρασκευή, *preparation*.)

ἄ-πας, -ασα, -αν, *all together*. (ἅμα,

together, and πᾶς, *all*.)

ἀπ-έδραν, 2 aor. of ἀπο-διδράσκω.

ἀ-πειθέω, *I disobey*. (ἀ, *not*, and πείθο-

μαι, *I obey*.)

ἀπειλέω, *I threaten*; fut. ἀπειλήσω,

1 aor. ἠπέιλησα.

ἀπ-εἰμι, *I go away, depart*. (ἀπὸ, and

εἶμι, *I shall go*.)

ἀπ-εἰμι, *I am away, am distant.* (ἀπό and εἰμι, *I am.*)

ἀπ-εκρινάμην, 1 aor. of ἀπο-κρίνομαι.

ἀπ-ελαύνω, *I drive away; (intrans.) I march away, ride away.*

ἀπ-έρχομαι, *I go away, depart; for the fut. ἀπ-εἰμι, 2 aor. ἀπ-ἦλθον.*

ἀπ-εχθάνομαι, *I am hated, become odious; fut. ἀπ-εχθήσομαι, 2 aor. ἀπ-ηχθόμην, perf. ἀπ-ῆχθημαι.*

ἀπ-έχω, (with gen.) *I keep off, (of a place) am distant from; 2 aor. ἀπ-έσχον.*

ἀπ-ήλλαγμαι, perf. pass. of ἀπαλλάττω.

ἀπ-ήντησα, 1 aor. of ἀπ-αντάω.

ἀ-πιστέω, *I disbelieve, distrust.* (ἀ, *not*, and πίστις, *belief.*)

ἀ-πιστία, -ας, f. *disbelief, faithlessness.*

ἀ-πιστος, -ος, -ον, *untrustworthy, unfaithful.* (ἀ, *not*, and πίστος, *trustworthy.*)

ἀπ-ιτέον, *one must go away* (verbal adjective from ἀπ-εἰμι).

ἀπό, (prep. with gen. only); (Lat. *ab*): I. of place, *off from, away from.* II. of time, *from, after, since*: III. of origin and cause, *proceeding from*, as ἀπὸ πολέμιων φόβος, *fear caused by the enemy.* Before an aspirated vowel ἀπὸ becomes ἀφ', as ἀφ' ἵππου, *on horseback*, lit. 'from his horse.' In Composition, *from, off, away.*

ἀπο-βαίνω, (1) *I go away, go off*: (2) *dismount* (ἵππου): (3) *disembark* (νεώς); 2 aor. ἀπ-έβην, fut. ἀπο-βήσομαι.

ἀπο-βάλλω, *I throw away, lose; fut. ἀπο-βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἀπ-έβαλον.*

ἀπο-βλέπω, *I look eagerly.*

ἀπο-δέδρακα, perf. act. of ἀπο-διδράσκω.

ἀπο-δείκνυμι, *I point out, declare, appoint; fut. ἀπο-δείξω.*

ἀπο-δέχομαι, *I accept; fut. ἀπο-δέξομαι.*

ἀπο-δημέω, *I am abroad, go abroad.* (ἀπὸ, *away*, and δῆμος, *home.*)

ἀπο-διδράσκω, *I run away, escape* (so as not to be found); fut. -δράσομαι, perf. -δέδρακα, 2 aor. ἀπ-έδραν.

ἀπο-δίδωμι, (Act.) *I give back, restore*, (Mid.) *I sell*, fut. -δώσω, perf. -δέδωκα, 2 aor. mid. ἀπ-εδόμην.

ἀπο-δρᾶναι, 2 aor. infin. of ἀπο-διδράσκω.

ἀπο-θνήσκω, *I die, I am put to death; fut. -θανοῦμαι, perf. -τέθνηκα, 2 aor. ἀπ-έθανον.* It is used instead of the passive of ἀπο-κτείνω, *I kill.*

ἀπ-οἶκος, -ον, *away from home*, (ἀπὸ, and οἶκος *home*); hence a *colonist.*

ἀπο-καίω, *I burn off; ἀπ-εκαίοντο αἱ ῥῖνες, their noses were being frozen off* (or *frost-bitten*); fut. -καύσω.

ἀπο-κάμνω, *I grow quite weary, faint; fut. -καμοῦμαι, perf. -κέκμηκα, 2 aor. ἀπ-έκαμον.*

ἀπο-κρίνομαι, *I answer, reply; fut. -κρινοῦμαι, 1 aor. -εκρινάμην, perf. -κέκριμαι.*

ἀπο-κρύπτω, (Act.) *I hide from*, (Mid.) *I conceal; fut. -κρύψω, 1 aor. ἀπ-έκρυφα.*

ἀπο-κτείνω, *I put to death, kill; fut. -κτενῶ, 1 aor. ἀπ-έκτεινα, 2 aor. ἀπ-έκτανον.* [For the Pass. ἀπο-θνήσκω is used.]

ἀπο-λαμβάνω, *I take back, receive back, recover; fut. -λήψομαι, perf. ἀπ-είληφα, 2 aor. ἀπ-έλαβον.*

ἀπο-λείπω, *I leave behind, desert, abandon; fut. -λείψω, perf. -λέλοιπα, 2 aor. ἀπ-έλιπον.*

ἀπ-όλλυμι, (Act.) *I destroy, kill*, (Mid.) *I perish; fut. ἀπ-ολῶ, 1 aor. ἀπ-ώλεσα, 2 aor. mid. ἀπ-ωλόμην, 2 perf. ἀπ-όλωλα, I am undone.*

Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος, acc. Ἀπόλλω, m. the god *Apollo.*

ἀπο-πέμπω, *I send off, discharge; fut. -πέμψω.*

ἀπο-πλέω, *I sail away; fut. -πλεύσομαι, 1 aor. ἀπ-έπλευσα.*

ἀ-πορέω, *I am without resources, am in difficulties* (ἀ-πορος).

ἀπορία, -as, f. *difficulty, distress.*
(τροφῆς ἀπορία, *want of food.*)

ἀπορος, -ον, (1) *without resources;*
(2) *of rivers, etc., impassable;*
ἐν ἀπόροις εἶναι, *to be in difficulties.*

ἀπο-ρρώξ, -ῶγος, *broken off, steep, rugged.* (ἀπὸ, *off*, and ῥήγνυμι, *I break*).

ἀπο-σῆπομαι, *I rot off, am frost-bitten;* 2 perf. ἀπο-σέσηπα.

ἀπο-σπάω, *I draw away, draw off;*
fut. σπάσω, perf. ἀπ-έσπακα, perf.
pass. -έσπασμαι.

ἀπο-σταυρόω, *I fence off with a palisade;* fut. -σταυρώσω. (σταυρὸς, *a palisade*.)

ἀπο-στέλλω, *I send away, despatch;*
fut. -στελῶ, 1 aor. ἀπ-έστειλα.

ἀπο-στερέω, *I rob, deprive of;* (with
acc. and gen. or with double acc.);
perf. ἀπ-εστέρηκα.

ἀπο-στρέφω, *I turn back, recall;* fut.
-στρέψω, perf. ἀπ-έστροφα.

ἀπο-σώζω, *I save or restore again, bring back safe.*

ἀπο-ταφρεύω, *I fence off with a ditch.* (τάφρος, *a ditch*.)

ἀπο-τείνω, *I stretch out, extend;* fut.
-τενῶ, 1 aor. ἀπ-έτεινα, perf. pass.
ἀπο-τέταμαι.

ἀπο-τέμνω, *I cut off;* fut. -τεμῶ, perf.
-τέτμηκα, 1 aor. pass. ἀπ-ετμήθην,
2 aor. ἀπ-έταμον.

ἀπο-τρέπω, *I turn back, turn away;*
perf. -τέτροφα, perf. pass. -τέτραμ-
μαι.

ἀπο-τρέχω, *I run off, run away;*
fut. -δραμῶμαι, 2 aor. ἀπ-έδρα-
μον.

ἀπο-φαίνω, *I show, display;* fut. -φανῶ,
1 aor. ἀπ-έφηνα. (Mid.), *I declare*
(τὴν γνώμην).

ἀπο-φεύγω, *I escape;* fut. -φεύξομαι,
2 aor. ἀπ-έφυγον.

ἀπό-φηναι, 1 aor. imp. middle of ἀπο-
φαίνω.

ἀπο-χωρέω, *I depart from, retire, retreat.*

ἀπ-ών, -όντος, *distant;* pres. part. of
ἀπ-εἰμι II.

ἄρα, (particle), *so, therefore, then.*
(Lat. *igitur*.)

ἄρα, = Lat. *num*, in asking a question,
as ἄρά ἐστι, *is it so?*

Ἀραβία, -as, f. *Arabia*, used of all
countries inhabited by nomad Arabs,
so even of the south of Mesopota-
mia, still called Irak-al-Arabi.

ἀργός, -όν, *idle, lazy.* (ἀ, *not*, and
ἔργον, *work*.)

ἀργός, -ή, -όν, *white, bright.*

ἀργύρεος, -α, -ον, *made of silver.*

ἀργύριον, -ου (dim. of ἄργυρος), *silver, money.* [Cp. the French *argent*.]

ἄργυρος, -ον, m. *silver.*

ἀρετή, -ῆς, f. *virtue, excellence, bravery.*

Ἀριαῖος, -ου, m. *Ariæus*, who com-
manded under Cyrus, but went over
to the Persians after Cyrus' death.

ἀριθμός, -οῦ, m. *number (of an army), a muster.*

Ἀρίσταρχος, -ου, m. *Aristarchus*, the
Spartan 'harmost' or governor of
Byzantium (Constantinople).

ἀριστάω, *I breakfast, lunch;* fut. ἀρι-
στήσω. (Lat. *prandeo*.)

ἀριστερός, -ά, -όν, *the left.* (ἐν
ἀριστερᾷ, *on the left hand*.)

ἄριστον, ου, n. *the morning or mid-
day meal, breakfast, lunch.*

ἀριστο-ποιέω, (Act.) *I prepare break-
fast or lunch, (Mid.) I breakfast,
lunch;* fut. -ποιήσω.

ἄριστος, *best*, used as superlative of
ἀγαθός.

Ἀριστώνυμος, -ου, m. *Aristonymus*,
a brave Arcadian captain (V. 265).

Ἀρκάς, -άδος, *an Arcadian.*

ἀρκέω, *I am sufficient, avail;* fut.
ἀρκέσω.

ἄρκτος, -ου, m. and f. *a bear, the
constellation 'Ursa Major,' or the
Great Bear, hence the north.*

ἄρμα, -ατος, n. *a chariot.*

ἄρμ-άμαξα, -ῆς, f. *a covered carriage,
waggonette.*

Ἀρμενία, -as, f. *Armenia*, the cold

mountainous country near the sources of the Euphrates.

Ἄρμῆνη, -ης, f. *Harmene*, harbour of Sinope (VI. 371).

ἄρμωστής, -οῦ, m. an officer sent by the Spartans to govern their dependencies, *a governor*, 'harmost.' (ἀρμόζω, *I put in order*.)

ἄρπαγή, -ῆς, f. *plunder, booty*.

ἄρπάζω, *I seize, plunder, carry off*; fut. ἀρπάσω, perf. pass. ἤρπασμαι.

Ἄρπασος, -ου, m. the river *Harpasus*, perhaps a branch of the Armenian Araxes, now the Arpa-Chai. Or the Tchoruk-Su, flowing north-westward into the Euxine near the modern town of Batoum. (See note to V. 277).

Ἄρταγέρσης, -ου, m. *Artagereses*, a general of the Persian cavalry whom Cyrus killed (II. 73).

Ἀρταξέρξης, -ου, m. *Artaxerxes II*, Mnemon, the son of Darius II, Nothus: king of Persia 405-360, B.C. (Artaxerxes I, Longimanus, preceded Darius II.)

Ἄρταπάτης, -ου, m. *Artapates*, one of Cyrus' attendants (I. 278).

Ἄρτεμις, -ιδος, f.: (1) the Greek *Artemis*, Roman *Diana*, sister of Apollo, armed with arrows: (2) the Ephesian *Artemis*, an Asiatic Venus.

ἄρτι, (adv.) *just now, lately*.

ἄρτος, ου, m. *bread, a loaf*.

Ἀρύστας, ου, m. *Arystas*, an Arcadian (VIII. 207).

ἀρχαῖος, -α, -ον, *old, ancient*; ὁ ἀρχαῖος, *the elder*; τὸ ἀρχαῖον, *formerly*. (ἀρχή, *beginning*.)

ἀρχή, -ῆς, f. (1) *beginning*; (2) *rule, dominion, government, province*.

ἄρχω, (Act.) *I command*, (Mid.) *I begin*; οἱ ἄρχοντες, *the rulers*; fut. ἄρξω, perf. ἤρξα.

ἄ-σεβής, -ές, *ungodly, impious*. (ἄ, *not*, and σέβομαι, *I worship*.)

ἄ-σθενέω, *I am weak, am sick, am ill*. (ἄ, *not*, and σθενέω, *I am strong*.)

Ἀσία, -as, f. *Asia*, or rather the western part of Asia then known, divided by the river Halys.

Ἀσιδάτης, -ου, m. *Asidates*, a Persian noble (VIII. 510).

Ἀσιναῖος, -α, -ον, *Asinean*, or belonging to Asine, a town in Laconia near Taenarus.

ἄ-σιτος, -ον, *without food*. (ἄ, *not*, and σίτος, *food*.)

ἀσκός, -οῦ, m. *a leather-bag, a bottle*.

ἄσμενος, -η, -ον, *pleased, glad, joyful*.

ἀσπάζομαι, *I welcome, embrace, bid farewell*; fut. ἀσπάσομαι.

ἀσπίς, -ίδος, f. *a large shield*, covering the whole body. (Lat. *clypeus*.)

ἀ-σφαλεία, -as, *safety* (ἀ-σφαλής).

ἀ-σφαλής, -ές, *safe*, lit. 'not liable to trip.' (ἄ, *not*, and σφάλω, *I trip up*.)

ἀ-σφαλῶς, *safely*, (adv. of ἀσφαλής.)

ἄ-τακτος, -ον, *undisciplined, in disorder*. (ἄ, *not*, and τάττω, *I arrange*.)

ἄ-ταξία, -as, f. *want of discipline, disorder*.

ἀτάρ, *but, however*, (conj.) introducing a correction of what has been said before. (Lat. *at*.)

ἀτμίζω, *I steam or smoke*. (ἀτμός, *steam*.)

ἀ-τριβής, -ές, *untrodden*, lit. 'not rubbed.' (ἄ, *not*, and τρίβω, *I rub*.)

αὖ, (adv.) *again; on the contrary; moreover*.

αὖθις, (adv.) *again*.

αὐλέω, *I play on the flute*. (αὐλός, *a flute*.)

αὐλίζομαι, *I am in the courtyard or the open air, I bivouac*. (αὐλή, *a courtyard*); fut. αὐλίσομαι, perf. ἠύλισμαι, I aor. pass. ἠύλίσθην.

αὐλός, -οῦ, m. *a flute, flageolet*. (ἄημι, *I blow*.)

αὐξάνω, *I increase*; fut. αὐξήσομαι, perf. ἠύξηκα. (Lat. *augeo*, in transitive sense.)

αὔριον, (adv.) *to-morrow*.

αὐτίκα, (adv.) *immediately*; αὐτίκα μάλα, *instantly*.

αὐτόθεν, (adv.) *from the spot.*

αὐτόθι, (adv.) *on the spot.*

αὐτό-ματος, -η, -ον, *acting of oneself, of one's own account, spontaneous; ἐκ τοῦ αὐτο-μάτου, naturally.*

αὐτό-μολος, -ου, m. *a deserter.* (αὐτός, *of oneself* and *μολεῖν*, 2 aor. of *βλώσκω*, *I go*.)

αὐτός, -ή, -ό, (reflex. pron.) *self; ὁ αὐτός (αὐτός), the same*, neut. τὸ αὐτὸ, contr. ταυτόν.

αὐτοῦ, (adv.) *there.*

αὐχὴν, -ένος, m. *neck, also a neck of land, isthmus.*

ἄφ-αιρέω, (Act.) *I take away*, (Mid.) *I rescue*; fut. -αιρήσω, perf. -ήρηκα, 2 aor. ἄφ-είλον.

ἄ-φανίζω, *I cause to disappear, put out of the way.* (ἄ, *not*, and φαίνω, *I show*.)

ἄφ-ελέσθαι, ἄφ-ελόμενος, 2 aor. mid. infin. and part. of ἄφ-αίρέω.

ἄφ-ήσω, fut. act. of ἄφ-ίημι.

ἄ-φθονία, -as, f. *abundance, plenty.* (ἄ-φθονος.)

ἄ-φθονος, -ον, *ungrudging, plentiful.* (ἄ, *not*, and φθόνος, *grudge*.)

ἄφ-ίημι, *I send away, dismiss, let go.* (ἀπὸ, *away*, and ἵημι, *I send*); fut. ἄφ-ήσω, 1 aor. ἄφ-ήκα, perf. ἄφ-εῖκα, perf. pass. ἄφ-εῖμαι.

ἄφ-ικνέομαι, *I come to, arrive, reach*; fut. ἄφ-ίξομαι, perf. pass. ἄφ-ῖγμαι, 2 aor. ἄφ-ικόμην.

ἄφ-ιστημι, (Act.) *I put away, set aside*; fut. ἀπο-στήσω, 1 aor. ἀπ-έστησα, Mid. and intrans. tenses of Act. *I stand off, revolt*, 2 aor. ἀπ-έστην, perf. ἀφ-έστηκα.

ἄ-φρων, -ον, *without sense, silly.* (ἄ, *not*, and φρῆν, *sense*.)

Ἀχαιός, -ά, -όν, *Achaean, a native of the north coast of Peloponnesus.*

ἄχθομαι, *I am displeased, am vexed*; fut. ἀχθέσομαι, perf. ἤχθημαι, 1 aor. pass. ἤχθέσθην.

B.

Βαβυλών, -ῶνος, f. *Babylon*, on the Euphrates, the capital of the Persian Empire.

Βαβυλωνία, -as, f. *Babylonia*, the flat country between the Tigris and Euphrates in their lower course.

Βαβυλώνιος, -α, -ον, *Babylonian.*

βάδην, (adv.) *slowly.* (βαίνω, *I go*.)

βαδίζω, *I walk slowly* (opposed to τρέχω, *I run*).

βαθὺς, -εῖα, -ύ, *deep.*

βαίνω, *I go, depart*; fut. βήσομαι, perf. βέβηκα, 2 aor. ἔβην.

βακτηρία, -as, f. *a staff.*

βάλλω, *I throw, hit* (with stones); fut. βαλῶ, perf. βέβληκα, perf. pass. βέβλημαι, 2 aor. ἔβαλον.

βαρβαρικός, -ή, -όν, *barbarian* (applied to all who did not speak Greek).

βάρβαρος, -ον, *strange, barbarian, foreigner* (not Greek).

βαρέως, (adv.) *heavily*; βαρέως φέρειν τι, *to be annoyed at, to take a thing ill.* β. ἀκούειν, *to be annoyed at hearing.*

βάς, 2 aor. part. of βαίνω.

βασίλειᾱ, -as, f. *a queen.*

βασιλείᾱ, -as, f. *kingly power, kingdom, sovereignty.*

βασίλειος, -ον, *of or belonging to a king, royal* (βασιλεύς); βασιλείον (δῶμα), *a palace*, gen. in plural.

βασιλεύς, -έως, m. *a king.*

βασιλεύω, *I am king, I reign*; fut. βασιλεύσω.

βάσιμος, -ον, *passable.* (βαίνω, *I go*.)

βέβλημαι, perf. pass. of βάλλω.

βέλος, -ους, n. *a missile, dart, arrow.* (βάλλω, *I throw*.)

βέλτιστος, *best*, used as superl. of ἀγαθός; comp. βελτίων, *better.*

βῆμα, -ατος, n. *a step, pace* (= 30 inches).

βῆναι, 2 aor. infin. act. from βαίνω.

βία, -as, f. *force, violence*; βίᾱ, *by force.*

βιάζομαι, *I force, compel*; fut. βιάσομαι; perf. βεβίασμαι.

βίαιος, -ον, and -α, -ον, *forcible, violent.* (βία, *force.*)

Βιθυνοί, -ων, m. *the Bithynians*, Thracian colonists in Asia Minor, East of the Bosphorus (VIII. 162).

βίος, -ου, m. *life.*

βιοτεύω, *I live, get a living.*

Βισάνθη, -ης, f. *Bisanthe*, a town in Thrace on the Propontis, afterwards called Rhaedestus, whence its modern name Rodosto. It is one of the best harbours on the northern coast of the Sea of Marmora.

βλακεύω, *I am slack, am lazy.*

βλάπτω, *I hurt, injure*; fut. βλάψω, perf. pass. βέβλαμμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐβλάφθην, 2 aor. pass. ἐβλάβην.

βλέπω, *I see, look, behold*; fut. βλέψω.

βληθείην, 1 aor. pass. opt. of βάλλω.

βοάω, *I shout*; fut. βοήσομαι, 1 aor. ἐβόησα.

βοή, -ης, f. *a shout, battle cry.*

βοηθέω, *I run to the rescue, assist*; fut. βοηθήσω.

Βοιώτιος, -α, -ον, *Boeotian*, or inhabitant of Boeotia.

βόθρος, -ου, m. *a ditch, trench.*

βουλεύω, (Act.) *I devise a plan*, (Mid.) *I take counsel, deliberate, resolve*; fut. βουλεύσω. (βουλή, *counsel.*)

βου-λιμιάω, *I suffer from ravenous hunger*; fut. βου-λιμιάσω. (βοῦς, *an ox*, λιμὸς, *hunger.*)

βούλομαι, *I wish, desire*; fut. βουλήσομαι, perf. βεβούλημαι.

βοῦς, βοῶς, m. and f. *an ox, cow.*

βραδέως, *slowly*, adv. from βραδὺς, *slow.*

βραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *short*. Comp. βραχύτερος, superl. βραχύτατος.

βρέχω, *I wet*; perf. pass. βέβρεγμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐβρέχθην.

βροντή, -ης, f. *thunder.*

βρωτός, -ή, -όν, *eatable*; τὸ βρωτὸν, *food* (verb adj. of βρώσκω, *I eat*).

Βυζάντιον, -ον, n. *Byzantium* on the Bosphorus (the modern Constantinople), so called after its founder, Byzas of Megara.

βῶ, 2 aor. subj. from βαίνω.

βωμός, -οῦ, m. *a raised place, an altar.*

Γ.

γαλήνη, -ης, f. *a calm.*

γάρ, *for* = γὰρ, never at the beginning of a sentence, like Lat. *enim*; καὶ γὰρ, *for also, for even.*

Γαυλίτης, -ου, m. *Gaulites*, an exile from the island of Samos (I. 300).

γέ, *at least, indeed, in truth.*

γεγέννημαι, perf. from γίγνομαι.

γείτων, -ονος, m. and f. *a neighbour.*

γελάω, *I laugh*; fut. γελάσομαι, 1 aor. ἐγέλασα.

γέλως, -ωτος, *laughter.* (γελάω, *I laugh.*)

γελωτο-ποιός, -όν, *producing laughter, a buffoon.* (γέλως, *laughter*, and ποιέω, *I make.*)

γένος, -ους, n. *birth, race, descent, offspring.* (γίγνομαι, *I am born.*)

γέρρον, ου, n. *a wicker shield* (covered with oxhide).

γέρων, -οντος, m. *an old man.*

γεύω, (Act.) *I give to taste*; (Mid.) *I taste*; fut. γεύσομαι.

γέφυρα, -ας, f. *a bridge.*

γεώδης, -ες, *earth-like, earthy.* (γῆ, *earth*, and εἶδος, *form.*)

γῆ, γῆς, f. *the earth, land, country.*

γίγνομαι, *I come into being, am born, become*; fut. γενήσομαι, perf. γεγέννημαι, 2 aor. ἐγενόμην, 2 perf. γέγονα. *γενέσθαι*, *to prove oneself by act* (to be distinguished from εἶναι, *to be*).

γιγνώσκω, *I get a knowledge of, learn, judge*; fut. γνώσομαι, perf. ἔγνωνκα, 2 aor. ἔγνων.

Γλοῦς, -οῦ, m. *Glūs*, the son of Tamos: he accompanied Cyrus, and then joined Artaxerxes (II. 117).

γνούς, 2 aor. part. of γινώσκω.

γνώμη, -ης, f. *judgment, sense, opinion, intention.*

γνώσομαι, future of γινώσκω.

Γογγύλος, -ου, m. *Gongylus*, a Euboean from Eretria, who had been presented with Pergamus by Xerxes (VIII. 509).

γονεός, -έως, a *father*. In plural οἱ γονεῖς, *parents*.

γράφω, *I write*; fut. γράψω, perf. γέγραφα, perf. pass. γέγραμμαι.

γυμνάζω, *I train, exercise, practise*; fut. γυμνάσω.

γυμνής, -ήτος, m. a *light-armed foot-soldier*.

Γυμνίας, *Gymnias*, the chief city of the Scythini, probably between the mountains west of the Taochi (V. 278).

γυμνικός, -ή, -όν, *gymnastic*.

γυμνός, -ή, -όν, *naked, lightly clad*.

γυνή, γυναικός, f. a *woman, wife*; voc. γύναι, dat. pl. γυναιξί.

Δ.

δακρύω, *I weep*; fut. δακρύσω. (δάκρυ, a *tear*.)

δάκτυλος, -ου, m. a *finger*. δάκτυλος τοῦ ποδός, a *toe*.

δαπανάω, *I spend, waste*; fut. δαπανήσω. (δαπάνη, *expense*.)

δαρεικός, -οῦ, m. a *Daric*, i.e. a Persian gold coin first coined by Darius, in value about 16s. Coins are often called after rulers, as 'Napoleon,' 'Louis d'or,' 'sovereign.'

Δαρείος, -ου, ὁ, *Darius II*, Nothus, king of Persia 423–405, B. C. (Darius I, Hystaspes, preceded Xerxes, and sent the expedition to Marathon. Darius III, Codomannus, was defeated by Alexander the Great.)

δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *thick, hairy, rough, bushy*.

δέ, *but* (answering to μέν); *and* (connecting two clauses), *now* (continuing a narrative).

δέδεμαι, perf. pass. of δέω, *I bind*.

δεδιώς, 2 perf. part. of δέιδω.

δέδογμαι, perf. pass. of δοκέω.

δέδοικα, perf. act. of δέιδω.

δέδομαι, perf. pass. of δίδωμι.

δεδράμηκα, perf. act. with pres. τρέχω.

δέη, subjunctive of δεῖ.

δεῖ, (impers.) *it is necessary*, (with gen.) *there is need of*; fut. δεήσει. (τὸ δέον, *necessity*.)

δεῖδω, *I fear*; fut. δέισομαι, 1 aor. ἔδεια, perf. δέδοικα, 2 perf. δέδια. δέδοικα μὴ, *I fear he will*, δέδοικα μὴ οὐ, *I fear he won't*.

δείκνυμι, *I show, explain*; fut. δείξω, perf. pass. δέδειγμαι.

δείλη, -ης, f. *the hottest part of the day, the afternoon*.

δειλός, -ή, -όν, *fearful, cowardly*. (δέος, *fear*.)

δεινός, -ή, -όν, *inspiring fear, terrible, dreadful*. δεινὸς λέγειν, *clever at speaking, a clever speaker*.

δεινῶς, adv. of δεινός, *terribly*. δεινῶς ἔχειν, *to be in straits*. (δέος, *fear*.)

δείξαι, 1 aor. infin. act. from δείκνυμι.

δειπνέω, *I take dinner or supper*; fut. δειπνήσω.

δειπνον, -ου, n. *dinner, supper* (the chief meal of the day).

δέκα, *ten* (indecl.). (Lat. *decem*.)

Δελφοί, -ῶν, m. *Delphi* in Phocis, celebrated for its oracle (IV. 16).

δένδρον, -ου, n. a *tree*.

δεξιός, -ά, -όν, *on the right hand* (Lat. *dexter*). ἡ δεξιὰ (χεῖρ), *the right hand*. δεξιὰν δοῦναι or λαβεῖν, *to give or take pledges*.

Δέξιππος, -ου, m. *Dexippus*, a Spartan, who got the Greeks into trouble with Cleander (VII. 244).

δέοι, opt. of δεῖ.

δέομαι, *I need, want, ask*; fut. δεήσομαι (with gen.).

δέρμα, -ατος, n. a *skin, hide*. (δέρω, *I flay*.)

δεσμός, -οῦ, m. a *bond, fetter*. (δέω, *I bind*.)

δεῦρο, (adv.) *hither*.

δεύτερος, -α, -ον, *second*. (δύο, *two*.)

δέχομαι, *I receive, accept*; fut. δέξομαι, perf. δέδεγμαι.

δέω, *I bind, fasten*; fut. δήσω, perf. δέδεκα, perf. pass. δέδεμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐδέθην.

δέω, *I need, want, request*; fut. δεήσω. (Cp. δεῖ and δέομαι.)

δή, *truly, assuredly*; τί δῆ, *why then?* Often emphasises a word, as ἐνταῦθα δῆ, *at this moment*, (Lat. *tum demum*.)

δῆλος, -η, -ον, *clear, certain, evident*.

δηλώω, *I make clear, show, point out, declare*; fut. δηλώσω, perf. δεδήλωκα. (δῆλος, *clear*.)

δημαγωγέω, *I lead the people, am popular with* (with accus.). (δῆμος, *the people*, and ἄγω, *I lead*.)

δημόσιος, -α, -ον, *belonging to the people, public*. τὰ δημόσια, *public property*.

δήπου, (adv.) *of course, doubtless*.

διά, prep. with gen. and acc. I. with gen. i. of place, *through*; ii. of time, *through, during*, as διὰ νυκτός, *during night*; iii. of the instrument, *by means of*. II. with accus. *because of, on account of*, as διὰ τὸ, *why?* lit. 'on account of what?' [Obs. διὰ σοῦ, 'by your means,' διὰ σέ, 'for your sake.'] In Composition, *through, thoroughly, separately* (Lat. *dis-*) as δια-τίθημι, 'I place separately,' i.e. 'dispose' (Lat. *dis-pono*); across, as in δια-βαίνω.

δια-βαίνω, *I go through, cross; walk about*; fut. -βήσομαι, perf. -βέβηκα, 2 aor. δι-έβην.

δια-βάλλω, lit. *I throw or carry over*; (metaphorically) *I tear in pieces a man's character, i.e. slander*.

διά-βασις, -εως, f. *a going over, passage, ford* (of a river).

δια-βατέος, *that must be crossed*. δια-βατέον ἐστὶ, *we must cross*.

δια-βατός, -ή, -όν, *that can be crossed, passable* (verbal adj. of δια-βαίνω).

δια-βιβάζω, *I carry over, carry across*; fut. -βιβάσω.

δι-αγγέλλω, *I send a message, inform*; fut. δι-αγγελῶ, perf. δι-ήγγελκα, 1 aor. δι-ήγγειλα.

δι-αγκυλόω, *I hold the javelin by the thong ready to shoot*. (διὰ, and ἀγκύλη, *the thong of a javelin*.)

δι-άγω, (1) *I carry across*; (2) *I pass, spend* (my life); fut. δι-άξω, perf. pass. -ῆγμαι.

δια-δίδωμι, *I give from hand to hand, distribute*; fut. -δώσω.

διά-δοχος, -ου, m. and f. *taking another's place, a successor*. (διὰ, and δέχομαι, *receive*.)

διά-κειμαι, *I am in a certain state, am disposed*. φιλικῶς διακεῖσθαι, *to be friendly disposed* (=pass. of δια-τίθημι, *I dispose*).

δια-κελεύομαι, *I exhort, encourage, cheer on*; fut. -κελεύσομαι.

δια-κλάω, *I break in pieces*; imperf. -έκλων, 1 aor. -έκλᾶσα.

δια-κόπτω, *I cut through*; fut. -κόψω.

δια-κόσιοι, -αι, -α, *two hundred*.

δια-λαγχάνω, *I divide by lot*; fut. -λήξομαι, 2 aor. δι-έλαχον.

δια-λέγω (Act.), *I pick out*, (Mid.) *I discourse, converse* (with dat.); fut. -λέξομαι.

δι-αμ-περές, (adv.) *through and through, right through*. (διὰ, ἀνὰ, and πείρω, *I pierce*.)

δια-νοέομαι, *I think over, intend, purpose*; fut. -νοήσομαι, perf. -νενόημαι, 1 aor. pass. δι-ενοήθην. (διὰ, and νοῦς, *the mind*.)

διά-νοια, -ας, f. *thought, purpose, intention*.

δια-πλέω, *I sail over, sail across*; fut. -πλεύσομαι, perf. pass. -πέπλευσμαι.

δια-πορεύω, (Act.) *I carry over*, (Mid.) *I pass across, march through*.

δια-πράττω, (Act.) *I accomplish*, (Mid.) *I stipulate, manage, negotiate*; fut. -πράξω, perf. pass. -πέπραγμαi.

δι-αρπάζω, *I tear in pieces, spoil, plunder*; fut. -αρπάσω, perf. pass. -ήρπασμαι.

δια-ρρίπτω, *I throw about, scatter.*

διά-ρριψις, -εως, f. *a scattering about.*

δια-σημαίνω, *I point out, indicate*; fut. -σημᾶνῶ, 1 aor. δι-εσήμηνα.

δια-σκηνέω, (trans.) *I place in separate tents*, (intrans.) *I encamp separately.*

δια-σπάω, *I tear asunder, scatter*; fut. -σπάσομαι.

δια-σπείρω, *I scatter about, disperse*; fut. -σπερῶ, 2 aor. pass. δι-εσπάρην.

δια-σφενδονάω, (Act.) *I scatter as by a sling*, (Pass.) *I fly in pieces, as if hurled from a sling.* (σφενδόνη, *a sling.*)

διά-σχοιμι, 2 aor. opt. from δι-έχω.

διά-σχω, 2 aor. subj. from δι-έχω.

δια-σώζω, *I preserve to the end.* (διὰ, *throughout*, and σώζω, *I preserve.*)

δια-τίθημι, (Act.) *I place separately, arrange in order*; (Mid.) *I dispose of*; fut. -θήσω.

δια-τρίβω, *I wear away, spend, waste* [χρόνον], (Lat. *tempus terere*); *delay*; fut. -τρίψω, 2 aor. pass. διε-τρίβην.

δια-φανῶς, (adv.) *manifestly, plainly.* (διὰ, *through*, and φαίνω, *I show.*)

δια-φέρω, (1) *I carry over*; (2) intrans. *I differ from, excel*; (impers.)

διαφέρει, *there is a difference*; (Mid.) *I quarrel about* (ἀμφί τινος); fut. δι-οίσω, 2 aor. δι-ήνεγκον.

δια-φεύγω, *I flee through, escape safe away*; fut. -φεύξομαι.

δια-φθείρω, *I destroy, kill*; fut. -φθερῶ, perf. pass. δι-έφθαρμαι.

διδάξω, fut. act. of διδάσκω.

διδάσκαλος, -ου, m. *a teacher, master.*

διδάσκω, *I teach, inform, show*; fut. διδάξω, perf. δεδίδαχα, 1 aor. pass. ἐδίδαχθην.

διδόναι, pres. infin. from δίδωμι.

δίδωμι, *I give, offer*; fut. δώσω, perf.

δέδωκα, perf. pass. δέδομαι, 1 aor. ἔδωκα (2 aor. in plural, ἔδομεν, ἔδοτε, ἔδοσαν), 2 aor. mid. ἐδόμην.

δι-έκλων, imperf. indic. of δια-κλάω.

δι-ελαύνω, *I drive through, charge through*; fut. -ελάσω or -ελῶ.

δι-έρχομαι, *I go or pass through*; 2 aor. δι-ἦλθον.

δι-έφθαρμαι, perf. pass. of δια-φθείρω.

δι-έχω, *I divide*; (intrans.) *I am separated, am distant*; fut. δι-έξω or δια-σχήσω, 2 aor. δι-εσχον.

δι-ηγέομαι, *I go through a story, narrate*; fut. -ηγήσομαι.

δι-ηγκυλωμένος, perf. part. of δια-γκυλόω.

δι-ίστημι, (Act.) *I divide*, (Mid. and intransitive tenses of Act.) *I stand apart*; fut. δια-στήσω, 2 aor. δι-έστην.

δίκαιος, -α, -ον, *just, fair.* (δίκη, *justice.*)

δικαίως, (adv.) *justly, fairly, rightly.*

δίκη, -ης, f. *justice, right, also penalty.* δίκην λαβεῖν, or ἐπιθεῖναι, *to inflict punishment*, (Lat. *poenas sumere*); δίκην δοῦναι, or ἔχειν, *to suffer punishment* (Lat. *poenas dare*).

δινέω, *I whirl round.* (δίνη, *a whirl.*)

δι-ορύττω, *I dig through, break through*; fut. -ορύξω, perf. pass. -ορώρυγμαi, plupf. -ωρώρυγμην.

δῖς, (adv.) *twice.* (Lat. *bis*.)

δισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *two thousand.*

διφθέρα, -ας, f. *a prepared hide, leather bag, wallet.*

δίφρος, -ου, m. *properly the footboard of a war-chariot, hence a chariot, seat of a chariot, and generally a seat.*

δίχα, (adv.) *in two parts, apart*; ποιεῖν δίχα, *to divide.*

διώκω, *I pursue*; fut. διώξω.

δόγμα, -ατος, n. *a resolution, decree.*

δοίην, 2 aor. opt. act. of δίδωμι.

δοκέω, *I think*; (intrans.) *I seem*, (impers.) *δοκεῖ μοι, it seems good to me*; τὰ δεδογμένα, *resolutions*;

ἔδοξε ταῦτα, *these things were decided*; fut. δόξω, 1 aor. ἔδοξα, perf. pass. δέδογμαι.

δόλος, -ου, m. *craft, trick, deceit*. (Lat. *dolus*.)

δόμενος, 2 aor. mid. participle of δίδωμι.

δόξα, -ης, f. (1) *opinion*; (2) *renown, glory* (δοκέω).

δόξω, future of δοκέω.

δορκάς, -άδος, f. *a gazelle*, so called from its bright eyes, from δέρκομαι, *I see*.

δόρυ, -ατος, n. *a spear, lance*.

δορυ-φόρος, -ου, m. *a spear-man*; plur. *body-guards*. (δόρυ, *a spear*, and φέρω, *I bear*.)

δός, 2 aor. imperative of δίδωμι.

δόσθαι, 2 aor. infin. mid. of δίδωμι.

δοῦλος, -ου, m. *a slave*.

δοῦναι, 2 aor. infin. act. of δίδωμι.

δούς, 2 aor. participle of δίδωμι.

Δρακόντιος, -ου, m. *Dracontius*, a Spartan, president of the games at Trapezus (V. 328).

δραμεῖν, δραμών, 2 aor. inf. and part. with pres. τρέχω.

δραμοῦμαι, fut. with pres. τρέχω.

δρέπανον, -ου, n. *a scythe*. (δρέπω, *I pluck*.)

Δρίλαι, -ῶν, m. *the Drilae*, a people in Pontus, near Trapezus.

δρόμος, -ου, m. *a race, running*; *quick pace*, as in δρόμῳ θεῖν, *to run fast*. (ἔ-δραμ-ον 2 aor. with pres. τρέχω, *I run*.)

δύναμαι, *I have power, am able, can*; fut. δυνήσομαι, imperf. ἐδυνάμην, (2 pers. ἐδύνω,) also ἡδυνάμην.

δύναμις, -εως, f. (1) *power, means*; (2) *a force*, i. e. *troops*. (Lat. *copiae*.)

δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *powerful*. (δύναμαι, *I am able*.)

δυνήσομαι, fut. of δύναμαι.

δύνω, *I sink, set* (of the sun); fut. δύσομαι, 2 aor. ἔδυν.

δύο, δυοῖν, *two*. (Lat. *duo*.)

δυσμή, -ης, f. *a sinking, setting*. (δύνω, *I set*.)

δυσ-πάρ-ιτος, -ον, *hard to pass*. (δυσ-, *hard*, and πάρ-ειμι, *I pass*.)

δύσ-πορος, -ον, *hard to pass*. (δυσ-, *hard*, and πόρας, *a passing*.)

δύσ-χρηστος, -ον, *hard to use, useless, unserviceable*. (δυσ-, *hard*, and χράσμαι, *I use*.)

δύω, *I cause to enter*; fut. δύσω; (Mid. and intrans. tenses) *I sink, set*; 2 aor. ἔδυν.

δῶ, 2 aor. subj. act. of δίδωμι.

δώδεκα, *twelve*.

δωρέομαι, *I present with*; fut. δωρήσομαι. (δῶρον, *a gift*.)

δῶρον, -ου, n. *a gift, present*. (δίδωμι, *I give*.)

δώσω, future of δίδωμι.

E.

ἐ, gen. οἱ, dat. οἱ, (Lat. *se, sui, sibi*) *himself*, but used as personal pronoun, *him*.

ἐάν, (εἰ, ἂν) *if even, if* (always takes subj.).

ἐάν, pres. inf. of ἐάω.

ἐαυτόν, -ήν, -ό, *himself, herself, itself*.

ἐάω, *I let, permit, leave alone*; fut. ἐάσω, 1 aor. εἵασα.

ἐ-βαλον, 2 aor. of βάλλω.

ἐβδομήκοντα, *seventy*.

ἐ-βην, 2 aor. of βαίνω.

ἐ-βλήθην, 1 aor. pass. of βάλλω.

ἐ-βουλιμίασα, 1 aor. act. of βουλιμιάω.

ἐ-βόων, imperf. ind. of βοάω.

ἐγγύς, (adv.) *near, nearly*; compar. ἐγγύτερον and ἐγγυτέρω; superl. ἐγγύτατα and ἐγγυτάτω.

ἐ-γέλων, imperf. ind. of γελάω.

ἐ-γενόμην, 2 aor. of γίγνομαι.

ἐγ-καλέω, *I call in*; (with dat.) *bring a charge against*; fut. -καλέσω. (ἐν, and καλέω, *I call*.)

ἐγ-κειμαι. *I lie in, am placed in*; fut. -κείσομαι.

ἐγ-κέφαλος, -ον, *within the head*, sc. μυελός, *the pith* of the palm.

ἐ-γνων, 2 aor. of γιγνώσκω.

ἐγώ, pers. pron. *I*. Whenever inserted, it is emphatic, *I myself* (as opposed to some one else); ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ are also emphatic: μου, μοι, με, are the usual or non-emphatic forms.

ἐγώγε, *I for my part*.

ἐ-δαπάνων, impf. act. of δαπανάω.

ἐ-δεήθην, 1 aor. pass. of δέομαι, *I want*.

ἔ-δει, impf. of δεῖ.

ἔ-δειξα, 1 aor. of δείκνυμι.

ἔ-δεια, 1 aor. of δίδω.

ἔ-δησα, 1 aor. of δέω, *I bind*.

ἐ-δίδουν, for ἐδίδων, impf. of δίδωμι.

ἔδομαι, fut. with pres. ἐσθίω.

ἐ-δόμην, 2 aor. mid. of δίδωμι.

ἔ-δοξα, 1 aor. of δοκέω.

ἔ-δοσαν, 3 pl. 2 aor. of δίδωμι (ἔδωκα is used in the sing.).

ἔ-δραμον, 2 aor. with pres. τρέχω.

ἐ-δύνω, 2 sing. impf. of δύναμαι.

ἔ-δωκα, 1 aor. of δίδωμι.

ἔ-ζην, 2 aor. of ζάω.

ἔ-θανον, 2 aor. of θνήσκω.

ἔθελοντής, -οῦ, m. a volunteer.

ἔθέλω, *I wish, am willing*; fut. ἔθελήσω, 1 aor. ἤθελησα.

ἐ-θεώμην, impf. ind. of θεάομαι.

ἐ-θεώρουν, impf. ind. of θεωρέω.

ἔθνος, -ους, n. a nation, tribe.

εἰ, (conj.) *if* (with ind. and opt., never with the subj.): after verbs of deliberating (as βουλευέσθαι), *whether*; εἰ μὴ, *unless*.

εἰδείην, opt. of οἶδα.

εἰδέναι, infinitive of οἶδα.

εἶδον, 2 aor. with pres. ὁράω.

εἶδος, -ους, n. an appearance, form (ἰδεῖν used as 2 aor. of ὁράω).

εἶδω, subj. of οἶδα.

εἰδώς, participle of οἶδα.

εἰκάζω, *I make like, conjecture, guess*; fut. εἰκάσω.

εἰκός, εἰκότος, n. likely, reasonable (neuter of the participle of ἔοικα, shortened from εἰκοδς); ὥς εἰκοδς, *as is probable*.

εἴκοσι, twenty.

* εἴκω, see ἔοικα.

εἵ-λημμαι, perf. pass. of λαμβάνω.

εἵ-ληφα, perf. act. of λαμβάνω.

εἵλκον, impf. act. of ἔλκω.

εἵλόμην, *I chose*; 2 aor. mid. with pres. αἰρέω.

εἵλον, 2 aor. act. with pres. αἰρέω.

εἰμί, *I am*; fut. ἔσομαι, impf. ἦν; ἐστί μοι, *I have*; οὐκ ἐστί, *it is impossible*.

εἴμι, *I shall go* (Lat. *ibo*); imperf. ἦειν, imperat. ἴθι, infin. ἰέναι, verb.

adj. ἰτέον, *one must go*.

εἶπα, 1 aor. with pres. φημί.

εἰπόμην, impf. of ἔπομαι.

εἶπον, 2 aor. with pres. φημί.

εἵρασμαι, perf. pass. of ἐργάζομαι.

εἶργον, imperf. ind. of εἶργω.

εἶργω, *I shut out, exclude*; fut. εἶρξω.

εἶρηκα, *I have said*, perf. with pres. φημί; pf. pass. εἶρημαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐρρήθην.

εἰρήνη, -ης, f. peace.

εἰς, prep. with accus. only, I. of place, *into, to*; II. of time, as εἰς ἑσπέραν, *towards evening*; εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν, *for the next day*; III. with numerals, as εἰς ἑκατὸν, *up to a hundred*, i. e. *as much as a hundred*; IV. of purpose, *for, with regard to*, as εἰς τὸδε, *for this purpose*. In Composition, *into, to*.

εἷς, μία, ἓν; gen. ἐνδς, μιᾶς, ἐνδς, *one*.

εἰς-άγω, *I lead into, introduce*; fut. -άξω, 2 aor. -ήγαγον.

εἰς-ακοντίζω, *I throw javelins into*. (ἀκόντιον, a javelin.)

εἰς-δύομαι, *I enter into*; fut. -δύσομαι, 2 aor. εἰς-έδυν.

εἷς-εἰμι, *I go into, enter*.

εἷς-έρχομαι, *I come into, enter*; fut. -ελεύσομαι, 2 aor. -ἦλθον.

εἷς-οδος, -ου, f. an entrance. (εἷς, *into*, and ὁδός, *way*.)

εἰς-πηδάω, *I leap into*; fut. -πηδήσω.

εἰς-πίπτω, *I fall into; fall upon, attack*; fut. -πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έπεσον.

εἵστήκειν, *I was standing*; pluperf. of ἵστημι, but intrans. and used as the imperf. of ἑστήκα, *I stand*.

εἰς-τρέχω, *I run into*; 2 aor. εἰσ-έδραμον.

εἰς-φέρω, *I bring into, bring in*; fut. -οίσω, 1 aor. ἤνεγκα, 1 aor. pass. -ηνέχθην.

εἴσω, (adv.) *within*. (εἰς, *into*.)

εἶτα, (adv.) *afterwards, next, then*.

εἴ-τε, *whether* (followed by a second εἴ-τε, or, Lat. *sive . . sive*).

εἶχον, imperf. of ἔχω.

εἶωθα, *I am wont* (perfect with present meaning, from *ἔθω).

εἶων,, imperf. of εἶώ (contracted from εἶαον).

ἐκ (ἐξ before a vowel), prep. with gen. only, I. of place or origin, *out of, from*; II. of time, *from, after, since*, as ἐκ τούτου, *after this*; III. of result or accordance, *in consequence of, according to*, as ἐκ τῶν σπονδῶν, *according to the truce*. In Composition, *out of, from*.

ἐ-καθήμην, imperf. of κάθημαι (pluperf. in form, but κάθημαι is used as a pres., *I sit down*).

ἐκαστος, -η, -ον, *each*. (Lat. *quisque*.)

ἐκάστοτε, (adv.) *each time*.

ἐκάτερος, -α, -ον, *each of two*. (Lat. *uterque*.)

ἐκατέρωθεν, (adv.) *from both sides, on both sides*.

ἐκατόν, *a hundred*, indeclinable.

Ἑκατόνυμος, -ου, m. *Hecatonymus*, an envoy from Sinope (VI. 123).

ἐ-καύθην, 1 aor. pass. of καίω.

ἐ-καυσα, 1 aor. act. of καίω.

ἐκ-βαίνω, *I go out, disembark*; fut. -βήσομαι, 2 aor. ἐξ-έβην.

ἐκ-βάλλω, *I drive out, expel*; fut. -βαλῶ, 2 aor. ἐξ-έβαλον, 1 aor. pass. ἐξ-εβλήθην. (ἐκπίπτω is used for the Pass.)

ἐκ-βασίς, -εως, f. *a going out, egress, a pass*. (ἐκ, and βαίνω, *I go*.)

ἐκ-βοηθέω, *I march out to the rescue*; fut. -βοηθήσω.

ἐκ-γονος, -ον, *born of, sprung from*. (ἐκ, and γίγνομαι, *I am born*.) τὰ ἐκγονα, *the offspring, the young*.

ἐκ-δίδωμι, *I give up, give a daughter in marriage*.

ἐκ-δύω, *I strip off* (clothing); fut. ἐκ-δύσω, 1 aor. ἐξ-έδυσα.

ἐκεῖ, (adv.) *there, yonder*. (Lat. *illic*.)

ἐκεῖθεν, (adv.) *thence*. (Lat. *inde*.)

ἐ-κείμην, imperf. of κείμαι.

ἐκεῖνος, -η, -ο, *yonder man, that man*. (Lat. *ille*.)

ἐκεῖσε, (adv.) *thither*. (Lat. *illuc*.)

ἐ-κεκλείμην, pluperf. pass. of κλείω.

ἐκ-θέω, *I run out, sally forth*, imperf. ἐξ-έθεον.

ἐκ-θλίβω, *I push out, squeeze out*.

ἐκ-καλύπτω, *I uncover, unpack*; fut. -ψω, pf. pass. -μυαί.

ἐκ-κλησία, -ας, f. *an assembly, meeting*. (ἐκ, and καλέω, *I call*.)

ἐκ-κλίνω, *I bend aside*; intrans. (of soldiers) *bend out of line, give way*; fut. -κλινῶ.

ἐκ-κομίζω, *I carry out, fetch out*; 1 aor. ἐξ-εκόμισα.

ἐκ-κυβιστάω, *I throw a somersault*; imperf. ἐξ-εκυβίστων.

ἐκ-λέγω, *I pick out, select*; fut. ἐκ-λέξω, perf. pass. ἐξ-είλεγμαι, 1 aor. ἐξ-ελέχθην.

ἐκ-λείπω, trans. *I leave out, forsake*; intrans. *fail*. (Hence Eng. *ec-lipse*.)

ἐ-κλήθην, 1 aor. pass. of καλέω.

ἐκ-πέμπω, *I send out, send away*; fut. -ψω, 1 aor. ἐξ-έπεμψα.

ἐκ-πεσών, 2 aor. participle of ἐκ-πίπτω.

ἐκ-πηδάω, *I leap out, make a sally*; fut. -πηδήσομαι.

ἐκ-πίπτω, *I fall out, fall away, rush out; am driven out, am banished*; fut. -πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἐξ-έπεσον (used as pass. of ἐκ-βάλλω).

ἐκ-πλαγείς, 2 aor. pass. participle of ἐκ-πλήσσω.

ἐκ-πλέω, *I sail out, sail away*; fut. -πλεύσομαι, 1 aor. ἐξ-έπλευσα.

ἐκ-πλεως, -ων, *quite full, complete*. (ἐκ, *utterly*, and πλέος, *full*.)

ἐκ-πλήττω, (Act.) *I strike out* (of

- one's senses), *astonish*, (Pass.) *I am astonished, scared*; 2 aor. pass. ἐξ-επλάγην.
- ἐκ-πορεύομαι, *I go out, set out* (on a march); fut. -πορεύσομαι.
- ἐκ-πορίζω, *I contrive, provide, furnish*; 1 aor. ἐξ-επόρισα.
- ἐκ-πωμα, -ατος, n. *a drinking cup*: (πίνω, perf. πέπωκα, *I drink*.)
- ἐ-κρεμάμην, imperf. of κρέμαμαι (used as pass. of κρεμάννυμι).
- ἐ-κρινάμην, 1 aor. mid. of κρίνω.
- ἐ-κτανον, 2 aor. act. of κτείνω.
- ἐ-κτεινα, 1 aor. act. of κτείνω.
- ἐκ-τείνω, (Act.) *I stretch out*, (Mid.) *extend the line of an army*; fut. ἐκ-τενῶ, 1 aor. ἐξ-έτεινα, perf. pass. ἐκ-τέταμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐξ-ετάθην.
- ἐ-κτησάμην, 1 aor. of κτάομαι.
- ἐκ-τρέφω, *I rear, bring up* (a child); fut. -θρέψω, 2 aor. pass. ἐξ-ετράφην.
- ἐκ-τρέχω, *I run out, make a sally*; 2 aor. ἐξ-έδραμον.
- ἐ-κυλίνδουν, imperf. of κυλινδέω.
- ἐκὼν, -οὔσα, -όν, *of one's own accord, willingly*.
- ἐ-λαβον, 2 aor. of λαμβάνω.
- ἐ-λαθον, 2 aor. of λανθάνω.
- ἐλαία, -as, f. *the olive*.
- ἐλάσας, 1 aor. part. of ἐλαύνω.
- ἐλάττους, nom. or acc. pl. of ἐλάττων, contr. from ἐλάττονες, or ἐλάττονας.
- ἐλάττων, formed from ἐλαχὺς, used as comparative of μικρός.
- ἐλαύνω, *I drive, ride, march*; fut. ἐλάσω or ἐλῶ, 1 aor. ἤλασα, perf. ἐλήλακα, 1 aor. pass. ἤλάθην.
- ἐλάφειος, -ον, *belonging to a stag*. (ἐλαφος, *a stag*;) ἐλάφεια κρέα, *deer's flesh, venison*.
- ἐλαφρός, -ά, -όν, *light, active, nimble*.
- ἐλαφρῶς, (adv.) *lightly, nimbly*.
- ἐ-λαχον, 2 aor. of λαγχάνω.
- ἐλεῖν, 2 aor. infin. with pres. αἰρέω.
- ἐ-λείφθην, 1 aor. pass. of λείπω.
- ἐλέσθαι, 2 aor. infin. mid. with pres. αἰρέω.
- ἐλευθερία, -as, f. *freedom, liberty*.
- ἐλεύθερος, -α, -ον, *free*.
- ἐλ-ήλυθα, perf. with pres. ἔρχομαι.
- ἐ-λήφθην, 1 aor. pass. of λαμβάνω.
- ἐλθεῖν, 2 aor. infin. with pres. ἔρχομαι.
- ἐλθών, 2 aor. part. with pres. ἔρχομαι.
- ἐ-λιπον, 2 aor. of λείπω.
- Ἑλλάς, -άδος, f. *Hellas*, the name for Greece amongst the Greeks, who called themselves *Hellenes*.
- Ἕλλην, -ηνος, m. *a Greek*.
- Ἑλληνικός, -ή, -όν, (adj.) *Greek*.
- ἐλληνίζω, *I speak Greek*.
- Ἑλληνίς, -ίδος, f. *a Greek woman*. As an adj. with fem. nouns, *Greek*.
- Ἑλλήσποντος, -ου, m. (Ἑλλης πόντος, the sea of Hellē), the *Hellespont*, now the *Dardanelles*.
- ἐλοίμην, 2 aor. opt. mid. with pres. αἰρέω.
- ἐλόμενος, 2 aor. part. mid. with pres. αἰρέω.
- ἐλπίζω, *I hope or expect* (used either of hope or fear).
- ἐλπίς, -ίδος, f. *hope*.
- ἐλών, 2 aor. act. part. with pres. αἰρέω.
- ἐ-μαθον, 2 aor. of μαθάνω.
- ἐμαυτόν, -ήν, *myself* (reflexive pronoun); pl. ἡμᾶς αὐτούς.
- ἐμ-βαίνω, *I go in, go on board, embark*. (ἐμ- for ἐν- before β and π.)
- ἐμ-βάλλω, trans. *I throw in; inflict*; intrans. *rush in, invade*.
- ἐμ-βιβάζω, *I cause to enter, cause to embark, put on board* (transitive of ἐμ-βαίνω).
- ἐ-μεινα, 1 aor. of μένω.
- ἐ-μνήσθην, 1 aor. pass. of μιμνήσκω.
- ἐμός, -ή, -όν, *my, mine*; poss. adj. of ἐγώ.
- ἐμ-πεδῶ, *I make firm, abide firmly* by (ὅρκους, *oaths*); fut. ἐμ-πεδώσω.
- ἐμ-πειρία, -as, f. *skill, experience*.
- ἐμ-πειρος, -ον, *experienced, practised*. (ἐν, and πείρα, *experience*.)
- ἐμ-πιπράς, pres. part. of ἐμ-πίπρημι.
- ἐμ-πίπρημι, *I burn, set on fire*; fut. ἐμ-πρήσω, 1 aor. ἐν-έπρησα. (ἐν, and πίπρημι, of which μ is dropped where ἐμ- precedes.)

ἐμ-πίπτω, *I fall upon, attack*; fut. -πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἐν-έπεσον.

ἐμ-πόδιος, -ον, *in the way, a hindrance*. (ἐν, and ποῦς, *a foot*.)

ἐμ-ποιέω, *I make in, cause*; instil into the mind. fut. -ήσω.

ἐμ-πολάω, *I gain by traffic, sell*. (ἐμπολή, *traffic*.)

ἐμ-πορος, -ου, m. *a merchant, trader*.

ἐμ-προσθεν, (adv.) *before, in front*; τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, *the fore-parts*.

ἐν, prep., with dat. only:—I. of place, *in, on, among*; II. of time, *in, during*, as ἐν τούτῳ, *during this (time)*, i. e. *meanwhile*; III. *in the power of* (Lat. *penes*), as ἐν ἐμοί, *in my power*; IV. of condition, as ἐν φόβῳ, *in (a state of) fear*. In Composition, *in, at, upon*.

ἐν-αντίος, -α, -ον, *opposite, opposed to, hostile*; ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, *opposite (of place)*.

ἐν-αντιόομαι, *I set myself against, oppose*; fut. ἐναντιώσομαι.

ἐν-άπτω, *I kindle, set on fire*; fut. -άψω, perf. -ήμμαι (lit. *I fasten on, from ἐν, and ἄπτω, I fix*).

ἐν-δεῖα, -as, f. *want, deficiency*.

ἐνδοθεν, (adv.) *from the inside (of motion from within)*.

ἐνδον, (adv.) *inside (of rest in a place)*.

ἐν-δύω, trans. *I put on (some one else)*, 2 aor. intrans. ἐν-έδυν, *I put on (myself)*.

ἐν-έβην, 2 aor. of ἐμ-βαίνω.

ἐν-εβίβασα, 1 aor. of ἐμ-βιβάζω.

ἐν-εἰμι, *I am in*; imperf. ἐν-ἦν.

ἐνεκα, prep. with gen., *on account of, for the sake of*.

ἐν-εκάλουν, imperf. of ἐγ-καλέω.

ἐν-επίμπρασαν, imperf. 3 pl. of ἐμ-πίπρημι.

ἐνεκεν, the same as ἐνεκα, but used before a vowel.

ἐν-ἦψα, 1 aor. of ἐν-άπτω.

ἐνθα, (adv.) (of place) *here, there*; (of time) *thereupon, then*, also as relative adv., *where, when*; ἐνθα καὶ ἐνθα, *here and there*.

ἐνθάδε, (adv.) *thither, there, here*.

ἐνθαπερ, *where* (stronger form of ἐνθα).

ἐνθεν, *thence, hence*.

ἐν-θυμέομαι, *have in mind, consider*; fut. -ήσομαι, 1 aor. ἐν-εθυμήθην. (ἐν, and θυμός, *mind*.)

ἐν-θύμημα, -ατος, n. *a thought* (lit. *something in the mind, from ἐν and θυμός*).

ἐ-νίκων, imperf. of νικάω.

ἐνιοι, -αι, -α, *some*, = ἐνι οἱ, i. e. ἐν-εἰσιν οἱ, lit. *there are who*.

ἐνίστε, *sometimes*, = ἐνι ὅτε, i. e. ἐν-εστιν ὅτε, lit. *there is a time when*.

ἐν-νοια, -as, f. *thought, design*. (ἐν, and νοῦς, *the mind*.)

ἐ-νόησα, 1 aor. of νοέω.

ἐν-οχλέω, *I give trouble, annoy*; fut. ἐν-οχλήσω.

ἐνταῦθα, (adv.) (1) of place, *there, here*; (2) of time, *thereupon, then, now*.

ἐντεῦθεν, (adv.) (1) of place, *thence, hence*; (2) of time, *henceforth, thenceforth*; (3) *therefore*.

ἐν-τίμος, -ον, *held in honour, valuable*. (τιμή, *honour*.)

ἐν-τόνως, *earnestly* (lit. 'with an effort,' from ἐν, and τείνω, *I stretch or strain*).

ἐντός, (adv.) *inside, within* (of place or time) with gen. (ἐν).

ἐν-τυγχάνω, *I light upon, meet with*; fut. -τεύξομαι, 2 aor. ἐν-έτυχον.

ἐ-νυκτέρευσα, 1 aor. of νυκτερεύω.

ἐν-ωμοτάρχης, -ου, m. *a commander of 25 men*; lit. 'a commander of a band of sworn soldiers,' (from ἐν, and ὀμνυμι, *I swear*.)

ἐξ for ἐκ before vowels. See ἐκ.

ἕξ, *six*.

ἐξ-αγγέλλω, *I report*; fut. ἐξ-αγγελῶ, 1 aor. -ήγγειλα.

ἐξ-άγω, *I lead out*; fut. -άξω, 2 aor. -ήγαγον.

ἐξ-αίρετος, -ον, *taken out, chosen* (ἐξ and αἶρετος, verbal adj. of αἰρέω).

ἐξ-αίρετα, *choice portions*.

ἐξ-αίρῶ, (Act.) *I take out*, 2 aor.

-εἶλον: (Mid.) *I choose*, 2 aor. -εἰλόμην.
 ἔξ-αιτέω, (Act.) *I demand from* (anybody), (Mid.) *I beg off*; fut. -ήσω, 1 aor. -ήτησα.
 ἑξακίς-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *six-thousand*.
 ἑξακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *six-hundred*.
 ἔξ-αλαπάζω, *I sack, plunder*; fut. -ξω.
 ἔξ-άλλομαι, *I leap out*; (of a horse) *rear*; fut. -αλοῦμαι, 1 aor. -ηλάμην. (ἀλλομαι is Lat. *salio*.)
 ἔξ-αν-ίστημι, trans. *I make to rise* (in pres., imperf., fut., 1 aor.); fut. -ἀνα-στήσω; intrans. *I stand up* (2 aor., perf., plupf.), 2 aor. -αν-έστην.
 ἔξ-απατάω, *I deceive entirely*; fut. -απατήσω, 1 aor. pass. -ηπατήθην.
 ἔξαπίνης, (= ἐξαίφνης), *suddenly*.
 ἔξ-αυλίζομαι, *I leave my quarters, bivouac out of doors*. (αὐλή, *resting place for night*.)
 ἔξ-έθειν, imperf. of ἐκ-θέω.
 ἔξ-εἶν, opt. of ἔξ-εστί.
 ἔξ-εἶμι, *I go out, sally forth*. (ἐξ, and εἶμι, *ibo*.) Used as fut. of ἔξ-έρχομαι.
 ἔξ-εκόμισα, ἔξ-εκομισάμην, 1 aor. act. and mid. of ἐκ-κομίζω.
 ἔξ-εκυβίστα, imperf. 3rd sing. of ἐκ-κυβιστάω.
 ἔξ-ελαύνω, (trans.) *I drive out*, (intrans.) *ride out, march out*; fut. -ελάσω or -ελῶ.
 ἔξ-έλιπον, 2 aor. of ἐκ-λείπω.
 ἔξ-ένιζον, imperf. of ξενίζω.
 ἔξ-έρχομαι, *I go out, come out*; for the fut. ἔξ-εἶμι, 2 aor. ἔξ-ἦλθον.
 ἔξ-εστί, (impers.) *it is allowed, or possible*; part. ἔξ-ὄν, *it being possible*.
 ἔξ-έτασις, -εως, f. *an examination, review* (of troops). (ποιεῖν ἑξέτασιν, *to hold a review*.)
 ἔξ-ετράφην, 2 aor. pass. of ἐκ-τρέφω.
 ἑξήκοντα, *sixty*.
 ἔξ-ἦν, imperf. of ἔξ-εστί.
 ἔξ-ικνέομαι, *I arrive at, reach* (with gen.); fut. -ίξομαι, 2 aor. -ικόμην.
 ἔξ-ὄν, neut. pres. part. from ἔξ-εστί.
 ἔξ-οπλίζω, *I arm*, (Mid.) *I arm*

myself, go forth armed. (ὄπλα, *arms*.)
 ἔξω, fut. of ἔχω.
 ἔξω, (adv.) *without, outside*; also as prep. with gen. *outside of*.
 ἔξωθεν, (adv.) *from without*.
 ἔοικα, 2 perf. (formed from *εἶκω, which is not used). *I seem likely, it is probable that I* (neut. part. εἰκὸς, *probable*].
 ἔ-παθον, 2 aor. of πάσχω.
 ἐπ-αινέω, *I praise*; fut. -έσω or -έσομαι, 1 aor. -ἤνεσα.
 ἔπαινος, -ου, m. *praise*.
 ἔ-παιον, imperf. of παίω.
 ἐπ-αν-έρχομαι, *I come or go back, return*, 2 aor. -ἦλθον.
 ἐπάταξα, 1 aor. in use with the pres. πλήττω.
 ἐπεί, (conj.) *when, since*. [Distinguish from ἐπειτα.]
 ἐπειδάν = ἐπειδὴ ἂν, *whenever, always* with the subjunctive.
 ἐπειδή, strengthened form of ἐπεί.
 ἐπ-εἶμι, *I come upon, advance, attack*; ἡμέρα ἐπιούσα, *the following day*. (εἶμι, Lat. *ibo*.)
 ἐπ-εἶμι, *I am upon, am over* (a river). (εἶμι, Lat. *sum*.)
 [ἐπείρομαι], *I ask besides, ask*; fut. -ερήσομαι, 2 aor. -ηρόμην, inf. -ερέσθαι. (Pres. not used in Attic. See ἔρομαι and ἐρωτάω.)
 ἐπειτα, (adv.) *then, afterwards, thereupon*. [Distinguish from ἐπεί.]
 ἐπ-εμελούμην, imperf. of ἐπι-μελέομαι.
 ἐ-πε-πόνθειν, pluperf. of πάσχω, perf. to πέπονθα.
 ἐπ-έρχομαι, *I come upon, come to, proceed*; 2 aor. -ἦλθον. For the fut. ἐπ-εἶμι is used.
 ἔ-πεσον, 2 aor. of πίπτω.
 ἐπ-εστάτουν, imperf. of ἐπι-στατέω.
 ἐ-πηγνύμην, imperf. of πήγνυμι.
 ἐπ-ἤνεσα, 1 aor. of ἐπ-αινέω.
 ἐπί, prep. with gen., dat., and accus., I. With gen. of place, *on, upon*, after verbs of motion *towards*, lit. 'on the line of,' as πλεῖν ἐπὶ Σα-

μου, *to sail towards Samos*; ii. of time, as ἐπὶ Κύρου, *in the time of Cyrus*; iii. with numerals, as ἐπὶ τεττάρων, *four deep*, lit. *on a basis of four*. II. With dat. i. of place, *on, upon, at*; ii. of time, *at, on, in*; iii. of purpose, *for, with a view to*; iv. of condition, as ἐπὶ τούτοις, *on these conditions*, also *'besides this.'* III. With accus. i. of motion, *on to, against*; ii. of time, *for, during, up to*; iii. of purpose, *for*, as ἐπὶ τί; *'for what (purpose)?'* ἐπὶ δείπνον, *for supper*. In Composition, *upon, at, by, besides*. Before an aspirated vowel ἐπὶ becomes ἐφ', as ἐφ' ἵππου, *on horseback*.

ἐπ-ίασι, 3rd pl. pres. of ἐπ-εἰμι.

ἐπι-βαίνω, *I go to, go upon; mount*. 2 aor. ἐπ-έβην.

ἐπι-βάλλω, *I throw upon*; fut. -βαλῶ, perf. -βέβληκα. ἐπι-βεβλημένοι τοξόται, *archers with arrows on the string*. Lit. *'having put [arrows] on their [strings].'*

ἐπι-βουλεύω, *I plan or plot against*; fut. -εύσω.

ἐπιβουλή, -ῆς, f. *a plot, treachery*.

ἐπι-δείκνυμι, *I show, display*; fut. -δείξω, 1 aor. ἐπ-έδειξα.

ἐπ-ιδεῖν, 2 aor. inf. of ἐπ-εἶδον (pres. ἐφ-οράω).

ἐπι-δίδωμι, *I give besides*; fut. ἐπιδώσω, 1 aor. ἐπ-έδωκα.

ἐπι-διώκω, *I pursue after*; fut. -διώξω.

ἐπι-πιεζόμεν, imperf. mid. of πιέζω.

ἐπι-θυμέω, *I desire, covet*, with gen. (ἐπὶ and θυμός).

ἐπι-κάμπτω, *I bend in, (of troops) wheel round*; fut. -κάμψω.

ἐπί-κειμαι, (1) *I lie upon, am placed upon*; (2) *I assault, attack* (used as pass. of ἐπι-τίθημι).

ἐπι-κούρημα, -ατος, n. *help, protection*.

ἐπι-κράτεια, -ας, f. *cover, protection* (lit. *power over, from ἐπὶ, and κράτος, power*).

ἐπι-λαμβάνω, (Act. and Mid.) *I lay hold of, seize, with gen.*

ἐπι-λανθάνομαι (or ἐπι-λήθομαι), *I forget*; fut. ἐπι-λήσομαι, 2 aor. ἐπ-ελαθόμην, perf. ἐπι-λέλησμαι.

ἐπι-λείπω, (trans.) *I leave behind, (intrans.) I fail, am wanting*, 2 aor. -έλιπον.

ἐπίλεκτος, -ον, *chosen, picked*. (ἐπὶ, and λεκτός, verbal adj. of λέγω, *I choose*.)

ἐπι-μελέομαι, *I take charge of, look after*; fut. -μελήσομαι.

ἐπι-μελής, -ές, *careful, anxious*. Comp. -έστερος.

ἐπι-μένω, *I remain, wait*; fut. -μενῶ.

ἐ-πιον, 2 aor. of πίνω.

ἐπι-ορκέω, *I swear falsely, perjure myself*; fut. -ορκήσω.

ἐπι-ορκία, -ας, f. *a false oath, perjury*. (ὄρκος, *an oath*, ἐπὶ, *over (beyond) the truth*.)

ἐπι-πίπτω, *I fall upon, attack* (with dat.); 2 aor. ἐπ-έπεσον.

ἐπί-πονός, -ον, *laborious, troublesome, portending trouble*. (ἐπὶ, and πόνος, *labour*.)

ἐπι-ρρίπτω, *I throw upon*; 1 aor. ἐπ-έρριψα.

ἐπι-σιτίζομαι, *I procure provisions*; 1 aor. ἐπ-εσιτισάμην. (σίτος, *corn*.)

ἐπι-σπάω, *I drag or pull after*; fut. -σπάσω.

ἐπίσταμαι, *I know, understand*; imperf. ἡπιστάμην.

ἐπι-στατέω, *I stand over, have command over*. (ἐπιστάτης, *one who is set over*.)

ἐπι-στέλλω, *I send to, send tidings to; command*; fut. -στελῶ, 1 aor. ἐπ-έστειλα.

ἐπιστολή, -ῆς, f. *a letter, injunction*. (ἐπι-στέλλω.)

ἐπιτήδειος, -α, -ον, *suitable, necessary*. τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, *provisions, lit. the necessaries (of life)*.

ἐπι-τίθημι, (Act.) *I put on, (Mid.) I set upon, attack*; (ἐπι-κεῖμαι is used for the passive); fut. -θήσω.

ἐπι-τρέπω, *I entrust to, command, permit*; 1 aor. ἐπ-έτρεψα.

ἐπι-φαίνομαι, *I appear (near the spot), make my appearance*; fut. -φανοῦμαι.

ἐπι-χειρέω, *I put my hand to, attempt*; (ἐπὶ, and χεῖρ, a hand); fut. -ήσω.

ἐπι-χειρίζω, the same as ἐπιχειρέω; fut. -χειρίσω.

ἐπι-χέω, *I pour on or in.*

ἐ-πλευσα, 1 aor. of πλέω.

ἐ-πλήγην, 2 aor. pass. of πλήττω.

ἐ-πολέμουν, imperf. of πολεμέω.

ἐπομαι, *I follow, pursue*; fut. ἔψομαι, imperf. εἰπόμην, 2 aor. ἐσπόμην.

ἐ-πόνουν, imperf. of πονέω.

ἐπτά, seven. (Lat. septem.)

ἐπτακόσιοι, -αι, -α, seven hundred.

Ἐπύαξα, -ης, f. *Epyaxa*, queen of Cilicia, wife of Syennesis (I. 64).

ἐ-πυθόμην, 2 aor. of πυθάνομαι.

ἐργάζομαι, *I work, do*; fut. ἐργάσομαι, perf. ἐργασμαι. (ἔργον, work.)

ἔργον, -ου, n. *work, action*. ἔργῳ, *in deed, in fact*.

ἐρεῖν, fut. inf. with pres. φημί.

ἐρημία, -ας, f. *a desert, solitude*. (ἐρημος, lonely.)

ἐρημος, -ον, and -η, -ον, *lonely, desolate (with gen.)*; [hence Eng. 'hermit,' or 'hermit.']

ἐρμηνεύς, -έως, m. *an interpreter*. (Ἑρμῆς, Mercury.)

[ἔρομαι], *I ask (a question)*; fut. ἐρήσομαι, 2 aor. ἠρόμην. (ἑρωτάω is used instead of present.)

ἐρριψα, 1 aor. of ρίπτω.

ἐρύμα, -ατος, n. *a defence, fortification*.

ἐρυμνός, -ή, -όν, *fortified, strong*.

ἐρχομαι, *I come, go*; fut. εἶμι (ἐλεύσομαι), perf. ἐλήλυθα, 2 aor. ἦλθον.

ἐρωτάω, *I ask*; fut. -ήσω, 1 aor. ἠρώτησα. (See ἔρομαι.)

ἐ-σε-σώσμην, pluperf. pass. of σώζω.

ἐ-σήμηνα, 1 aor. of σημαίνω.

ἐσθῆς, -ῆτος, f. *dress*. (ἐννυμι, *I put on*). (Lat. vestis.)

ἐσθίω, *I eat*; fut. ἔδομαι, perf. ἐδήδοκα, 2 aor. ἔφαγον.

ἐ-σίγων, imperf. of σιγάω.

ἐ-σιώπων, imperf. of σιωπάω.

ἐ-σκεύασμαι, perf. pass. of σκευάζω.

ἐ-σκόπουν, imperf. of σκοπέω.

ἔσομαι, fut. of εἶμι. (Lat. sum.)

ἐ-σπάρην, 2 aor. pass. of σπείρω.

ἐ-σπαρμαι, perf. pass. of σπείρω.

ἐ-σπᾶσα, 1 aor. act. of σπάω.

ἐ-σπάσθην, 1 aor. pass. of σπάω.

ἐ-σπειρα, 1 aor. act. of σπείρω.

ἐ-σπεισα, 1 aor. act. of σπένδω.

ἐσπέρα, -ας, f. *evening*. (πρὸς ἐσπέραν, *towards the west*.)

ἐ-στάθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἵστημι.

ἔστασαν, 3 pl. pluperf. of ἵστημι (intrans.).^u

ἔστε, (conj.) *until*. (ἔστ' ἂν, *so long as*.)

ἐ-στειλα, 1 aor. act. of στέλλω.

ἔστηκα, perf. act. of ἵστημι. (Perf. intrans. *I stand*.)

ἐ-στην, 2 aor. act. of ἵστημι (intrans.).

ἐ-στησα, 1 aor. act. of ἵστημι (trans.).

ἐ-στιγμαι, perf. pass. of στίζω.

ἐ-στράφην, 2 aor. pass. of στρέφω.

ἐ-στρεψα, 1 aor. act. of στρέφω.

ἔστω, 3 sing. pres. imperat. of εἶμι.

ἔστώς, perf. participle of ἵστημι.

ἐ-σφάγην, 2 aor. pass. of σφάζω.

ἐ-σφενδόνων, imperf. of σφενδονάω.

ἔσχατος, -ον, *last, extreme*.

ἐ-σχόμην, 2 aor. mid. of ἔχω.

ἐ-σχον, 2 aor. act. of ἔχω.

ἐ-σώθην, 1 aor. pass. of σώζω.

ἐταῖρος, -ου, m. *a companion, comrade*.

ἐ-ταμον, 2 aor. act. of τέμνω.

ἐ-τάχθην, 1 aor. pass. of τάττω.

ἐ-τεινα, 1 aor. act. of τείνω.

Ἐτεόνικος, -ου, m. *Eteonīcus*, a Lacedaemonian general at Byzantium (VIII. 30).

ἕτερος, -α, -ον, *the other, one of two*.

ἐ-τε-τήκειν, pluperf. act. of τήκω.

ἔτι, (adv.) *still, any longer*. (οὐκέτι, *no longer*.)

ἐ-τμήθην, 1 aor. pass. of τέμνω.

ἐτοῖμος, -η, -ον, *ready, prepared*.

ἐτοίμως, *readily* (adv. of ἐτοῖμος).

ἔτος, -ους, n. *a year*. (ἐκάστου ἔτους, *every year*.)

ἔ-τραπον, 2 aor. act. of τρέπω.

ἐ-τρώθην, 1 aor. pass. of τιτρώσκω.

ἔ-τρωσα, 1 aor. act. of τιτρώσκω.

ἔ-τυχον, 2 aor. act. of τυγχάνω.

εὖ, (adv.) *well, prosperously*.

εὖ-δαίμων, -ον, *happy, prosperous, wealthy*. (εὖ, *well*, and δαίμων, *fate*.)

εὖ-διά, -ας, f. *fair-weather, a calm*.

εὖ-εργεσία, -ας, f. *good service, kindness*.

εὖ-εργέτης, -ου, m. *a benefactor*.

εὖ-ζωνος, -ον, *well girded; hence active*. (εὖ, *well*, and ζώνη, *a girdle*.)

εὐθέως, *directly, immediately* (adv. of εὐθύς).

εὐθύς, (adj. used as adv.) *straightway, immediately*.

εὖ-κλεια, -ας, f. *good fame, glory*. (εὖ, *well*, and κλέος, *glory*.)

Εὐκλείδης, -ου, m. *Euclides*, a seer from Phlius, in the north of Peloponnesus (VIII. 485).

εὖ-νοια, -ας, f. *good-will, kindness*.

εὖ-νοος, -ον, contr. εὖ-νοῦς, *kind, well-disposed*. (εὖ, *well*, and νοῦς, *mind*.)

εὖ-ξείνος, -ον, *hospitable*; Πόντος Εὐξείνος, the *Euxine* or Black Sea.

εὐ-πετῶς, (adv.) *easily*.

εὐ-πορος, -ον, *easy to pass*.

εὐρίσκω, *I find, discover*; 2 aor. εὔρον, fut. εὐρήσω, perf. εὔρηκα, pass. εὔρημαι, 1 aor. pass. εὐρέθην.

εὖρος, -ους, n. *width, breadth*. (εὐρὺς, *broad*.)

Εὐρύλοχος, -ου, m. *Eurylochus*, a hoplite from Lusi, a town in Arcadia (IV. 360).

εὐρύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *wide, broad*.

εὖ-τακτος, -ον, *well arranged, in good order*. (εὖ, *well*, and τάττω, *I arrange*.)

εὖ-ταξία, -ας, f. *good order, discipline*.

εὖ-τολμος, -ον, *daring, courageous*.

Εὐφράτης, -ου, m. the river *Euphrates*.

The Eastern and Western branches join in Armenia; it then flows west of the Tigris, passes through Babylon, and joins the Tigris before it falls into the Persian Gulf.

εὐχομαι, *I pray, vow*; fut. εὔξομαι.

εὖ-ώνυμος, -ον, lit. 'of good name,' *lucky, the left*; especially τὸ εὖώνυμον [κέρas], *the left wing* of an army. (εὖ, ὄνομα, *of good name*; really an euphemism for the *unlucky side*, i. e. *the left*, which it was unlucky to mention.)

ἔ-φᾶγον, 2 aor. with pres. ἐσθίω.

ἐ-φάνην, 2 aor. pass. of φαίνω.

ἐφ-έπομαι, *I pursue*; fut. ἐφ-έσομαι, imperf. ἐφ-ειπόμην.

*Εφεσος, -ου, f. *Ephesus* in Lydia, on the west coast of Asia Minor.

ἐ-φην, 2 aor. of φημί.

ἐ-φηνάμην, 1 aor. mid. of φαίνω.

ἐ-φθεγξάμην, 1 aor. of φθέγγομαι.

ἐφθός, -ή, -όν, *boiled* (verbal adj. of ἔψω, *I boil*).

ἐφ-ίστημι, (trans.) *I make to stop; set over*; fut. ἐπι-στήσω; (intrans.) *I stand by, halt*; 2 aor. ἐπ-έστην.

ἐφ-όδιον, -ου, n. *travelling expenses or supplies*. (ἐπὶ, and ὁδός, *a road*).

ἐφ-οδος, -ου, f. *an approach*.

ἐφ-ορος, -ου, m. *an overseer*; οἱ *Εφοροι, the *Ephors*, or Council of Five at Sparta. (ἐφ-οράω, *I oversee*.)

*ἐ-φυγον, 2 aor. of φεύγω.

ἐχθρός, -ά, -όν, *hostile; an enemy*. (ἐχθος, *hatred*.)

ἐ-χρῆν, imperf. of χρή.

ἐ-χρήτο, 3 sing. imperf. of χράομαι.

ἔχω, *I have, hold, possess, keep*; fut.

ἔξω or σχήσω, perf. ἐσχηκα, imperf.

εἶχον, 2 aor. ἔσχον. Impers. καλῶς

ἔχει, *it is well*; (Pass.) οἱ ἄνθρωποι

ἔχονται, *the inhabitants are kept*

prisoners, (Mid.) *I hold on to*, so ἐχό-

μενος, *next in order*.

ἐ-ψευσμαι, perf. pass. of ψεύδω.

ἐ-ώρακα, perf. act. of ὁράω.

ἐ-ώρων, imperf. act. of ὁράω.

ἔως, acc. ἔω, f. *morning*; πρὸς ἔω, *towards the east*.

ἔως, (conj.) *as long as, until, while*.

Z.

Ζαπάτας, -ου, m. the river *Zab* in Assyria, flowing from the East into the Tigris (III. 100).

ζάω, *I live*; fut. ζήσω, imperf. ἔζην, infin. ζῆν.

ζευγηλατέω, *I drive a yoke of oxen*. (ζεῦγος and ἐλαύνω.)

ζεύγνυμι, *I yoke, join, attach*; fut. ζεύξω, perf. ἔζευγμαι, 2 aor. ἐζύγην.

ζεῦγος, -ους, n. *a yoke of oxen*. (Lat. *jugum*, Eng. *yoke*.)

Ζεύς, Διός, m. *Zeus* (Roman *Jupiter*), voc. Ζεῦ, acc. Δία.

ζηλωτός, -ή, -όν, *enviable*. (ζηλόω, *I rival*.)

ζημιόω, *I punish*; fut. ζημιώσω.

ζῆν, pres. infin. of ζάω.

ζῶην, pres. opt. of ζάω.

ζώνη, -ης, f. *a girdle*. (ζώννυμι, *I gird on*.)

H.

ἢ, (conj.) *or, than*; ἢ.. ἢ, *either.. or*.

ἦ, (adv.) *truly, verily*.

ἦ, 3 sing. subj. of εἰμί. (Lat. *sum*.)

ἦ, (adv.) *where*, properly dat. sing. fem. of ὅς, ἥ, ὅ.

ἦγαγον, 2 aor. of ἄγω.

ἦγγειλα, 1 aor. of ἀγγέλλω.

ἦγεμών, -όνος, m. *a leader, guide*.

ἦγέομαι, (1) *I lead the way*; (2) *I suppose*; fut. ἠγήσομαι. [Lat. *duco* has also both meanings.]

ἠγέρθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἀγείρω.

Ἡγήσανδρος, -ου, m. *Hegesander*, a Greek captain (VII. 71).

ἠγνόουν, imperf. of ἀγνοέω.

ἠγον, imperf. of ἄγω.

ἠδεῖν, *I kneew*; pluperf. of οἶδα, used as imperf. οἶδα having a present signification.

ἠδέως, (adv.) *gladly, with pleasure*. Comp. ἠδίων; superl. ἠδιστα.

ἤδη, (adv.) *now, already, by this time*. ἠδικήθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἀδικέω.

ἠδίκηκα, ἠδίκημαι, perf. act. and pass. of ἀδικέω.

ἠδομαι, *I am pleased*; fut. ἠσθήσομαι, 1 aor. ἠσθην.

ἠδόμην, imperf. of ἠδόμαι.

ἠδονή, -ῆς, f. *sweetness, pleasure*.

ἠδυνάμην, imperf. of δύναμαι.

ἠδύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *sweet, pleasant, delicious*.

Comp. ἠδίων, superl. ἠδιστος.

ἦεν, 3 pl. ἦσαν, imperf. of εἶμι. (Lat. *ibo*.)

ἦθελον, imperf. of ἐθέλω.

ἦθροισα, 1 aor. act. of ἀθροίζω.

ἦκε, may be 3 sing. imperf. of ἦκω or 1 aor. of ἦμι.

ἦκον, imperf. of ἦκω.

ἠκόντιζον, imperf. of ἀκοντίζω.

ἠκουσα, 1 aor. of ἀκούω.

ἦκω, *I am come, arrive*; used as perf. of ἔρχομαι, fut. ἦξω.

ἠλάθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἐλαύνω.

ἠλάμην, 1 aor. mid. of ἄλλομαι.

ἠλασα, 1 aor. act. of ἐλαύνω.

ἠλθον, 2 aor. with pres. ἔρχομαι.

ἠλίθιος, -α, -ον, *foolish, silly*.

ἠλιος, -ου, m. *the sun*.

ἠλλόμην, imperf. of ἄλλομαι.

ἠλωκα, ἠλώκειν, perf. and pluperf. of ἀλίσκομαι.

ἡμέρα, -ας, f. *a day*; ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, *at day-break*.

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον, poss. adj. *our*.

ἡμίονος, -ου, m. *a mule*. (ἡμι-, *half*, and ὄνος, *an ass*.)

ἡμίπλεθρον, -ου, n. *half a plethron*, i. e. 50 feet.

ἡμισυς, -εῖα, -υ, *half*.

ἦν, for εἰάν, *if*.

ἦν, imperf. of εἰμί. (Lat. *sum*.)

ἠνάγκασα, 1 aor. act. of ἀναγκάζω.

ἠνέχθην, 1 aor. pass. with pres. φέρω.

ἠνίκα, (conj.) *when*.

ἠνίοχος, -ου, m. *a charioteer, driver* (from ἠνία, *reins* and ἔχω, *I hold*).

ἠξίουν, imperf. of ἀξιώω.

ἦξω, fut. of ἦκω.

ἠπείλουν, imperf. of ἀπειλέω.

ἧπερ, (adv.) *where*, properly dat. sing. fem. of ὅς-περ.

ἡπιστάμην, imperf. of ἐπίσταμαι.

ἡπόρουν, imperf. of ἀπορέω.

Ἡράκλεια, -ας, f. *Heraclea*, a city in Bithynia, on the Euxine.

Ἡρακλίδης, -ου, m. *Heraclides*, an agent of the Thracian prince Seuthes.

Ἡρακλεώτης, -ου, m. a *Heracleian* or inhabitant of *Heraclea*.

Ἡρακλεώτις, -ιδος, f. (sc. γῆ), *the district of Heraclea*.

Ἡρακλῆς, -έους, m. *Heracles* (Roman *Hercules*), son of Zeus and Alcmena.

ἡρέθην, 1 aor. pass. of αἰρέω.

ἡρημαι, perf. pass. of αἰρέω.

ἡρξάμην, 1 aor. mid. of ἄρχω.

ἡρόμην, 2 aor. of ἔρομαι; (pres. ἔρωτάω.)

ἡρπασα, 1 aor. act. of ἄρπάζω.

ἡρπασμαι, perf. pass. of ἄρπάζω.

ἡρχόμην, imperf. (1) of ἄρχομαι; (2) of ἔρχομαι.

ἡρχον, imperf. of ἄρχω.

ἡρώτησα, 1 aor. of ἐρωτάω.

ἡρώτων, imperf. of ἐρωτάω.

ἡσθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἡδομαι.

ἡσθόμην, 2 aor. of αἰσθάνομαι.

ἡσυχία, -ας, f. *quietness*; ἀγειν ἡσυχίαν, *to keep quiet*.

ἡσχύνθην, 1 aor. pass. of αἰσχύνω.

ἡτησάμην, 1 aor. mid. of αἰτέω.

ἡτιώμην, imperf. of αἰτιάομαι.

ἡτούμην, imperf. mid. of αἰτέω.

ἡτουν, imperf. of αἰτέω.

ἡττάομαι, *I am less than*, i. e. *am conquered*; fut. ἡττήσομαι, perf. ἡττημαι. (ἡττων, less.)

ἡττον, (adv.) *less*.

ἡττων, -ον, *less, inferior, weaker*.

ἡύλίσθην, 1 aor. pass. of αὐλίζω.

ἡχθέσθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἄχθομαι.

ἡχθην, 1 aor. pass. of ἄγω.

ἡχθόμην, imperf. of ἄχθομαι.

Θ.

θάλαττα, -ης, f. *the sea*.

θάνατος, -ου, m. *death*.

θανατώω, *I condemn to death*; fut. θανατώσω.

θανοῦμαι, fut. of θνήσκω.

θάπτω, *I bury*; fut. θάψω, 2 aor. pass. ἐτάφην.

θαρραλέος, -α, -ον, *bold*. (θάρρος, *courage*.) Comp. -ώτερος.

θαρραλέως, (adv.) *boldly*.

θαρρέω, *I am of good courage*.

θάρρος, -ους, n. *boldness, courage*.

θαρσύνω, *I make bold, encourage*; 1 aor. ἐθάρσυνα.

θᾶπτον, comp. of ταχέως, *more quickly*.

θαυμάζω, *I wonder, marvel*; fut. θαυμάσω, perf. τεθαύμακα. (θαύμα, *wonder*.)

θέα, -ας, f. *a view, a sight*.

θεά, -ᾱς, f. *a goddess*.

θέαμα, -ατος, n. *a sight, spectacle*. (θεάομαι, *I see*.)

θεῖναι, θεῖς, 2 aor. act. infin. and part. of τίθημι.

θέλω, *I wish*; fut. θελήσω.

θέμενος, 2 aor. mid. part. of τίθημι.

θεός, -οῦ, m. *a god*; σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς, *with the gods' help*.

θερμασία, -ας, f. *warmth*. (θέρω, *I warm*.)

θερμός, -ή, -όν, *warm*.

Θερμῶδων, -οντος, m. *the Thermodon*, a river of Pontus, flowing into the Euxine Sea (VI. 140). It still keeps its name as Thirmah Su.

θέσθαι, 2 aor. mid. infin. of τίθημι.

Θετταλός, -ή, -όν, *Thessalian*, or inhabitant of Thessaly in Northern Greece.

θέω, *I run*; fut. θεύσομαι.

θεωρέω, *I view, inspect, review* (troops), fut. -ήσω.

θηρεύω, *I hunt, chase*. (θήρ, *a wild beast*.)

θηρίον, -ου, n. *a wild beast*. (θήρ, Lat. *fera*.)

θήσω, fut. of τίθημι.

Θήχης, -ου, m. *Theches*, a mountain near Trapezus, whence the Greeks got their first sight of the sea (V. 283).

Θίβρων, -ωνος, m. *Thibron*, a Spartan commander, sent out to oppose Tissaphernes (VIII. 543).

θνήσκω, *I die*; fut. θανούμαι, perf. τέθνηκα, 2 aor. ἔθανον.

θόρυβος, -ου, m. *noise, confusion, tumult.*

Θράκη, -ης, f. *Thrace*, now forming the eastern half of the Turkish province Rumelia, and containing the capital Constantinople. Also a district of Bithynia in Asia Minor. (τραχὺς, *rough*.)

Θράκιος, -α, -ον, *Thracian*, or belonging to Thrace.

Θράξ, -ακός, m. *a Thracian*.

θρασέως, (adv.) *boldly*.

θρασύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *bold, venturesome*.

θυγάτηρ, -τρος, f. *a daughter*.

Θυνοί, -ῶν, m. *the Thyni*, a people in Thrace; they colonised Bithynia (VIII. 138).

θύρα, -ας, f. *a door*. (Lat. *fores*.)

θύρετρα, -ων, (neut. plur.) *doors*.

θύσια, -ας, f. *a sacrifice*.

θύω, *I sacrifice*; (Mid.) *I sacrifice for myself*, i.e. *take the auspices*; fut. θύσω, perf. τέθυκα.

θώραξ, -ακος, m. *a breastplate, corslet, cuirass*.

Θώραξ, ἄκος, m. *Thorax*, a Boeotian general, jealous of Xenophon (VI. 159).

I.

ιδεῖν, 2 aor. infin. of εἶδον, pres. ὁράω.

ιδίᾳ, (adv.) *privately, on one's own account* (dat. fem. of ἴδιος).

ἴδιος, -α, -ον, *private, one's own*.

ιδιώτης, -ου, m. *a private person*.

ἴδοιμι, ἰδών, 2 aor. act. opt. and part. of εἶδον, pres. ὁράω.

ἰέμην, imperf. mid. of ἵημι.

ἰέναι, pres. infin. of εἶμι. (Lat. *ibo*.)

ἱερεῖον, -ου, n. *a victim*.

ἱερός, -ά, -όν, *holy, sacred*: τὰ ἱερὰ καλὰ ἦν, *the sacred (entrails) were favourable*, i.e. *the sacrifice showed good omens*.

ἵημι, (Act.) *I throw, shoot, send*; (Mid.) *I rush*, fut. ἵσω, 1 aor. ἤκα, perf. εἶκα.

ἴθι, pres. imperat. of εἶμι. (Lat. *ibo*.)

ἱκανός, -ή, -όν, *fit, suitable, sufficient, able*; comp. ὤτερος, superl. ὤτατος.

ἱκανῶς, (adv.) *sufficiently*.

ἱκετεύω, *I supplicate, entreat*; fut. -εύσω. (ἱκέτης, *a suppliant*.)

ἱμάς, -άντος, m. *a strap, thong*.

ἱμάτιον, -ου, n. *a cloak*.

ἵνα, (1) (adv.) *where*; (2) (conj.) *in order that*.

ἵππαρχος, -ου, m. *a commander of cavalry*. (ἵππος, and ἄρχω, *I rule*.)

ἵππεύς, -έως, m. *a horseman*; pl. ἵππεις, *cavalry*.

ἵππικός, -ή, -όν, *belonging to a horse*; τὸ ἵππικόν, *the cavalry*; θώραξ ἵππικος, *a cavalry breastplate*.

ἵππος, -ου, m. *a horse*; ἐφ' ἵππου, *on horseback*.

ἴσασι, 3 pl. from οἶδα.

ἴσθι, imperat. of οἶδα.

Ἴσθμός, -οῦ, m. *the Isthmus of Corinth*, joining the Peloponnesus to Northern Greece (III. 185).

ἴσμεν, 1 pl. from οἶδα.

ἰσό-πλευρος, -ον, *equal-sided*. (ἴσος, and πλευρά, *a side*.)

ἴσος, -η, -ον, *equal*; εἰς τὸ ἴσον, *to an equality*; ἐξ ἴσου, *on equal terms*.

Ἴσσοί, -ῶν, m. *Issi*, or *Issus*, a town in Cilicia, in the N.E. corner of the Levant (I. 158). Seventy years afterwards it became famous for Alexander's victory over the Persians, B.C. 333.

ἴστε, 2 pl. from οἶδα, or imperat. from ἴσθι.

ἵστημι, (trans.) *I make to stand, stop, set up*; fut. στήσω, 1 aor. ἔστησα; (intrans.) *I stand, halt*; perf. ἔσ-

τηκα, (part. ἐστὼς,) 2 aor. ἔστην,
1 aor. pass. ἐστάθην.

ἱστίον, ου, n. a sail.

ἰσχυρός, -ά, -όν, strong.

ἰσχυρῶς, (adv.) strongly; hence very,
exceedingly.

ἴσχω, (a form of ἔχω,) I stop,
hinder.

ἴσως, (adv.) perhaps, (lit. equally.)

ἴτεον, verb. adj. from εἶμι, one must
go.

ἴτις, -υος, f. the rim of a shield.

ἴτωσαν, 3 pl. imperat. of εἶμι. (Lat.
ibo.)

ἵχνιον, -ου, n. a trace, track. (ἵχνος,
a track.)

ἴω, ἴών, pres. subj. and part. of εἶμι.
(Lat. ibo.)

K.

καθ-έζομαι, I sit down, rest, halt;
impf. ἐκαθ-εζόμεν.

καθ-εἰς, 2 aor. part. of καθ-ίημι.

καθ-έλκω, I draw down; fut. -έλξω.
impf. καθ-εἶλκον.

καθ-εύδω, I sleep; imperf. ἐκάθευδον.

καθ-ήκω, I reach down; τὸ καθ-ήκον,
the part reaching down.

κάθ-ημαι, I sit down, encamp.

καθ-ίημι, I send down, let fall; fut.
-ήσω, impf. -ίην. εἰς προβολὴν τὰ
δόρατα καθ-ιέντες, couching their
spears, lit. 'letting down their spears
for attack.'

καθ-ίστημι, (trans.) I set in order,
settle, appoint; fut. κατα-στήσω; (in-
trans.) I am placed: perf. καθ-έστη-
κα, 2 aor. κατ-έστην.

καθ-οράω, I look down upon, behold;
fut. κατ-όψομαι, 2 aor. κατ-εἶδον.

καί, (conj.) (1) and; (2) also, even;
καὶ . . . καὶ, both . . . and.

Καῖκος, -ου, m. the Caïcus, a river in
Mysia, flowing by Pergamus (VIII.
532.)

Καιναί, -ῶν, f. Caenae, a town in
Mesopotamia on the Tigris (III.
98); perhaps the ancient Assyrian
Calah, mentioned in Genesis, x. 11.

καίπερ, although, (with participle.)

καιρός, -οῦ, m. a fit time, season,
opportunity.

καίτοι, and yet.

καίω, I burn, kindle; fut. καύσω, 1
aor. ἔκαυσα, perf. pass. κέκαυμαι.

κακίους, nom. pl. of κακίων, contr.
for κακίονες.

κακός, -ή, -όν, bad, wicked, cowardly;
comp. κακίων, superl. κάκιστος:
n. pl. κακά, evils, misfortunes.

κακουργέω, I do evil; with acc. I in-
jure; fut. -ήσω. (κακὸν, ἔργον.)

κάλαμος, -ου, m. a reed. (Lat. cala-
mus.)

καλέω, I call, summon, invite; fut.
-έσω, perf. κέκληκα, perf. pass.
κέκλημαι.

Καλλίμαχος, -ου, m. Callimachus, an
Arcadian captain (V. 258).

καλός, -ή, -όν, beautiful, fair, noble,
good; comp. καλλίων, superl. κάλ-
λιστος.

καλῶς, (adv.) fairly, nobly, well.
καλῶς ἔχειν, to be well (lit. 'in a
good condition'); superl. κάλ-
λιστα.

Κάλπη, -ης, f. Calpē, a river and town
in Bithynia: its ruins are marked
by two harbours called Kerpeh.

Καλχηδονία, -ας, f. Calchedonia, the
district round Calchedon.

Καλχηδών, -όνος, f. Calchēdon, a
town in Bithynia.

κάμνω, I labour, am weary, am sick;
fut. καμοῦμαι, perf. κέκμηκα, 2 aor.
ἔκαμον. Οἱ κάμνοντες, the sick.

καπνός, -οῦ, m. smoke.

καρβάτιναι, -ῶν, f. pl. shoes (of un-
dressed leather), brogues.

Καρδοῦχοι, m. the Carduchians, a
hill tribe in Armenia, now the
Kurds, or Kurdistan.

Καρπαία, -ας, f. the Carpaian, a mimic
dance among the Thessalians.

καρπός, -οῦ, m. fruit.

κάρυον, -ου, a nut, chestnut.

κατά, prep. with gen. and acc. (root
meaning down). I. with gen. i.

- down from, down in: ii. *down upon, against*. II. with acc. i. of place, *down along, along, among, about*; *κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν, by land and sea*: ii. of time, as *κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον, at this time*: iii. (especially) *according to, as regards*; *κατὰ κράτος, by force or at full speed* (see *ἀνὰ κράτος*), *κατὰ λόχους, by companies*. In Composition, *down, downright or utterly, against*. Before an aspirated vowel *κατὰ* becomes *καθ'*, as *καθ' ἡμέραν, daily*.
- κατα-βαίνω, I come down, descend, go down to the sea*; fut. -βήσομαι, 2 aor. *κατέβην*.
- κατ-αγγέλλω, I denounce, disclose*; fut. -αγγελῶ, -ήγγειλα.
- κατά-γειος, -ον, underground, subterranean*. (*κατὰ, beneath, and γῆ, the earth*.)
- κατ-άγνυμι, I break*; fut. -άξω, 2 perf. -έᾱγα.
- κατ-άγω, I bring down, bring home, restore*; fut. -άξω.
- κατα-διώκω, I pursue close*; fut. -διώξω.
- κατα-δύω, (intrans. and Mid.) I sink down*; perf. -δέδυκα, 2 aor. *κατ-έδυν*: (trans.) in fut. *κατα-δύσω*, and 1 aor. *κατ-έδυσα, I cause to sink, sink*.
- κατα-θεάομαι, I look down upon, watch, observe*; fut. -θεάσομαι.
- κατα-θέω, I run down*; fut. -θεύσομαι.
- κατα-καίω, I burn down*; fut. -καύσω.
- κατά-κειμαι, I lie down*; fut. -κείσομαι.
- κατα-κλείω, I shut in, enclose*; fut. -κλείσω.
- κατα-κόπτω, I cut down, cut up*; fut. -κόψω.
- κατα-κτάομαι, I get or gain for myself*; fut. -κτήσομαι.
- κατα-κτείνω, I kill*; fut. -κτενῶ, 1 aor. *κατ-έκτεινα*, 2 aor. -έκτανον.
- κατα-κωλύω, I keep back*; fut. -κωλύσω. (*κωλύω, I prevent*.)
- κατα-λαμβάνω, I seize upon, catch, overtake, find*; fut. -λήψομαι, perf.
- κατ-είληφα, 1 aor. pass. κατ-ελήφθην, 2 aor. κατ-έλαβον*.
- κατα-λείπω, I leave behind*; fut. -λείψω, 2 aor. *κατ-έλιπον*.
- κατα-μένω, I stay behind*; fut. -μενῶ, 1 aor. *κατ-έμεινα*.
- κατα-πηδάω, I leap down*; fut. -πηδήσω.
- κατα-πίπτω, I fall down*; fut. -πεσοῦμαι, perf. -πέπτωκα, 2 aor. *κατ-έπεσον*.
- κατα-ρρίπτω, I hurl down, throw down, scatter*; 1 aor. *κατ-έρριψα*.
- κατα-σκευάζω, I prepare, furnish*; fut. -σκευάσω. *κατὰ, downright*.)
- κατα-σκηνέω, -άω, or -όω, I pitch my tent, encamp*. (*κατὰ, down on the ground, and σκῆνη, tent*.)
- κατα-σφάζω, I kill, slaughter*, 2 aor. pass. *κατ-εσφάγην*.
- κατα-σχίζω, I cleave asunder, burst open* (*τὰς πύλας*); fut. -σχίσω.
- κατα-τίθημι, I lay down, establish, deposit*; fut. -θήσω, 1 aor. *κατ-έθηκα*.
- κατα-τρέχω, I run down*; fut. -δραμοῦμαι, 2 aor. *κατ-έδραμον*.
- κατα-φαγεῖν, 2 aor. infin. with pres. κατα-τρέχω*.
- κατα-φαίνω, (Act.) I show, exhibit*; (Mid.) *I appear*; fut. -φανῶ.
- κατ-έαξα, 1 aor. of κατ-άγνυμι*.
- κατ-εἶδον, 2 aor. with pres. καθ-οράω*.
- κατ-εσθίω, I eat up, devour*; fut. *κατ-έδομαι*, 2 aor. -έφαγον.
- κατ-έχω, I hold, maintain; reach, compel*; fut. *καθ-έξω* and *κατα-σχίσω*, 2 aor. *κατ-έσχον*. (*κατὰ = downright*.)
- κατ-ηγορέω, I speak against, accuse (with gen.)*; fut. -ηγορήσω.
- κατ-ηρεμίζω, I calm, appease*; 1 aor. -ηρέμισα.
- κατ-οικίζω, I found (a city)*; fut. -οικίσω, 1 aor. -ᾠκισα.
- κατ-ορύττω, I bury*; fut. -ορύξω, perf. -ορώρυχα, perf. pass. -ορώρυγμαί.
- κάτω, (adv.) down, downwards, below*.

καῦμα, -άτος, n. *heat*. (καίω, *I burn*.)

καύσιμος, -ον, *fit for burning, combustible*.

Καῦστρος, -ου, m. *Caÿster*, a river in the little known interior of Phrygia: not to be confounded with the well-known Caÿster, which flows into the sea at Ephesus.

Καῦστρου πέδιον, *the plain of Caÿster*, an important town in the interior of Phrygia: not to be confounded with the Caÿster-plains near Ephesus. The northern road from Byzantium, and the western from Sardis, joined here on the route to Iconium and Syria (I. 63).

κεῖμαι, *I lie*; fut. κείσομαι. Used as pass. of τίθημι, = *I am placed*.

Κελαιναί, -ῶν, f. *Celaenae*, a town in Phrygia, east of Colossae (I. 53).

κελεύω, *I order, bid, command*; fut. κελεύσω, I aor. ἐκέλευσα.

κενός, -ή, -όν, *empty, void*.

Κεντρίτης, -ου, m. *the Centrites*, an eastern tributary of the Tigris dividing Armenia from the country of the Carduchi (IV. 370).

Κεραμῶν Ἀγορά, -ᾱς, f. *Ceramorum Agora*, a town on the frontiers of Mysia (I. 63).

κέρας, κέρως (κέρᾱτος), n. *a horn; the wing of an army*. ἐπὶ κέρας ἄγειν, *to lead in column*; lit. 'to lead towards the wing,' i. e. all facing to the right (or left), instead of marching with a broad front.

Κερασοῦς, -οῦντος, f. *Cerasus*, a town in Pontus (VI. 92).

κεφαλαλγής, -ές, *causing headache*. (κεφαλῇ, *head*, and ἄλγος, *pain*.)

κεφαλή, ἥς, f. *the head*.

κήδομαι, *I care for* (with gen.).

κηρίον, -ου, n. *a honey-comb*.

κῆρυξ, ὕκος, m. *a herald*.

κηρύττω, *I proclaim, announce*; fut.

κηρύξω, perf. pass. κεκήρυγμαι.

Κιλικία, -ας, f. *Cilicia*, the S. E. corner of Asia Minor.

Κίλισσα, -ης, f. *a Cilician woman*; ἡ Κίλισσα, *the Cilician Queen*, Epyaxa (I. 67).

κινδυνεύω, *I incur danger, run a risk*; = *there is a risk that I . . .* (with infin; fut. κινδυνεύσω. (κίνδυνος, *danger*.)

κίνδυνος, -ου, m. *danger, risk*.

κινέω, *I move*; fut. κινήσω.

Κλέανδρος, -ου, m. *Cleander*, a Lacedaemonian 'hardest' or governor in Byzantium.

Κλεάνωρ, -ορος, m. *Cleānor*, an Arcadian general (IV. 66).

Κλέαρχος, -ου, m. *Clearchus*, chief of the Greek generals in Cyrus' army: a Spartan commander in the Peloponnesian war, afterwards condemned to death for disobedience. He joined Cyrus, and was killed by treachery of Tissaphernes.

κλεῖθρον, -ου, n. *a bolt, bar*. (κλείω, *I shut*.)

κλείω, *I shut*; fut. κλείσω, perf. κέκλεικα, perf. pass. κέκλειμαι and κέκλεισμαι.

κλέπτω, *I steal*; fut. κλέψω, perf. κέκλοφα, perf. pass. κέκλεμμαι.

κλίμαξ, -ᾱκος, f. *a ladder*.

κλοπή, -ῆς, f. *theft*, (κλέπτω.)

κνέφας, -ας, and -ους, n. *darkness, twilight*. (Cp. νέφος, *a cloud*.)

κνημῖς, -ίδος, f., in pl. *leg armour, greaves*. (κνήμη, *the shin-bone*.)

κοῖλος, -η, -ον, *hollow*.

κοιμάω, (Act.) *I put to sleep*; (Mid.) *I fall asleep*; fut. κοιμήσω.

κοινός, -ή, -όν, *common*. τὸ κοινόν, *the community*: ἀπὸ κοινού, *at the public cost*.

κοινωνός, -οῦ, m. *a sharer, partner*. (κοινός, *common*.)

κολάζω, *I punish*; fut. κολάσω, perf. pass. κεκόλασμαι.

Κολοσσαί, -ῶν, f. *Colossae*, a town in Phrygia (I. 50).

Κολχίς, -ίδος, f. *Colchis*, a country at the eastern extremity of the Black Sea.

Κόλχοι, -ων, m. *the Colchians or the people of Colchis.*

κολωνός, -οῦ, m. *a mound.*

κομίζω, (Act.) *I fetch, bring; (Mid.) I return; 1 aor. ἐκόμισα.*

κονιᾶτός, -ῆς, -όν, *plastered.* (κονία, *lime-dust.*)

κονιορτός, -οῦ, m. *a cloud of dust.* (κόνις, *dust*, and ὀρνυμι, *I raise.*)

κόπρος, -ον, m. *dung.*

κόπτω, *I cut down, knock; fut. κόψω.*

Κορύλας, -α, m. *Corýlas, ruler of Paphlagonia, and aiming at independence from Persia (VI. 323).*

κορυφή, -ῆς, f. *top, summit.*

κόσμιος, -ον, *orderly, under good discipline.*

Κοτύωρα, -ων, n. *Cotyora, a town in Pontus.*

κοῦφος, -η, -ον, *light, nimble.*

κούφως, (adv.) *lightly, nimbly.*

κράνος, -ους, n. *a helmet.*

κρατέω, (with gen.) *I rule, conquer, get possession of, (with acc.) hold, keep; fut. κρατήσω.* (κράτος, *strength.*)

κρατήρ, -ῆρος, m. *a goblet.* (κεράννυμι, *I mix.*)

κράτιστα, adv. of **κράτιστος**, *most bravely, best.*

κράτιστος, -η, -ον, *strongest, best, noblest; used as superl. of ἀγαθός.*

κράτος, -ους, n. *strength; κατὰ κράτος, ἀνὰ κράτος, with all one's might, i. e. at full speed.*

κραυγή, -ῆς, f. *a shout.* (κράζω, *I shout.*)

κρέας, ἄτος, n. *flesh, meat.* Generally in pl. τὰ κρέα.

κρείπτων, -ον, *stronger, better, superior; from κρατὺς, but used as compar. of ἀγαθός.*

κρέμαμαι, *I hang* (used as Mid. of κρεμάννυμι); fut. κρεμήσομαι.

κρήνη, -ης, f. *a fountain, spring.*

κριθή, -ῆς, f. *barley* (often in pl.).

κρίθινος, -η, -ον, *made of barley.* οἶνος κρίθινος, lit. 'barley wine,' i. e. *beer or whisky.*

κρίνω, *I judge, distinguish, consider; fut. κρίνω, perf. κέκρικα, perf. pass. κέκριμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐκρίθην.*

κρίσις, -εως, f. *a trial.* (κρίνω, *I judge.*)

κρότος, -ον, m. *a noise* (produced by striking), *clapping of hands.*

κρούω, *I strike, clash; fut. κρούσω.*

κρύπτω, *I hide, conceal; fut. κρύψω, perf. κέκρυφα, perf. pass. κέκρυμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐκρύφθην.*

κτάομαι, *I acquire, gain, possess; fut. κτήσομαι, perf. κέκτημαι.*

κτείνω, *I kill, slay, put to death; fut. κτενῶ, 1 aor. ἔκτεινα.* For the passive *θνήσκω, I die*, is used.

κτήνος, -ους, n. *property; (plural) cattle, beasts of burden.* (κτάομαι, *I acquire.*)

κτήσομαι, fut. of **κτάομαι.**

κυβερνήτης, -ον, m. *a steersman, pilot, (Lat. gubernator.)*

Κυζικηνός, -ῆς, -όν, *of or from Cyzicus, a town in the Propontis.*

Κυζικηνός, sc. **στατήρ**, *a Cyzicene, or gold coin of Cyzicus, worth about a Napoleon, 16s.*

Κύζικος, -ον, f. *Cyzicus, a peninsula and town on the Propontis or Sea of Marmora.*

κύκλος, -ον, m. *a circle, ring; κύκλω, all round, lit. in a circle.*

κυκλόω, *I encircle, surround; fut. κυκλώσω.*

κυλινδέω, *I roll.*

Κυνίσκος, -ον, m. *Cyniscus, a Spartan governor in the Chersonese.*

Κύρος, -ον, m. *Cyrus the younger, the second of the two sons of Darius Nothus; killed at Cunaxa, B.C. 401. (Cyrus the Great founded the Persian monarchy, took Babylon, and released the Jews, 538 B.C.)*

κύων, κυνός, m. and f. *a dog.* (Lat. *canis*, Eng. *hound.*)

κωλύω, *I hinder, prevent; fut. κωλύσω.*

κώμη, -ης, f. *a village.*

Λ.

- λαβεῖν, λαβών, 2 aor. infin. and part. of λαμβάνω.
 λαγχάνω, *I obtain by lot, obtain, get*; fut. λήξομαι, perf. εἶληχα, perf. pass. εἶληγμαι, 2 aor. ἔλαχον.
 λάθρα, *secretly, (with gen.) without the knowledge of*.
 Λακεδαιμόνιος, -α, -ον, *Lacedaemonian, or inhabitant of Lacedaemon or Sparta, in Peloponnesus. The nobles were called Spartans. All Spartans were Lacedaemonians, but all Lacedaemonians were not Spartans.*
 λάκκος, -ου, m. *a hole, pit. (Lat. lacus.)*
 Λάκων, -ωνος, m. *a Laconian, a free citizen of the country near Sparta.*
 λαμβάνω, *I take, seize, receive, (with gen. take hold of)*: fut. λήψομαι, perf. εἶληφα, perf. pass. εἶλημμαι, 2 aor. ἔλαβον.
 λαμπρότης, -ητος, f. *brightness, splendour (λαμπρὸς, bright).*
 λάμπω, *I shine, gleam*; fut. λάμψω.
 Λαμψακηνός, -οῦ, m. *a Lampsacene, or inhabitant of Lampsacus.*
 Λάμψακος, -ου, f. *Lampsacus, a town in the north of Mysia on the Hellespont, now Lamsaki, nearly opposite Gallipoli (VIII. 485).*
 λανθάνω, (Act.) *I lie hid, escape notice, (with acc.) escape notice of; hence with part. (I do a thing) unawares; (Mid.) I forget*; fut. λήσω, perf. λέληθα, perf. pass. λέλησμαι, 2 aor. ἔλαθον.
 λαχών, 2 aor. part. of λαγχάνω.
 λέγω, *I say, speak*; fut. λέξω, 1 aor. ἔλεξα, perf. pass. λέλεγμαι.
 λεία, -ας, f. *booty, spoil.*
 λείπω, *I leave, forsake, abandon*; fut. λείψω, perf. λέλοιπα, 2 aor. ἔλιπον.
 λελείπομαι, paulo-post fut. of λείπω.
 λέλοιπα, perf. of λείπω.
 λευκο-θώραξ, -ᾱκος, m. and f. *wearing a white breastplate.*

- λευκός, -ή, -όν, *white.*
 λήγω, *I cease, leave off*; fut. λήξω.
 ληίζομαι, *I plunder, ravage. (λεία, plunder.)*
 ληπτέος, -α, -ον, *must be taken, verbal adj. of λαμβάνω.*
 ληστής, -οῦ, m. *a robber. (λεία, plunder.)*
 λήσω, fut. of λανθάνω.
 λήψομαι, fut. of λαμβάνω.
 λίθος, -ου, m. *a stone.*
 λιμήν, -ένος, m. *a harbour, haven.*
 λιμός, -οῦ, m. *hunger, famine.*
 λόγος, -ου, m. *a word, speech, report*; in pl. *a conference. (λέγω, I speak.)*
 λόγχη, -ης, f. *a spear-head, lance.*
 λοιδορέω, *I rail at, abuse*; fut. λοιδορήσω.
 λοιπός, -ή, -όν, *remaining, left*; τὸ λοιπὸν, (1) (subst.) *the remaining part, (2) (adv.) henceforward*; οἱ λοιποὶ, *the rest. (Lat. reliqui.)*
 λόφος, -ου, m. *a hill, eminence.*
 λοχᾶγός, -οῦ, *a captain. (λόχος, a company, and ἡγέομαι, I lead.)*
 λόχος, -ου, m. *a company (generally of a hundred men).*
 Λυδία, -ας, f. *Lydia, in Asia Minor.*
 Λύκιος, -ου, m. *Lycius, an Athenian cavalry officer (IV. 152).*
 Λύκων, -ωνος, m. *Lycon, an Achaeon; one of the deputies sent to Heraclea (VII. 43).*
 λυπέω, *I grieve, pain, distress. (λύπη, grief.)*
 λύπη, -ης, f. *grief, sorrow.*
 λύω, *I loose, release, (of oaths and treaties) I break*; (Mid.) *I redeem, ransom*; fut. λύσω, perf. λέλυκα, perf. pass. λέλυμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐλύθην.

Μ.

- Μαίανδρος, -ου, m. *the Maeander, a river between Lydia and Caria (I. 47).*
 μαίνομαι, *I am mad*; perf. μέμνηνα (with pres. meaning), 2 aor. pass. ἐμᾶνην.

- Μαισάδης**, -ου, m. *Maesades*, king of Thrace, father of Seuthes (VIII. 137).
- Μακίστιος**, -ου, m. *a Macistian*, or inhabitant of Macistus, a town of Elis in the N. W. of Peloponnesus.
- μακρός**, -ά, -όν, *long, great, large*; comp. *μακρότερος*, superl. *μακρότατος* (also *μάσσων, μήκιστος*).
- μακρότερον**, comp. adv. *further*.
- Μάκρωνες**, -ων, m. *the Macrōnes*, a tribe of Pontus, bordering on the Euxine.
- μάλα**, *much, very*; comp. *μᾶλλον*, *more*, superl. *μάλιστα*, *most, especially*. With numerals, *at most, i. e. about*.
- μανθάνω**, *I learn, understand*; fut. *μαθήσομαι*, perf. *μεμάθηκα*, 2 aor. *ἔμαθον*.
- μαντεία**, -ας, f. *a prediction, oracle*.
- Μαντινῆς**, -ῶν, m. *Mantineans*, or natives of Mantinēa, in Arcadia.
- μάντις**, -εως, m. *a prophet, sooth-sayer*.
- μάρσιπος**, -ου, m. *a bag*.
- μαρτυρέω**, *I am a witness, testify*. (*μάρτυς*, *a witness*.) [Eng. *martyr*.]
- Μαρωνείτης**, -ου, m. *a Maronean*, or native of Maronēa, in Thrace.
- μαστιγόω**, *I scourge, flog*; fut. *μαστιγώσω*. (*μάστιξ*, *a scourge*.)
- μάχαιρα**, -ας, f. *scimitar, sabre*.
- μάχη**, -ης, f. *a fight, battle*.
- μάχομαι**, *I fight* (with dat.); fut. *μαχοῦμαι*, perf. *μεμάχημαι*.
- μεγαλο-πρεπῶς**, *magnificently*; comp. *-έστερον*, superl. *-έστατα*. (Adv. of *μεγαλο-πρεπής*, from *μέγας*, *great*, and *πρέπει*, *it is conspicuous*.)
- Μεγαρεύς**, -έως, m. *a Megarean*, or native of Megara on the Isthmus, north of Corinth.
- μέγας**, *μέγῃ, μέγα, great, large, important*, (of sound) *loud*; comp. *μείζων*, superl. *μέγιστος*.
- μεθύω**, *I am drunk*; fut. *-ύσω*. (*μέθυ*, *pure wine*, Lat. *merum*.)
- μείζων**, comparative of *μέγας* (for *μέγῃων*).
- μειλίχιος**, -α, -ον, *mild, gracious*, a title of Zeus.
- μείναι**, 1 aor. infin. of *μένω*.
- μείων**, -ων, -ον, *smaller, less, inferior*. (Comp. of *μικρός*.)
- Μελανδίται**, m. *the Melanditae*, or inhabitants of Melandia in Thrace, N. W. of Byzantium.
- μέλας**, *μέλαινα, μέλαν, black*; comp. *μελάντερος*, superl. *μελάντατος*.
- μέλει**, (impers.) *it concerns, is a care to*, (with dat.) as *μέλει μοι*, *it is a care to me*, i. e. *I care*; fut. *μελήσει*.
- μελετάω**, *I practise*; fut. *μελετήσω*.
- μελίνη**, -ης, f. *millet*, a kind of corn smaller than maize.
- μέλλω**, *I am about to do, intend, delay*; fut. *μελλήσω*: τὸ μέλλον, *the future*.
- μémνημαι**, *I remember*; perf. pass. of *μimνήσκω*, in middle sense, fut. *μεμνήσομαι*.
- μέν**, lit. *in the first place, on the one hand* (answered by *δέ*); often rendered by a stress on the preceding word. Ὁ μέν, *the one . . .* ὁ δέ, *the other*, οἱ μέν, *some . . .* οἱ δέ, *others*.
- μέντοι**, *however; certainly*.
- μένω**, *I remain*, (trans.) *wait for*; fut. *μενῶ*, perf. *μεμένηκα*, 1 aor. *ἔμεινα*.
- Μένων**, -ωνος, m. *Menon*, one of the Greek generals, a Thessalian (I. 58).
- μέρος**, -ους, n. *a part, share; division* (of army); *specimen*.
- μεσημβρία**, -ας, f. *mid-day*. (Lat. *meridies*.)
- μεσό-γαιος**, -α, -ον, *midland, the interior*. (*μέσος*, *middle*, and *γῆ*, *land*.)
- μέσος**, -η, -ον, *middle, midst*, (Lat. *medius*); τὸ μέσον, *the centre* (of an army), *μέση ἡμέρα*, or *μέσον ἡμέρας*, *mid-day*.
- μεστός**, -ή, -όν, *full* (with gen.)

μετά, prep. with gen. and acc. [root meaning, 'in the middle' (μέσος).]

I. with gen. with, in company with.

II. with acc. next to, after. Obs.

μετὰ ταῦτα, after these things, but

μετὰ τούτων, with these (men).

In Composition, i. sharing with; ii.

after (with verbs of motion), as

μετα-πέμπομαι; iii. change, as μετα-

γιγνώσκω, I change my mind.

μετα-μέλει, impers. it repents (with dat.); fut. -μελήσει.

μετα-πέμπω, generally in Mid. μετα-πέμπομαι, I send for, summon; fut. -πέμψομαι.

μέχρι, prep. with gen., up to, as far as; also conjunction, until.

μή, not, the dependent negative answering roughly to Lat. ne; i. not, with other particles, as εἰ μή, if not, unless; ἵνα μή, ὥς μή, ὅπως μή, that not, or lest; ii. that not, or not to with infin. as ὀμνυμι μὴ ἔχειν, I swear that I have not, κελεύω μὴ ποιεῖν, I bid you not to do it; iii. with participle, if not, as μὴ ποιῶν, if he does not do = εἰ μὴ ποιεῖ; iv. that, or lest, after verbs of fearing, as δέδοικα μὴ ποιήσης, I fear that or lest you may do; so = from after verbs of hindering, as κωλύω σε μὴ ποιεῖν, I hinder you from doing; v. in directly forbidding, with pres. imper. or aor. subj. as μὴ ποίει, do not do it (as a habit), μὴ ποιήσης, do not do it (now).

μηδέ, (conj.) neither, nor, not even.

μηδεῖς, -εμία, -έν, no one, (lit. μηδὲ εἷς, not even one.)

μηδέποτε, (adv.) never (lit. not even ever).

Μηδία, -ας, f. Media, south of the Caspian, west of the Tigris.

Μήδοκος, -ου, m. Medocus, king of the Odrysians in Thrace (VIII. 141).

Μηδοσάδης, -ου, m. Medosades, a Thracian, envoy of Seuthes (VIII. 117).

μηκέτι, (adv.) no longer.

μήν, truly indeed. (Lat. vero); καὶ μήν, moreover.

μήν, μηνός, a month.

μήποτε, (adv.) never. (μὴ and ποτέ.)

μηρός, -οῦ, m. the thigh.

μήτε, (μὴ, τε), nor; μήτε . . . μήτε, neither . . . nor; μήτε . . . τε, not only not . . . but.

μήτηρ, -τρός, f. a mother.

μητρό-πολις, -εως, f. the mother-city: capital.

μηχανάομαι, I contrive, plan, devise; fut. -ήσομαι, perf. μεμηχάνημαι. (μηχανή, a device.)

μηχανή, -ῆς, f. means, device, contrivance. (Lat. machina.)

μία, fem. of εἷς, one.

Μιθριδάτης, -ου, m. Mithridates, a Persian satrap of Cappadocia (IV. 138).

μικρός, -ά, -όν, small, little. Comp. μικρότερος, ἐλάττω and μείων: sup. μικρότατος and ἐλάχιστος, μικρόν τι, some little (money). κατὰ μικρόν, in small portions.

μιμνήσκω, (Act.) I remind, (Mid.) I remember, mention, fut. μνήσομαι, perf. μέμνημαι, with present meaning.

μισέω, I hate; fut. -ήσω. (μῖσος, hatred.)

μισθο-δότης, -ου, m. a pay-master. (μισθός, pay, and δίδωμι, I give).

μισθός, -οῦ, m. pay, reward.

μνήσομαι, fut. of μιμνήσκω.

μόλις, (adv.) with difficulty.

μόνον, (adv.) only (properly neut. of μόνος).

μόνος, -η, -ον, alone, only.

Μοσσύνοικοι, -ων, m. the Mossynoeci, a people in Asia Minor, on the Black Sea, west of Trapezus (μόσσυν, wooden tower, οἰκέω, I dwell).

μύζω, I suck in, lit. 'drink in with closed lips.' (μῦ, mute.)

Μυριάνδρος, -ου, f. Myriandrus, a town between Issus and Antioch (I. 165).

μυριάς, -άδος, f. ten thousand in number, a myriad.

μύριοι, -αι, -α, *ten thousand; countless, numberless.* (Distinguish by accents.)

Μυσία, -ας, *f. Mysia, the N. W. province of Asia Minor.*

μωρός, -ά, -όν, *foolish.*

N.

ναί, (adv.) *yes.*

νάπη, -ης, *f. a woody dell, glen.*

νάπος, -ους, *n. = νάπη.*

ναύ-αρχος, ου, *m. the commander of a fleet, an admiral.* (ναῦς, *a ship*, and ἄρχω, *I command.*)

ναυ-πηγήσιμος, -ον, *useful for ship-building.* (ναῦς, and πήγνυμι, *I fasten.*)

ναῦς, νεώς, *pl. νῆες, f. a ship.*

ναυτικός, -ή, -όν, *naval.* (ναῦς, *ship.*)

νεανίσκος, -ου, *m. a young man, a youth.*

νεκρός, -οῦ, *m. a dead body, corpse.*

νέμω, (1) *I distribute*, (2) *divide as pasture*, hence *Pass. νέμεσθαι, to be grazed on; κρέα νενεμημένα, meat divided, i.e. slices of meat, fut. νεμῶ, perf. νενέμηκα, 1 aor. ἐνειμα.*

νεό-δαπρος, -ον, *newly flayed.* (νέος, *new*, and δέρω, *I flay.*)

νέος, -α, -ον, *fresh, young.* *Comp. νεώτερος; superl. νεώτατος.*

νευρά, -ās, *f. a sinew, cord for a sling, bow-string.*

νεύσομαι, *fut. of νέω.*

νεφέλη, -ης, *f. a cloud, mist.*

νέω, *I swim, fut. νεύσομαι.*

Νέων, -ωνος, *m. Neon, an Asinaean, successor of Cheirisophus, and opponent of Xenophon.*

νικάω, *I conquer, overcome, prevail; fut. νικήσω.*

νίκη, -ης, *f. victory, conquest.*

νοέω, *I perceive, observe; fut. νοήσω, 1 aor. ἐνόησα. (νόος, mind.)*

νομίζω, *I consider, think; 1 aor. ἐνόμισα, perf. pass. νενόμισμαι. τὰ νομιζόμενα, rites of burial, lit. 'the things considered usual.'*

νόμιμος, -η, -ον, *customary, usual. (νόμος.)*

νόμος, -ου, *m. custom, law.*

νόος, -ου, *m. contr. νοῦς, νοῦ, etc., mind, thought, intention.*

νόσος, -ου, *f. disease, sickness.*

νότος, -ου, *m. the south wind. (Lat. Notus.)*

νυκτερεύω, *I pass the night, bivouac; fut. -εύσω. (νύξ.)*

νῦν, (adv.) *now. (Lat. nunc.) ὁ νῦν χρόνος, the present time.*

νύξ, νυκτός, *f. night; νυκτὸς, by night, τὴν νύκτα, all night long.*

νῶτον, -ου, *n. the back.*

Ξ.

Ξένιας, -ου, *m. Xenias, a general from Arcadia, who deserted Cyrus (I. 167).*

ξενίζω, *I entertain, 1 aor. ἐξένισα. (ξένος, a guest-friend.)*

ξένιος, -α, -ον, *hospitable; neut. pl. ξένια, friendly gifts, presents.*

ξένος, -ου, *m. a guest-friend, stranger.*

Ξενοφῶν, -ῶντος, *m. Xenophon, an Athenian, born B.C. 444, a pupil of Socrates, who carried him out of the battle of Delium (B.C. 424) on his shoulders. Xenophon was strongly opposed to the popular government at Athens, and an admirer of the Spartan oligarchy; he was therefore glad to leave Athens in 401 and join Cyrus, on the invitation of his friend Proxenus, a Theban, whose acquaintance he had made when he was a prisoner at Thebes. After the murder of Clearchus he was made commander of the army. In the spring of 399 he gave over the army to Thibron the Spartan and returned to Athens, Socrates had been put to death, and Xenophon was banished for having joined Cyrus, an ally of the Spartans. He then fought in Asia under the Spartan king Agesilaus, and on the*

return of the latter to Greece he even fought on his side against his own countrymen at Coronea, B.C. 394, for which the Spartans rewarded him with a gift of land near Olympia. He lived there till 371, and then went to Corinth, where he died, probably about 355. Besides the *Anabasis*, his chief works are (1) the *Hellenica*, a Greek history for forty-eight years, ending with the battle of Mantinea, B.C. 362; (2) *Memorabilia*, or memoirs of Socrates' conversations; (3) *Cyropaedia*, or the education of the elder Cyrus, founder of the Persian monarchy. In the *Hellenica* he attributes the authorship of the *Anabasis* to one Themistogenes of Syracuse, probably a *nom de plume* for himself.

Ξέρξης, -ου, m. *Xerxes*, king of Persia, son of Darius I (Hystaspes); he invaded Greece, and was defeated at Salamis, B.C. 480.

ξίφος, -ους, n. *a sword*.

ξύλινος, -η, -ον, *wooden*. (ξύλον.)

ξύλον, -ου, n. *wood*.

O.

ὁ, ἡ, τό, (1) the def. art. *the*; (2) pronoun *he, she*, as ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, *and he said*.

ὀβελίσκος, -ου, m. *a little spit or spear*.
ὀγδοήκοντα, *eighty*.

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this, properly, this one here*. It often refers to what is coming, as ἔλεξε τάδε, *he spoke as follows*.

ὁδός, -οῦ, f. *a way, road, journey, expedition*.

Ὀδρύσης, -ου, m. *an Odrysian*, or one of the *Odryssae*, a Thracian tribe (VIII. 139).

ὅθεν, (adv.) *whence; from whom or from which*.

οἰκαδε, (adv.) *homewards*. (οἶκος, *home*.)

οἶδα, *I know*, perf. used as pres., from εἶδον (2 aor. with pres. ὁράω). Plural ἴσμεν, ἴστε, ἴσασι, imperat. ἴσθι.

οἰκεῖος, -α, -ον, *domestic*; οἱ οἰκεῖοι, *one's family*, lit. 'those at home.'

οἰκέω, *I dwell, live*, (trans.) *inhabit*; fut. οἰκήσω, perf. pass. ὤκημαι.

οἶκημα, -ἄτος, n. *a dwelling, house*.

οἰκία, -ας, f. *a house*.

οἰκίζω *I found, settle*; 1 aor. ὤκισα, perf. ὤκισμαι.

οἴκοθεν, (adv.) *from home*. (οἶκος, *home*.)

οἴκοι, (adv.) *at home*. Properly a locative case of οἶκος.

οἶκος, -ου, m. *a house, home*. (Lat. *vicus*.)

οἶμαι. See οἴομαι.

οἶνος, -ου, m. *wine*. (Lat. *vinum*.)

οἶνοχόος, -ου, m. *a cup-bearer*. (οἶνος, and χέω, *I pour*.)

οἴομαι, contr. οἶμαι, *I think, suppose*; fut. οἰήσομαι, 1 aor. ὤήθην, imperf. ὥόμην.

οἶος, -α, -ον, *what sort of, (such) as*. (Lat. *qualis*.) οἶός τέ εἰμι, *I am able*; οἶόν τέ ἐστι, *it is possible*.

οἶς, οἶός, f. *sheep* (Lat. *ovis*); acc. pl. οἶς.

οἴχομαι, *I am gone, I depart*; fut. οἰχήσομαι, imperf. ὥχόμην.

οἰωνός, -οῦ, m. (1) *a large bird, bird of prey*; hence (2) *an omen*.

ὀκλάζω, *I bend the knee, crouch down*; fut. ὀκλάσω.

ὄκνος, -ου, m. *a shrinking, reluctance, unwillingness*.

ὀκτακισ-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *eight thousand*.
ὀκτώ, *eight*. (Lat. *octo*.)

ὀλέσαι, 1 aor. infin. act. of ὀλλυμι.

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, *few, small*; ὀλίγας πληγὰς παῖεν, *to strike too few blows*.

ὀλισθάνω, *I slip*; fut. ὀλισθήσω, 2 aor. ὤλισθον.

ὅλος, -η, -ον, *whole, entire*.

ὀμαλός, -ή, -όν, *even, level, smooth*.

ὄμηρος, -ου, m. *a hostage*.

ὁμίχλη, -ης, f. a mist, fog.
 ὀμνυμι, I swear; 1 aor. ὤμοσα, perf.
 ὁμώμοκα, perf. pass. ὁμώμοσμαι.
 ὅμοιος, -α, -ον, like.
 ὁμοίως, (adv.) likewise, equally.
 ὁμολογέω, I acknowledge, confess,
 agree; fut. -ήσω.
 ὁμόσαι, 1 aor. infin. act. of ὀμνυμι.
 ὁμοῦ, (adv.) together.
 ὅμως, (adv.) yet, nevertheless.
 ὄναρ, n. a dream; pl. ὀνείρατα (only
 in nom. and acc.).
 ὀνήσω, fut. of ὀνίημι.
 ὀνίημι, I benefit; fut. ὀνήσω, 1 aor.
 ὤνησα, 1 aor. pass. ὠνήθην.
 ὄνομα, -ατος, n. a name.
 ὀνομαστί, (adv.) by name. (ὄνομα.)
 ὄνος, -ου, m. and f. an ass.
 ὅπη, (adv.) (1) where; (2) in what
 way, as.
 ὀπισθεν, (adv.) behind.
 ὀπισθο-φυλακέω, I guard the rear;
 fut. -ήσω. (ὀπισθεν, and φυλάσσω,
 I guard.)
 ὀπισθο-φυλακία, -ας, f. the command
 of the rear-guard.
 ὀπισθο-φύλαξ, -ακος, m. commander
 of the rear-guard, pl. ὀπισθο-
 φύλακες, the rear-guard.
 ὀπίσω, (adv.) back.
 ὀπλίζω, I arm; 1 aor. ὤπλισα, perf.
 pass. ὤπλισμαι. (ὄπλα, arms.)
 ὀπλιτεύω, fut. -εύσω, I serve as a
 hoplite or heavy-armed soldier.
 ὀπλίτης, -ου, m. a hoplite, or heavy-
 armed soldier. (ὄπλα, arms.)
 ὄπλον, -ου, n. a heavy shield; mostly
 pl. ὄπλα, (heavy) arms. ἐν τοῖς
 ὄπλοις, under arms; εἰς τὰ ὄπλα,
 to the arms, i. e. the place where the
 arms were piled in camp.
 ὅποι, (adv.) whither, where.
 ὁποῖος, -α, -ον, what sort cf. (Lat.
 qualis.)
 ὅποσος, -η, -ον, how great; in pl.
 ὅποσοι, how many, as many as. Neut.
 ὅποσον, as much as, as far as.
 ὁπότε, whenever, with subj. (ὁπότε,
 ἄν.)

ὁπότε, whenever, with opt.
 ὅπου, (adv.) where, wherever.
 ὅπως, (1) how; (2) in order that, that.
 ὄραω, I see; fut. ὄσομαι, imperf. ἐώ-
 ρων, perf. ἐώρακα, perf. pass. ὤμμαι,
 1 aor. pass. ὠφθην, fut. pass. ὀφθή-
 σομαι, 2 aor. εἶδον.
 ὀργή, -ῆς, f. anger, passion.
 ὀργίζομαι, I am enraged; perf. ὠργισ-
 μαι, 1 aor. ὠργίσθην.
 ὄρεινός, -ή, -όν, mountainous, hilly;
 ὄρεινοὶ Θραῖκες, the Hill Thracians.
 (ὄρος, a mountain.)
 ὄρθιος, -α, -ον, upright, steep; τὸ
 ὄρθιον, the slope; ὄρθιοι λόχοι,
 companies in column, as opposed to
 φάλαγξ (troops in line).
 ὄρθός, -ή, -όν, straight, upright.
 ὄρθρος, -ου, m. the dawn.
 ὀρθῶς, (adv.) rightly. (ὄρθός.)
 ὀρίζω, I bound, limit, define; 1 aor.
 ὠρισα, perf. pass. ὠρισμαι.
 ὄριον, -ου, n. a boundary, frontier.
 ὄρκος, -ου, m. an oath. (Lat. Orcus,
 'the lower world,' by which they
 swore.)
 ὀρμάω, (Act.) (1) (trans.) I incite; (2)
 (intrans.) rush; (Mid.) I set out;
 fut. ὀρμήσω, perf. ὠρμηκα, perf. pass.
 ὠρμημαι. (ὀρμή, an impulse.)
 ὀρμέω, I lie at anchor; fut. ὀρμήσω,
 imperf. ὠρμουν, aorist supplied by
 ὀρμίζω. (ὄρμος, a harbour.)
 ὀρμή, -ῆς, f. impulse, movement; ἐν
 ὀρμῇ, on the start.
 ὀρμίζω, (Act.) I bring to anchor,
 moor; 1 aor. ὠρμισα, (Mid.) I lie
 at anchor. (ὄρμος, a harbour.)
 ὄρνεον, -ου, n. a bird.
 ὄρνις, ἴθος, m. and f. a bird, fowl.
 Ὀρόντης, -ου, m. Orontes. (1) a
 Persian put to death by Cyrus for
 treachery (I. 228). (2) a satrap of
 Armenia (IV. 250).
 ὄρος, -ους, n. a mountain.
 ὄροφος, -ου, m. thatch, roof.
 ὀρύττω, I dig; fut. ὀρύξω, perf. ὀρώ-
 ρυχα, perf. pass. ὀρώρυγμαι, verb.
 adj. ὀρυκτός.

ὀρφανός, -ή, -όν, *an orphan.*

ὀρχέομαι, *I dance*; fut. ὀρχήσομαι.

ὀρχησις, -εως, f. *a dance.*

ὀρχηστρίς, -ίδος, f. *a dancing girl.*

Ὀρχομένιος, -α, -ον, *Orchomenian*,
or an inhabitant of Orchomenus, a
town in Arcadia.

ὅς, ἡ, ὅ, (rel. pronoun) *who, which*;
often with the antecedent omitted,
he who, that which; ἐν ᾧ (sc.
χρόνῳ), *during which (time)*, i. e.
while.

ὅσος, -η, -ον, *how great* (Lat. *quantus*),
(pl.) ὅσοι, *how many, as many as*,
(Lat. *quot*).

ὅσος-περ, ὅση-περ, ὅσον-περ, *as great*
as; in pl. *as many as*.

ὅς-περ, ἡ-περ, ὅ-περ, *who, which, just*
the one who.

ὄσπριον, -ου, n. *pulse*,

ὅς-τις, ἡ-τις, ὅ-τι, *who, which, who-*
ever; gen. ὅτου for οὗ-τινος, dat.
ὅτῳ for ᾧτινι. ἐξ ὅτου (sc. χρό-

νου), *since.*

ὅταν, (conj.) *whenever* (always with
subj.).

ὅτε, (conj.) *when* (with ind. and opt.).

ὅτι, (conj.) (1) *that*; (2) *because.*

ὅ τι, neuter of ὅστις. ὅ τι is used
like Lat. *quum* with superl., as ὅ τι
πλείστοι, *as many as possible.*

ὅτῳ. See ὅς-τις.

οὐ, *not, no* (Lat. *non*); before a vowel
οὐκ; before an aspirate οὐχ.

οὐ, dat. οἷ, acc. ἐ, (pers. pron.) *of him-*
self.

οὐδαμῇ, (adv.) *nowhere, in no way*,
on no occasion.

οὐδαμῶς, *no-how, by no means.*

οὐδέ, (adv.) (1) *but not, nor*; οὐτε . .
οὐδὲ, *neither . . nor*, (2) *yet, not even.*

οὐδεὶς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, *no one, none*;
οὐδέν, (adverbially), *in no way, not*
at all. (οὐδὲ εἷς, *not even one.*)

οὐκ. See οὐ.

οὐκέτι, (adv.) *no longer.*

οὐκουν, *not therefore, surely not.*

Distinguish by accent from

οὐκοῦν, *therefore, then.* (Probably

orig. = οὐκουν; interrogative now
distinguished by accent.)

οὖν, *therefore, then* (Lat. *igitur*).

οὐποτε, *never.*

οὐπω, *not yet.*

οὐραγός, -οῦ, m. *the leader of the*
rear-guard. (οὐρά, *tail.*)

οὐραγός, -οῦ, m. *heaven, sky.* ὕδωρ ἐξ
οὐρανοῦ = *rain.*

οὖς, ὠτός, n. *the ear.*

οὔτε, *neither, nor.*

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, (dem. pronoun),
this.

οὗτος-ί, αὕτη-ί, τουτί, *this here* (Lat.
hic-ce).

οὕτω, before a vowel οὕτως, *so, thus.*

οὐχ. See οὐ.

ὄφελος, *benefit, service, use*, (only
used in nom. and acc.).

ὄφθαλμός, -οῦ, m. *the eye.* (ὄψομαι,
I shall see; fut. with pres. ὁράω.)

ὀχέω, (Act.) *I carry*, (Mid.) *I ride*;
fut. ὀχήσω.

ὄχημα, -ατος, n. *a vehicle, support.*

ὄχθη, -ης, f. *a bank* (of a river).

ὄχλος, -ου, m. *crowd, people*, (Lat.
vulgus); *camp followers of an army*;
ὄχλον παρέχειν, *to give trouble.*

ὀψέ, (adv.) *late.*

ὀψιος, -α, -ον, *in the evening.* (ὀψία,
sc. ὥρα, *the evening.*)

ὄψις, -εως, f. *appearance, sight*,
spectacle. (ὄψομαι.)

ὄψομαι, fut. with pres. ὁράω.

II.

παγ-κράτιον, -ου, n. *the pancratiun*,
a contest in wrestling and boxing.
(πᾶν, and κράτος, *strength.*)

πάθος, -ους, n. *suffering*; (πάσχω, *I*
suffer.) ὅ, τι τὸ πάθος εἶη, *what*
was the matter.

παθών, -οῦσα, -όν, 2 aor. part. of
πάσχω.

παιανίζω, *I raise the paean*, (*war*
cry or song of victory.) (παῖδν,
the paean.)

παιδεία, -ας, f. *education, training.*

παιδίον, -ον, n. *a child*; (dim. of παῖς.)

παῖς, παιδός, m. and f. *a child*, (boy or girl.)

παίω, *I strike*; fut. παίσω, 1 aor. ἔπαισα.

πάλαι, (adv.) *long ago*. (πάλαι ὄρῳ, *I have long been seeing*, and so with other verbs, like Lat. *jamdudum video*.)

παλαίω, *I wrestle*, fut. -αίσω.

πάλη, -ης, f. *wrestling*. (πάλλω, *I shake*.)

πάλιν, (adv.) *back, again*.

παλτόν, -οῦ, n. *a spear, javelin*. (πάλλω, *I shake*.)

παμπληθής, -ές, *very numerous*.

πάμπολος, -πόλλη, -πολυ, *very many*.

παντάπασι(ν), (adv.) *altogether, wholly, entirely*.

παντοῖος, -α, -ον, *of all sorts*, (πᾶς.)

πάνυ, (adv.) *altogether, very, fully*. (πᾶς.)

παρά, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. (root meaning *beside*). I. with gen. *from*, especially of persons, as οἱ παρὰ βασιλέως, *the (messengers) from the king*, [lit. 'from beside']. II. with dat. *at, near, with*, especially, *at the house of*, [lit. 'at the side']. III. with acc. i. of motion to a point, *to*; ii. of motion along a line, *along, on the side of*, as παρὰ θάλατταν, *along the sea (coast)*; παρ' ἀσπίδα, *on the shield side, i. e. on the left*; iii. of time, *during*; iv. (metaphorically) *compared with*, as παρὰ ταῦτα, *because of, besides*; hence *beside the mark, i. e. contrary to*, as παρὰ τοὺς νόμους, *against the laws*. In Composition, i. *beside, or near*, as πάρεμι, 'I am near,' or 'present,' ii. *beyond, or 'beside the mark,'* as παραβαίνω, *I transgress*.

παραβοηθέω, *I come to help*; fut. -ήσω.

παρ-αγγέλλω, *I command, give orders*; (lit. 'pass the word of command along (παρὰ) the line';) 1 aor. -ήγγειλα.

παρα-γίγνομαι, *I come up, am present*; fut. -γενήσομαι, 2 aor. παρ-εγενόμην.

παρ-άγω, *I bring along*, especially *lead from column into line*; fut. -άξω, 2 aor. -ήγαγον.

παράδεισος, -ου, m. *a park*. (Persian word, hence Eng. *paradise*.)

παρα-δίδωμι, *I hand over, give up, surrender*; fut. -δώσω, 1 aor. παρ-έδωκα, 1 aor. pass. -εδόθην.

παρ-αινέω, *I recommend, exhort, address*; fut. -αινέσω.

παρα-καλέω, *I send for, summon, exhort*; fut. -καλέσω.

παρά-κειμαι, *I lie beside, or near*; fut. -κείσομαι. (Used as the passive of παρατίθημι.)

παρα-κελεύομαι, *I exhort, encourage*; fut. -κελεύσομαι.

παρα-κέλευσις, gen. -εως, f. *a cheering on, encouraging*.

παρα-λαμβάνω, *I take over, receive, take to myself*; fut. -λήψομαι, perf. παρ-είληφα, 2 aor. -έλαβον.

παρα-πέμπω, *I send along, escort*; fut. -πέμψω.

παρα-πλέω, *I sail past, sail along*; fut. -πλεύσομαι.

παρασάγγης, -ου, m. *a parasang, or Persian measured distance = 30 stadia, or 3½ miles*.

παρα-σκευάζω, *I get ready, prepare*; so Mid. *prepare for (my own) use*; fut. -σκευάσω, perf. pass. παρ-εσκεύασμαι.

παρα-σκευή, -ης, f. *preparation*.

παρα-τάττω, *I draw up, arrange* (παρὰ, *side by side, i. e. in order of battle*); fut. -τάξω, perf. pass. -τέταγμαι.

παρα-τείνω, *I stretch out, extend* (φάλαγγα); fut. -τενῶ, 1 aor. παρ-έτεινα.

παρα-τίθημι, *I lay down beside*; fut. -θήσω, 2 aor. mid. -έθημην.

παρα-τρέχω, *I run by, run past*; fut. -δραμοῦμαι, 2 aor. παρ-έδραμον.

παρ-εγγυάω, *I pass (the word) from hand to hand, command.*

πάρ-ειμι, *I am present, arrive*: fut. -έσομαι, impf. παρ-ῆν. (ἐν τῇ παρόντι, *at the present time.*)

πάρ-ειμι, *I pass by, pass on*; impf. παρ-ῆειν.

παρ-ελαύνω, *I march past, ride past*, 1 aor. -ήλασα.

παρ-έρχομαι, *I go past, pass along, pass through*; 2 aor. -ῆλθον.

παρ-έχω, *I furnish, supply; render, produce* (φόβον), (with ἑαυτὸν, *give myself over to*; πράγματα παρ-έχειν, *to give trouble*); 2 aor. -έσχον, impf. -εἶχον.

παρ-ήκω, *I reach, extend along*; fut. -ήξω.

Παρθένιος, -ου, m. *the Parthenius, a river dividing Paphlagonia from Bithynia.*

Πάριον, -ου, n. *Parium, a town in Mysia* (VIII. 109).

παρ-ίστημι, (trans.) *I place by, set near*; (intrans. 2 aor. and perf.) *I stand by*; fut. παρα-στήσω, 1 aor. παρ-έστησα, 2 aor. παρ-έστην.

πάρ-οδος, -ου, f. *a passage. (παρὰ, alongside, and ὁδὸς, a road.)*

Παρύσατις, -ιδος, f. *Parysatis, mother of Artaxerxes Mnemon, and Cyrus the younger.*

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, *all, every. (τὰ πάντα, (1) the whole, everything; (2) adv. completely.)*

Πασίων, -ωνος, m. *Pasion, a general from Megara, who deserted Cyrus* (I. 167).

πάσχω, *I suffer, suffer misfortune*; fut. πείσομαι, 2 perf. πέπονθα, 2 aor. ἔπαθον. (εὖ, or κακῶς πάσχειν, *to be well or ill treated.*)

πατάσσω, *I strike*; fut. πατάξω, 1 aor. ἐπάταξα. See πλήττω.

Πατηγύας, -ου, m. *Patēgyas, a Persian, in the army of Cyrus* (II. 4).

πατήρ, πατρός, m. *a father.*

πατρίς, -ίδος, f. *native country, fatherland. (Lat. patria.)*

πατρῷος, -α, -ον, *hereditary, ancestral.*

παύω, (Act.) *I cause to cease, put a stop to*; (Mid.) *I cease, stop*; fut. παύσω, perf. πέπαυκα, perf. pass. πέπαυμαι.

Παφλαγονία, -ας, f. *Paphlagonia, a district of Asia Minor, on the south coast of the Euxine, between Bithynia and Pontus. It was famous for its cavalry.*

Παφλαγών, -όνος, m. *a Paphlagonian.*

πέδη, -ης, f. *a chain for the feet, fetter. (ποὺς, gen. ποδὸς, a foot.)*

πεδῖον, -ου, n. *a level surface, plain.*

πεζῇ, (adv.) *on foot, by land, (prop. dat. of πεζὸς, with ὁδῶ understood.)*

πεζός, -ή, -όν, *on foot* (Lat. *pedestris*). (πεζῇ δύναμις, *infantry force*).

πείθω, (Act.) *I persuade* (with acc.); (Mid.) *I obey, believe* (with dat.); fut. πείσω, 1 aor. ἔπεισα, perf. pass. πέπεισμαι, 2 perf. πέποιθα, *I trust.*

πειράομαι, *I try, attempt, with infin., also with ὅπως and subj.; with genitive, I make trial of*; fut. πειράσομαι.

πείσομαι, fut. of πάσχω.

πειστέον, *one must persuade or obey, verb adj. of πείθω or πείθομαι.*

πελάζω, *I approach*; fut. πελάσω.

Πελοπόννησος, (Πέλαπος νῆσος, *the island of Pelops*), *the Peloponnesus, peninsula of Southern Greece, now the Morea.*

πελτάζω, *I serve as a peltast, i. e. with a light shield* (πέλτη).

πελταστής, -οῦ, m. *a peltast, targeteer, (because armed with the πέλτη.)*

πέλτη, -ης, f. *a light shield covered with leather. The large shield was called ἀσπίς.*

πέμπτος, -η, -ον, *fifth. (πέντε, five.)*

πέμπω, *I send*; fut. πέμψω, perf. πέπομφα, 1 aor. pass. ἐπέμφθην.

πένομαι, *I am poor. (πένης, poor.)*

πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *five-hundred*.
πέντε, *five*.

πεντήκοντα, *fifty*.

πεντηκοντήρ, -ῆρος, m. *a commander of fifty men*, or a half company.

πεντηκόντορος, -ου, f. (sc. ναῦς) *a fifty-oared galley*, with one bank of 25 oars on each side.

πέ-πονθα, perf. of πάσχω.

πέ-πρα-κα, perf. of πιπράσκω.

πέ-πτωκα, perf. of πίπτω.

πέ-πωκα, perf. of πίνω.

περαίνω, *I finish, accomplish*; fut. περᾶνῶ, perf. pass. πεπέρασμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐπεράνθην.

περαιώω, (Act.) *I convey across*; (Mid.) *I cross*; fut. περαιώσω.

πέραν, (adv.) *across, on the other side*. (τὸ πέραν, *the opposite side*.)

Πέργαμος, -ου, f. *Pergamus*, a town in Mysia, near the river Caicus (VIII. 508); afterwards the head of an important kingdom under Eumenes II, and in the second century B.C. the capital of the Roman province of Asia. It was celebrated for its library and school of literature, as well as for the invention of *parchment*, which derives its name (through the French *parchemin*) from 'Pergamena Charta.' Pergamus was an early seat of Christianity, and one of the Seven Churches of Asia (Rev. ii. 12). [The name means 'citadel.' Cp. the *Pergamus* or 'citadel' of Troy; Greek πύργος ('castle'), Eng. *burgh*.]

πέρδιξ, -ῖκος, m. and f. *a partridge*. (Lat. *perdix*.)

περί, prep. with gen., dat., and acc.; *around, about, 'round the ends of'* (cf. πέρα, *beyond*, πέρας, *an end*). I. with gen. i. *about, concerning, for*, like Lat. *de*; ii. (rarely), *above* in old sense of *beyond*, as περὶ πάντος ποιείσθαι, *to consider it above all*, i.e. *all-important*; περὶ πολλοῦ, *above much*, i.e. *very*

much. II. with dat., *around*, especially of parts of the body, as περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις, *round their necks*. III. with acc., i. *around about*, as οἱ περὶ αὐτὸν, *those about him*, i.e. *he and his men*; ii. of time, *about*; iii. *about, concerning, with regard to*. In Composition, i. *around, about*; ii. *above*, i.e. *very much*, like Lat. *per-* in *per-magnus*.

περι-βάλλω, *I throw around, surround, embrace*; fut. -βαλῶ, 2 aor. -έβαλον.

περι-γίγνομαι, (1) *I am superior to, excel*; (2) *I turn out to be*; fut. -γενήσομαι, 2 aor. -εγενόμην.

περί-ειμι, *I go round*. (εἶμι, *ibo*.)

περι-ἵστημι, (trans.) *I place round*; (intrans.) 2 aor. and perf. *I stand round*; fut. -στήσω, 2 aor. -έστην.

περι-κυκλώω, *I encircle*; fut. -ώσω.

περι-μένω, *I wait for*; fut. -μενῶ, 1 aor. -έμεινα.

Περίνθιος, -α, -ον, *Perinthian*, or inhabitant of Perinthus.

Πέρινθος, -ου, f. *Perinthus*, a town in Thrace on the Propontis, afterwards called Heraclea, whence its modern name Ereklî.

περι-πήγνυμι, *I fix around* (Pass.) *I am frozen around*.

περι-πλέω, *I sail round*; fut. -πλεύσομαι.

περι-ρρέω, (1) *I flow around*; (2) *I slip from around, slip off*; 2 aor. pass. περι-ερρύην.

περι-ρρυήναι, 2 aor. infin. pass. of περι-ρρέω.

περι-φέρω, *I carry round*; fut. -οίσω, 1 aor. -ήνεγκα.

Πέρσης, -ου, m. *a Persian*, pl. οἱ Πέρσαι. The Persian empire included Asia Minor, and extended from it to the North of India, comprising the modern Persia and Asiatic Turkey. It was divided into twenty satrapies or provinces.

Περσικός, -ή, -όν, *Persian*.

Περσιστί, (adv.) *in the Persian language, in Persian.*

πεσεῖν, 2 aor. infin. of πίπτω.

πесоῦμαι, fut. of πίπτω.

πεσών, 2 aor. part. of πίπτω.

πέτομαι, *I fly*; 2 aor. ἐπτόμην.

πέτρα, -as, f. *a rock.*

πέφευγα, 2 perf. of φεύγω.

πηγή, -ῆς, f. *a fountain, spring, source* (of a river).

πήγνυμι, *I fix, freeze, (of blood) curdle*; 1 aor. ἔπηξα, 2 perf. πέπηγα, *I am fixed*, 2 aor. pass. ἐπάγην.

πηλός, -οῦ, m. *clay, mud.*

πιέζω, *I press, squeeze*; *distress.*

πίνω, *I drink*; fut. πίομαι, 2 aor. ἔπιον, perf. πέπωκα.

πιπράσκω, *I sell*; perf. πέπρακα, 1 aor. pass. ἐπράθην. Usual pres. παλέω, for the fut. and 2 aor. ἀποδώσομαι and ἀπ-εδόμην are used.

πίπτω, *I fall*; fut. πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔπεσον, perf. ἐπέτωκα.

Πισίδης, -ου, m., pl. οἱ Πισίδαι, *the Pisidians, warlike mountaineers of the Taurus range, between Lycia and Cilicia, where the robber-tribes of the Caramanians now live.*

πιστεύω, *I trust*; fut. -εύσω, 1 aor. ἐπίστευσα (with dat.).

πίστις, -ews, f. *trust, fidelity, confidence.*

πιστός, -ή, -όν, *faithful, trustworthy.* τὰ πιστὰ, *pledges.*

πίτυς, -υος, f. *a pine-tree.*

πλαίσιον, -ου, n. *an oblong.*

πλέθρον, -ου, n. *a plethrum* = about 34 English yards.

πλείους, for πλείονες and πλείονας, nom. and acc. pl. of πλείων, comp. of πολὺς.

πλεῖστος, -ή, -ον, superl. of πολὺς.

πλείω, for πλείονα, acc. masc. sing. or neut. pl. of πλείων.

πλείων, -ον, comp. of πολὺς.

πλεον-εκτέω, *I have or gain an advantage.* (πλέον, *more*, and ἔχω, *I have.*)

πλευρά, -ās, f. *the side*; *flank* (of an army).

πλεύσομαι, fut. of πλέω.

πλέω, *I sail*; fut. πλεύσομαι, 1 aor. ἔπλευσα.

πληγή, -ῆς, f. *a blow.* (πλήττω, *I strike.*)

πλήθος, -ους, n. *a large number, multitude*; *extent.* (πολὺς, *many.*)

πλήν, (adv. as prep. with gen.) *except.* Also πλὴν ἤ, *except.*

πλήρης, -es, *full* (with gen.).

πλησιάζω, *I draw near, approach.* (πλησίον, *near.*)

πλησίον, (adv.) *near*; (superl. πλησιátatos, *nearest, next* (with gen.).

πλήττω, *I strike*; fut. πλήξω, perf. pass. ἐπέπληγμαι, 2 aor. pass. ἐπλήγην. For the 1 aor. act. ἐπάταξα is used.

πλοῖον, -ου, n. *a boat, transport, merchant vessel, ship.* (πλέω, *I sail.*)

πλοῦς, -οῦ, m. *a sailing, voyage.* (πλέω, *I sail.*)

πλουτίζω, *I make rich*; (Mid.) *I get rich.* (πλούτος, *wealth.*)

πνεῦμα, -ατος, n. *breath, wind, breeze.* (πνέω, *I breathe.*)

πνέω, *I blow, breathe*; imperf. ἔπνεον, fut. πνεύσομαι.

πόθεν, (adv.) *whence?* ποθεν, *from somewhere.*

πόθος, -ου, m. *a longing, desire, regret.*

ποῖ, (adv.) *whither?* ποι, *to some place, somewhere.*

ποιέω, *I make, do, cause*; fut. -ήσω, perf. πεποίηκα. ποιεῖν ἐξέτασιν, *to hold a review.* εὖ or κακῶς ποιεῖν, *to treat well or ill.* (Mid.) (1) *I make for myself*; (2) *I make to myself, i. e. consider.*

ποικίλος, -η, -ον, *variegated, tattooed.*

ποίος, -α, -ον, (interrog.) *of what sort?* Lat. *qualis.* ποῖός τις; *what sort of man?*

πολεμέω, *I make war upon*, with dat. or prep. πρὸς. (πόλεμος, *war.*)

πολεμικός, -ή, -όν, *warlike.* πολεμικόν, *a war-cry*; τὸ πολεμικόν, *the*

- signal for battle; τὰ πολεμικά, war, military service.
- πολέμιος, -α, -ον, and -ος, -ον, hostile, a (public) enemy (Lat. *hostis*), as distinguished from ἐχθρὸς, a private enemy (Lat. *inimicus*).
- πόλεμος, -ον, m. war.
- πολιορκέω, I besiege, blockade; fut. -ήσω.
- πόλις, -εως, f. a city, state = Lat. *civitas*, whereas ἄστυ = Lat. *urbs*.
- πολλάκις, (adv.) often. (πολύς.)
- πολλάχῃ, (adv.) in many places, on many occasions, often. (πολύς.)
- Πολυκράτης, -εος, acc. -η or -ην, m. Polycrates, an Athenian captain (VIII. 432).
- Πολύνικος, -ον, m. Polynīcus, a Lacedaemonian, sent by Thibron to ask for the services of the Greek army against Tissaphernes (VIII. 329).
- πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, much, many; also large, long. οἱ πολλοὶ, the most, the majority. Compar. πλείων, superl. πλείστος. πολύ, as adv. much, by far.
- πολυ-τελής, -ές, expensive, (πολὺς, much, and τέλος, expense.)
- πομπή, -ῆς, f. a procession. (πέμπω, I send.)
- πονέω, I work, labour; perf. πεπόνηκα, (πόνος, labour.)
- πονηρός, -ά, -όν, bad, worthless, wicked; unsuitable; dangerous, hostile. πονηρῶς, with difficulty.
- πόνος, -ον, m. work, labour, toil; also result of labour.
- πόντος, -ον, m. the (deep) sea (especially the Euxine); also the district of Pontus.
- πορεία, -ας, f. a march, journey.
- πορευτός, verb. adj. of πορεύομαι, one must march.
- πορεύω, (Act.) I convey; (Mid.) I march; fut. -εύσομαι.
- πορθέω, I destroy, sack; fut. -ήσω.
- πορίζω, I furnish, provide, supply; perf. pass. πεπόρισμαι, I aor. pass. ἐπορίσθην. (πόρος.)
- πόρος, -ον, m. a passage; hence means, opportunity.
- πόρρω, (adv.) far from (with gen.).
- πορφύρεος, -α, -ον, contr. -ρούς, -ρά, -ροῦν, purple, scarlet.
- πόσος, -η, -ον, how much? how great? πόσον, how far?
- ποταμός, -οῦ, m. a river.
- ποτε, once upon a time; πότε, when? εἴ ποτε, if ever.
- πότερον and πότερα, whether; followed by ἤ, or. Lat. *utrum—an*.
- ποτόν, -οῦ, n. drink. (ποτὸς, verb. adj. of πίνω, I drink.)
- ποῦ, (adv.) where. που, (1) somewhere, (2) somehow, especially perhaps, I suppose, no doubt.
- πούς, ποδός, m. a foot.
- πράγμα, -ατος, n. a deed, action, affair, matter; πράγματα παρέχειν, to give trouble. (πράττω, I do.)
- πράττω, I do, act; fut. πράξω, perf. pass. πέπραγμαι, I aor. pass. ἐπράχθην. εὖ or κακῶς πράττειν, to fare well or ill.
- πρέσβυς, -υος, or -εως, m. an old man; pl. πρέσβεις, ambassadors, comp. πρεσβύτερος.
- πρίασθαι, to buy; from 2 aor. ἐπριάμην: ὠνέομαι supplies the other tenses.
- πρίν, (conj.) before. (1) with infin., as πρίν ἐλθεῖν, before coming; (2) with indic., as πρίν ἦλθε, before he came; (3) after negatives, as πρίν ἂν ἐλθῇ, and πρίν ἐλθοι.
- πρό, prep. with gen. only. I. of place, before, in front of; hence of fighting for, in defence of. II. of time, before. III. instead of, in preference to. In Composition, before, forward, beforehand, in preference to. (Cp. Lat. *pro, prae*.)
- προ-άγω, I lead forward; fut. -άξω, 2 aor. -ήγαγον.
- προ-βαίνω, I go forward, advance; fut. -βήσομαι.
- προ-βάλλω, (1) I throw forward, ad-

vance (τὰ ὄπλα). (2) *I put forward, propose*; fut. -βαλῶ, 2 aor. -έβαλον.

πρό-βατον, -ον, n. *a sheep* (properly any animal that *walks*, from προ-βαίνω).

προβολή, -ῆς, f. *a putting forward*; δόρατα εἰς προβολὴν καθιέναι, to 'couch' their lances. (προ-βάλλω.)

πρό-γονος, -ου, m. *a forefather, ancestor*.

προ-δίδωμι, *I give up, betray*; fut. -δώσω.

προ-εἶδον, 2 aor. with pres. προ-οράω.

πρό-ειμι, *I go forward, advance*. (εἶμι.)

προ-εἶπον, 2 aor. with fut. προ-ερῶ, pres. -φημι. See προ-λέγω.

προ-ελαύνω, *I drive forward, ride forward*, sc. ἵππον.

προ-εργάζομαι, *I work beforehand*; perf. pass. -είργασμαι. ἡ προ-ειργασμένη δόξα, the glory before gained.

*προ-ερέω, contr. προ-ερῶ, *I say beforehand or publicly, order*, as fut. of προ-εἶπον, perf. -είρηκα.

προ-έρχομαι, *I march on, advance*; 2 aor. -ῆλθον.

προ-έχω, *I excel, surpass*; fut. -έξω, 2 aor. -εσχον.

προ-ηγورέω, *I speak in behalf of* (with gen.).

προ-θέω, *I run forward*; fut. -θεύσομαι.

προθυμία, -ας, f. *readiness, eagerness, zeal*.

πρόθυμος, -ον, *ready, eager, zealous*. (πρὸ, forward, and θυμός, spirit.)

προθύμως, (adv.) *eagerly, readily*.

προ-κατα-λαμβάνω, *I seize beforehand, preoccupy*; 2 aor. -έλαβον, fut. -λήψομαι, perf. -είληφα.

πρό-κειμαι, *I lie before, extend forward*; fut. -κείσομαι.

προ-κινδυνεύω, *I incur danger beforehand*.

Προκλῆς, -έος, m. *Procles*, governor of Teuthrania, a district of Mysia.

προ-λέγω, *I tell publicly, give warning*; fut. -λέξω, for 2 aor. προ-εἶπον.

Πρόξενος, -ου, m. *Proxenus*, a Theban, friend of Cyrus and Xenophon, who induced Xenophon to join the expedition (IV. II).

προ-οράω, *I see before me*; fut. -όψομαι, 2 aor. -εἶδον.

προ-πέμπω, *I send forward, escort, accompany*; fut. -πέμψω.

προ-πίνω, *I drink any one's health*; fut. -πίομαι, 2 aor. -έπιον.

πρός, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. Root meaning to the front (from πρὸ, cp. πρόσ-θεν); hence *near*. I. with gen. i. *from, from near*; hence ii. *on the part of, by*; iii. *in the presence of, before*, as πρὸς θεῶν, *before the gods*, i. e. *by the gods*, in swearing. II. with dat. i. *at, near*; ii. *besides*, as πρὸς τούτοις, *besides this, moreover*, Lat. *praeterea*. III. with acc. i. *to, towards*, sometimes *against*; ii. *with regard to, according to*, as πρὸς ταῦτα, *therefore*, τὰ πρὸς πόλεμον, *what concerns war*, πρὸς βίαν, *by force*, πρὸς ἡδονήν, *for pleasure*, etc. In Composition, i. *to or towards*; ii. *besides*; iii. *near*.

προς-άγω, *I lead on, lead forward*; fut. -άξω, 2 aor. -ήγαγον.

προς-αιτέω, *I ask besides, ask more*; fut. -αιτήσω.

προς-βαίνω, *I go to, approach, advance*; fut. -βήσομαι, 2 aor. -έβην.

προς-βάλλω, *I attack, charge up*; fut. -βαλῶ, 2 aor. -έβαλον.

προς-βολή, -ῆς, f. *an attack, assault*.

προς-γίγνομαι, *I come to, am added to*; 2 aor. -εγενόμην.

προς-δίδωμι, *I give besides, add*; fut. -δώσω, 1 aor. -έδωκα.

προς-δοκάω, *I expect*; fut. -δοκήσω, 1 aor. -έδοκησα.

πρός-ειμι, *I go to, approach, come up*. (εἶμι, Lat. *ibo*.)

προς-ελαύνω, *I drive to, ride up* (ἵππον), *march up*.

προς-έρχομαι, *I come up, approach*; 2 aor. -ἦλθον.

προς-έχω, *I bring to, apply*; (νοῦν προς-έχω, *I turn my mind to, attend to*;) imperf. -εἶχον, 2 aor. -έσχον.

προς-ήκω, *I extend to, reach*. Impers. προς-ήκει, *it becomes, it is fitting*.

πρόσθεν, (adv.) (1) of place, *in front of, before*. (2) of time, *before, formerly*. τὰ πρόσθεν, *the van of an army*. ὁ πρόσθεν χρόνος, *the former time*. τὸ πρόσθεν, *formerly*.

προς-ίημι, (Act.) *I let come to, admit*, (Mid.) *admit (to oneself), approve*; fut. -ήσω, 1 aor. -ἤκα.

προς-κτάομαι, *I gain besides, gain for*; fut. -κτήσομαι, 1 aor. -εκτησάμην.

προς-κυνέω, *I kiss the earth before any one, i.e. do obeisance, worship, salute*; fut. -κυνήσω, 1 aor. -εκύνησα.

προς-λαμβάνω, *I receive besides*; with gen. *take part in, help*; fut. -λήψομαι, 2 aor. -έλαβον.

πρός-οδος, -ου, f. *a going to, approach, procession*.

προς-όμνυμι, *I swear besides*; fut. -ομοῦμαι, 1 aor. -ώμοσα.

προς-πεπερονημένος, perf. pass. part. from προς-περονάω.

προς-περονάω, *I fasten with a skewer*. (περόνη, *a skewer*.)

προς-πολεμέω, *I make war against*; fut. -ήσω.

προς-τρέχω, *I run up to*; fut. -δραμοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έδραμον.

προς-φέρω, (Act.) *I bring to, conduct*, (Mid.) *I bear myself towards, i.e. conduct myself*.

πρόσω, (adv.) (1) *forwards*, (2) with gen. *far off*. Comp. προσωτέρω, *farther*.

πρόσωπον, -ου, n. *face, countenance*.

προτεραῖος, -α, -ον, adj., as ἡ προτεραία (ἡμέρα), *the day before*.

πρότερος, -α, -ον, *earlier, former, first of two (Lat. prior)*; πρότερον,

τὸ πρότερον, (adv.) *previously, on a former occasion*; comp. of πρὸ, superl. πρῶτος.

προ-τρέχω, *I run forward*; fut. -δραμοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έδραμον.

προ-φαίνω, (Act.) *I show forth*, (Mid.) *appear, become visible*.

προφύλαξ, -ακος, m. *an advanced guard, outpost*.

προ-χωρέω, *I go on, proceed favourably*.

πρύμνα, -ης, f. *the stern of a ship*.

πρῶρα, -ας, f. *the prow or bows of a ship*.

πρωρεύς, -έως, m. *the man at the prow, who gave the signal to the steersman, the look-out man*.

πρῶτος, -η, -ον, (superl. of πρὸ) *first*. οἱ πρῶτοι, *the vanguard*. (Adv. πρῶτον, τὸ πρῶτον, *at first, in the first place*.)

πταίω, *I strike, dash*; 1 aor. ἔπταισα.

πτέρυξ, -ῦγος, f. *a wing*.

πυγμή, -ῆς, f. *a boxing match*.

πύλη, -ης, f. *a gate, opening*; pass.

πυνθάνομαι, (1) *I ask*, (2) *I hear (on enquiry), learn*; fut. πεύσομαι, perf. πέπυσμαι 2 aor. ἐπυθόμην.

πύξ, (adv.) *with the fist*.

πῦρ, πῦρός, n. *fire*. In pl. πυρά, *watchfires*.

πῦρός, -οῦ, m. *wheat*, mostly in pl.

Πυρρίχη, -ης, f. (sc. ὄρχησις), *the Pyrrhic dance, a military dance in armour*.

πω, (adv.) *yet*. With negatives, as οὐπω, *not yet*.

πωλέω, *I sell*; fut. πωλήσω. Other tenses are supplied from other verbs, as fut. ἀπο-δώσομαι, 2 aor. ἀπεδόμην; perf. πέπρακα (from πιπράσκω).

πῶποτε, (adv.) *at any time, ever*. οὐ πῶποτε, *never*.

πῶς, (interrogative) *how?* but πως, *somehow*. εἰ πως, *in any way, if at all*.

P.

ῥάδιος, -α, -ον, *easy*; comp. ῥάων, superl. ῥᾶστος.

ῥαδίως, (adv.) *easily*; comp. ῥᾶον, superl. ῥᾶστα.

ῥέω, *I flow*; fut. ῥεύσομαι, 2 aor. ἔρρυν.

ῥίγος, -ους, n. *cold*.

ῥίπτω, *I throw, fling, cast, throw off*; fut. ῥίψω, 1 aor. ἔρριψα.

ῥίς, ῥινός, f. *the nose*.

Ῥόδιος, -α, -ον, *Rhodian*, or inhabitant of Rhodes, an island in the Levant, off the S. W. coast of Asia Minor. The Rhodians were famed as slingers.

ῥυθμός, -ον, m. *measure, (musical) time*.

Σ.

σαλπιγκτής, -ον, m. *a trumpeter*. (σάλπιγξ.)

σάλπιγξ, -ιγγος, f. *a trumpet*.

Σάρδεις, -εων, pl. f. *Sardis*, capital of Lydia; the starting-point of the expedition (I. 46).

σατράπης, -ον, m. *satrap, viceroy, governor* of a province of the Persian Empire.

σαυτόν, contracted from σεαυτόν.

σαφής, -ες, *clear, manifest*. (Adv. σαφῶς, *clearly*.)

σεαυτόν, (reflexive pronoun) *thyself, yourself*; gen. σεαυτοῦ (σαυτοῦ), *your own*.

Σεύθης, -ον, m. *Seuthes*, a Thracian prince. His father had been driven out of his territory on the Propontis, and Seuthes recovered this with the help of Xenophon's army.

σημαίνω, *I signify, give a sign, give the signal* (in battle); fut. σημανῶ, 1 aor. ἐσήμνηα.

σημεῖον, -ον. n. *a sign, signal*.

σήσαμον, -ον, n. *sesamē*, a short plant with a single flower, from the seeds of which oil cake was made.

σιγάω, *I am silent*; fut. -ήσομαι, 1 aor. ἐσίγησα.

σιγή, -ῆς, f. *silence*; dat. σιγῇ, *in silence, silently*.

Σιλανός, -ον, m. *Silanus*, (1) an Ambracian prophet (VI. 180), (2) a native of Macistus, a town of Elis on the Peloponnesus (VIII. 291).

σίνομαι, *I injure, harass*.

Σινωπεύς, -έως, m. *a Sinopian*; pl. οἱ Σινώπεις.

Σινώπη, -ης, f. *Sinope*, a Greek colony in Paphlagonia on a peninsula running out into the Black Sea. It is the finest anchorage for ships on the north coast of Asia Minor; a Turkish fleet was destroyed there by the Russians just before the breaking out of the Crimean War, in 1853.

Σιτάλκας, -ον, m. *Sitalcas*, king of the Odrýsae in Thrace.

ὁ Σιτάλκας, *the Sitalcas-song*, or song in honour of one of the kings of that name.

σιτευτός, -ή, -όν, *fed up, fattened*. (Verb. adj. of σιτεύω, from σῖτος, *corn*.)

σιτίον, -ον, n. *food, provisions*. (σῖτος, *corn*.)

Σιττάκη, -ης, f. *Sittace*, a town in Babylonia on the Tigris.

σιωπάω, *I am silent, keep silence*; fut. -ήσομαι. (σιωπή, *silence*.)

σκέλος, -ους, n. *the leg*.

[σκέπτομαι], see σκοπέω.

σκευάζω, *I prepare, equip, dress*; fut. -ᾶσω, perf. pass. ἐσκεύασμαι. (σκευή.)

σκευή, -ῆς, f. *dress*.

σκεῦος, -ους, n. *a vessel*; pl. σκεύη, *baggage*. (Lat. *impedimenta*.)

σκευο-φορέω, *I carry baggage*. (σκεῦος, and φέρω, *I carry*.)

σκευο-φόρος, -ον, *carrying baggage*. τὰ σκευοφόρα (sc. κτήνη), *the beasts of burden* in the train of an army, *baggage train*.

σκέψασθαι, see σκοπέω.

σκηνάω and σκηνέω, *I live in tents, I am quartered*, fut. -ήσω. (σκηνή.)

σκηνή, -ῆς, f. a tent.

σκηπτός, -οῦ, m. a thunderbolt.

σκηπτούχος, -ου, m. the sceptre-bearer (an attendant on the king).

σκληρός, -ά, -όν, dry, hard.

σκοπέω, I keep a look out for, watch, observe, reconnoitre; imperf. ἐσκοπουν, (Mid.) consider, with tenses from σκέπτομαι, fut. σκέψομαι, I aor. ἐσκεψάμην, perf. pass. ἔσκεμμαι.

σκοπός, -οῦ, m. a spy, scout.

σκότος, -ους, n. darkness.

σμήνος, -ους, n. a swarm of bees.

Σμίκρης, -ητος, m. Smicres, an Arcadian general (VII. 68).

σός, σή, σόν. (poss. adj.) thy, thine.

σοφία, -ας, f. wisdom. (σοφός.)

σοφός, -ή, -όν, wise, clever.

σπάνιος, -α, -ον, scarce, rare.

Σπάρτη, -ης, f. Sparta, or Lacedaemon, capital of Laconia.

Σπαρτιάτης, a Spartan, i.e. one of the Dorian immigrants. They looked down upon the Perioeci, or natives, as the Normans did upon the Saxons in England.

σπάω, I draw, drag, pull; fut. σπᾶσω, I aor. ἔσπασα.

σπείρω, I scatter, sow seed; fut. σπερῶ, I aor. ἔσπειρα, perf. ἔσπαρκα.

σπείσομαι, fut. mid. of σπένδω.

σπένδω, I pour a libation; (Mid.) lit. 'pour libations one with another,' i.e. make a truce; fut. σπείσομαι, I aor. ἔσπειςάμην.

σπεύδω, I urge on, make haste; fut. σπεύσω.

σπονδή, -ῆς, f. (sing.) a libation, (pl.) a treaty. (σπένδω.)

σπουδάξω, I make haste, am busy, am in earnest; fut. σπουδάσω.

σπουδή, -ῆς, f. haste.

στάδιον, -ου, n. a stade, a furlong, rather more than $\frac{1}{5}$ of an English mile. In counting roughly every 10 stades may be taken as an English mile.

σταθμός, -οῦ, m. a station, halting-place, (hence) a day's march.

σταίην, 2 aor. opt. of ἵστημι.

στάς, 2 aor. part. of ἵστημι.

στασιάζω, I rebel, revolt, raise a faction. (στάσις, faction.)

σταύρωμα, -ατος, n. a palisade.

στέγη, -ης, f. a roof. εἰς στέγας, lit. 'into roofs,' i.e. under cover,

στέλλω, I send, equip, (Mid.) I march; fut. στελῶ, I aor. ἔστειλα, 2 aor. pass. ἐστάλην.

στενός, -ή, -όν, narrow; comp. -ότερος, superl. -ότατος (from old form στεινός).

στενο-χωρία, -ας, f. a narrow passage.

στερέω, I deprive; (Pass.) στερέομαι or στέρομαι, I am deprived of; fut. στερήσω, perf. pass. ἔστέρημαι.

στέρνον, -ον, n. the breast.

στέφανος, -ου, m. a wreath, crown, garland.

στήναι, 2 aor. inf. of ἵστημι.

στίβος, -ου, m. a track, lit. 'trodden path,' (from στείβω, I tread.)

στίξω, I prick; perf. pass. ἔστιγμαι, part. ἐστιγμένος, tattooed.

στίφος, -ους, n. a close body of men.

στολή, -ῆς, f. a robe, dress.

στόλος, -όν, (1) a march, (2) array, army.

στόμα, -ατος, n. mouth, opening; hence front of an army.

στρατεία, -ας, f. an expedition. (στρατός, army.)

στράτευμα, -ατος, n. an army, company, division.

στρατεύω, (Act.) I march, (Mid.) I serve as a soldier, fut. -εύσω.

στρατηγός, -οῦ, m. a general. (στρατός, army, and ἡγέομαι, I lead.)

στρατιά, -ās, f. an army.

στρατιώτης, -ου, m. a soldier.

στρατοπεδεύω, I encamp; fut. -εύσω. (στρατόπεδον, a camp.)

πτρατόπεδον, -ου, n. a camp. (στρατός, an army, and πέδον, a plain.) -

στρατός, -οῦ, m. *an army.*

στρεπτός, -οῦ, m. *a chain, necklace.*
Properly verb. adj. of στρέφω, *I twist.*

στρέφω, *I turn, twist, (Mid.) wheel about; fut. στρέψω, I aor. ἔστρεψα, pf. pass. ἔστραμμαι, 2 aor. pass. ἔστράφην.*

στρουθός, -οῦ, m. and f. *a sparrow,*
but μέγας στρουθός, *an ostrich.*

στυγνός, -ή, -όν, *disagreeable, gloomy.*
(στυγέω, *I hate.*)

στῶ, 2 aor. subj. of ἵστημι.

σύ, pers. pron. *thou.*

συγ-γενής, -ές, *related, a kinsman.*
(σύν, *with,* and γίγνομαι, *I am born.*)

συγ-γίγνομαι, *I am with, have intercourse with, associate with, fut. γενήσομαι, 2 aor. -εγενόμην.*

συγ-καλέω, *I call together; fut. -καλέσω, I aor. συν-εκάλεσα.*

συγ-κάμπτω, *I bend together, bend up; fut. -κάμψω, I aor. συν-έκαμψα.*

συγ-κλείω, *I shut close; fut. -κλείσω.*

συγ-κράζω, *I cry aloud; 2 aor. συν-έκραγον.*

συγ-κύπτω, *I bend together, bend inwards; fut. -κύψω, I aor. συν-έκυψα.*

συγ-χωρέω, *I yield, (lit. 'come together to terms,') agree; fut. -ήσω, I aor. συν-εχώρησα.*

σῦκον, -ου, n. *a fig.*

συλ-λαμβάνω, *I seize, lay hold of, arrest; fut. -λήψομαι, 2 aor. συν-έλαβον.*

συλ-λέγω, *I collect, gather, assemble; fut. -λέξω, I aor. συν-έλεξα, pf. -είλεγμαι.*

σύλ-λογος, -ου, m. *an assembly, meeting.*

συμ-βάλλω, (Act.) *I throw together; (Mid.) I agree upon. συμ-βάλλομαι λόγους, I converse, talk; 2 aor. συν-έβαλον.*

συμ-βοηθέω, *I join in aiding, come to the rescue; fut. -ήσω.*

συμ-βουλεύω, (Act.) *I give advice, advise, counsel; (Mid.) get advice,*

consult; fut. -εύσω, I aor. συν-εβούλευσα.

σύμ-βουλος, -ου, m. *a counsellor, adviser.*

συμ-μάχια, -as, f. *alliance.*

συμ-μάχομαι, *I fight along with, help as an ally; imperf. συν-εχαμόμην.*

σύμ-μαχος, -ου, m. *an ally.*

συμ-μίγνυμι (trans.) *I mix together, (intrans.) (1) unite with, (2) join in battle; I aor. συν-έμιξα, infin. συμ-μίξαι.*

συμ-πέμπω, *I send along with; fut. -πέμψω, I aor. συν-έπεμψα.*

συμ-πίνω, *I drink with; fut. -πίομαι, 2 aor. συν-έπιον.*

συμ-ποδίζω, *I entangle, hamper, lit. 'tie the feet together,' I aor. συν-επόδισα.*

συμ-πορεύομαι, *I march together, accompany on a march; fut. -πορεύσομαι.*

συμ-φέρω, *I bring together, collect. Impers. συμ-φέρει, it is profitable, or advantageous.*

συμ-φορά, -ās, f. lit. 'a bringing together,' hence *an event, esp. a misfortune.*

σύν, prep. with dat. only; the same word as Lat. *cum* [κ(σ)ύν, ξύν, σύν]. I. together with, *with*, as οἱ σύν βασιλεῖ, *those with the king, i.e. his attendants.* So of things, σύν τοῖς ὅπλοις, *furnished with their arms, i.e. in arms.* II. *with the help of*, as σύν τοῖς θεοῖς. In Composition, *with, together.*

συν-άγω, *I bring together, gather, assemble; fut. -άξω, 2 aor. -ήγαγον.*

συν-αθροίζω, *I collect, or assemble together; fut. -αθροίσω, I aor. -ήθροισα.*

συν-ακολουθέω, *I follow along with, follow as a volunteer.*

συν-ακούω, *I hear, hear one another. (ἀλλήλων.)*

συν-αντάω, *I fall in with, meet, (with dat.); fut. -αντήσω.*

συν-ἀπ-εἶμι, *I go away with*, imperf. -ῆειν.

συν-διώκω, *I join in pursuit*; fut. -διώξω.

συν-εθίζω, (Act.) *I accustom*, (Pass.) *become used to*, 1 aor. opt. συν-εθισθείην.

συν-είλεγμαi, perf. pass. of συλ-λέγω.

συν-εἰς-έρχομαι, *I enter with*; 2 aor. -ῆλθον.

συν-εἰς-πίπτω, *I rush together into*; fut. -πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έπεσον.

συν-έκαμψα, 1 aor. act. of συγ-κάμπτω.

συν-εκ-βιβάζω, *I help in bringing out*, lit. 'join in making come out.'

συν-έκραγον, 2 aor. of συγ-κράζω.

συν-ελέγχην, 2 aor. pass. of συλ-λέγω.

συν-έλεγον, imperf. act. of συλ-λέγω.

συν-έλεξα, 1 aor. act. of συλ-λέγω.

συν-έμιξα, 1 aor. act. of συμ-μίγνυμι.

συν-επαινέω, *I consent, agree to*; fut. -επαινέσω, 1 aor. -επήνεσα.

συν-ἐπι-σπεύδω, *I help to force on-wards*; 1 aor. -έσπευσα.

συν-επώδισα, 1 aor. act. of συμ-ποδίζω.

συν-έπομαι, *I follow along with* (with dat.); fut. -έψομαι.

συν-ἐπ-όμνυμι, *I swear besides*.

συν-ερρῦήκειν, pluperf. ind. of συρ-ρέω.

συν-έρχομαι, *I come together, meet*; 2 aor. -ῆλθον.

συν-ῆδομαι, *I rejoice with one, congratulate*.

σύν-θημα, -ατος, n. *an agreement*; a watchword.

συν-ίστημι, (trans.) *I place with, introduce*; fut. συ-στήσω, 1 aor. συν-έστησα, (intrans.) *stand together, make a stand*, 2 aor. -έστην, perf. -έστηκα.

συν-ομολογέω, *I agree to* (with acc. of thing), *I agree with* (with dat. of person); imperf. -ωμολόγουν.

συν-τάττω, *I draw up in battle array*; fut. -τάξω, 1 aor. συν-έταξα.

συν-τίθηναι, (Act.) *I put together*, (Mid.) *make an agreement*; fut. -θήσω.

συν-τρέχω, *I run together*; 2 aor. συν-έδραμον.

συν-τρίβω, *I crush*; fut. -τρίψω.

Συρία, -ας, f. *Syria*, on the Levant, or east end of the Mediterranean. In Xenophon's time it included the country east of the Euphrates, which was not called Mesopotamia till after the conquests of Alexander.

συ-ρρέω, *I flow or flock together*; fut. -ρεύσομαι, pf. συν-ερρῦκα, 2 aor. pass. συν-ερρῦην.

συ-σκευάζω, *I pack up baggage*; fut. -ᾶσω, perf. pass. συν-εσκευάσμαι.

σύ-σκηνος, -ον, *dwelling in the same tent, a tent-mate*. (σκηνή, a tent.)

συ-σπουδάζω, *I unite in zeal with*, (lit. 'make haste together with,') *share in one's zeal*.

συ-στρατεύομαι, *I serve in the army with, join in an expedition*; fut. -εύσομαι.

συ-στρατοπεδεύομαι, *I encamp along with*, imperf. συν-εστρατοπεδευόμην.

σφαγιάζομαι, *I sacrifice*; fut. σφαγιάσομαι.

σφάγιον, -ον, n. *a victim*. (σφάζω, *I slay*.)

σφάζω, and σφάττω, *I sacrifice*; fut. σφάξω, pf. pass. έσφαγμαι, 1 aor. pass. έσφάχθην.

σφενδονάω, *I sling*; fut. -ησω.

σφενδόνη, -ης, f. *a sling, also a stone from a sling*.

σφενδονήτης, -ου, m. *a slinger*.

σφόδρα, (adv.) *very, exceedingly*.

σχεδόν, (adv.) *almost, nearly*.

σχεῖν, 2 aor. infin. of ἔχω.

σχήσω, fut. act. of ἔχω.

σχίζω, *I cleave*; fut. σχήσω, pf. pass. ἔσχισμαι.

σχολάζω, *I have leisure*; fut. σχολάσω. (σχολή.)

σχολαίως, (adv.) *leisurely, slowly*.

σχολή, -ῆς, f. *leisure*; (dat. σχολῇ, *at leisure, leisurely, or slowly*.)

σχῶ, σχῶν, 2 aor. subj. and part. of ἔχω.

σώζω, *I save, keep safe, preserve*, (Pass.) *I return safely*; fut. σώσω, 1 aor. ἔσωσα, perf. pass. σέσωμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐσώθην: σώζειν εἰς, *to bring safely to a place*.

Σωκράτης, -ους, m. *Socrātes*, the philosopher, who taught Xenophon and Plato: he lived through all the flourishing time of Athens, from B.C. 469 to 399, when he was unjustly condemned to drink hemlock.

σῶμα, -ατος, n. *a body*.

σῶος, (contr. σῶς, σῶν), *safe, uninjured*.

σωτήρ, ἦρος, m. *a saviour, preserver*. (σώζω, *I save*.)

σωτηρία, -ας, f. *safety, preservation*.

Σωτηρίδης, -ου, m. *Sotērides*, a native of Sicyon, near Corinth.

σωφρονέω, *I am of sound mind, am wise; behave well, am obedient*.

T.

τάλαντον, -ου, n. lit. 'a balance,' hence a *talent* of gold, about £250. A talent contained sixty minae (£4); each mina contained 100 drachmae.

τάξις, -ews, f. *order, battle array*. αἱ τάξεις, *the ranks*. (τάττω, *I arrange*).

Τάοχοι, -ων, m. *the Tāochi*, a hill-tribe to the north of Armenia, now Georgia.

ταράττω, *I throw into disorder, disturb*; fut. ταράξω, perf. pass. τετάραγμαι.

τάραχος, -ου, m. *confusion, disorder*.

Ταρσοί, -ῶν, *Tarsi*, or *Tarsus*, the capital of Cilicia, on a rich plain by the river Cydnus (I. 93). Here Shalmaneser, King of Assyria, is said to have established himself, after his conquests in Asia Minor. Tarsus is best known as the birthplace of St. Paul, who claimed the freedom

granted to the city by Augustus. It was an important seat of philosophy and learning from the second century B.C. downwards.

τάττω, *I arrange, draw up in line, order*; fut. τάξω, 1 aor. ἔταξα, perf. pass. τετάγμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐτάχθην.

ταῦτα, n. pl. of οὗτος, *these things*.

ταυτά, for τὰ αὐτά, *the same things*.

ταυτόν (instead of ταυτόν) = τὸ αὐτό, *the same*.

τάφος, -ου, m. *a tomb*. (θάπτω, *I bury*.)

τάφρος, -ου, f. *a ditch, trench*.

τάχα, = ταχέως.

ταχέως, (adv.) *quickly, soon*; comp. θάσσον, superl. τάχιστα.

τάχύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *quick, swift*; comp. θάσσω, sup. τάχιστος.

ταχύ, *quickly*. (ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*; ἐπεὶ τάχιστα, *as soon as*.)

τε, *and*. (τε . . καί, *both . . and*.)

τεθάρρηκα, perf. act. of θαρρέω.

τέθνηκα, perf. act. of θνήσκω.

τέθραμμαι, perf. pass. of τρέφω.

τείνω, *I stretch, extend*; fut. τενῶ, perf. τέτακα, perf. pass. τέταμαι.

τειγίζω, *I build a wall, fortify*. (τεῖχος, *a wall*.)

τεῖχος, -ους, n. *a wall, fortress*.

τελευταῖος, -α, -ον, *last*. (τέλος, *an end*.)

τελευτάω, *I end, finish*, (sc. βίον, *I die*); lit. 'end my life.'

τέλος, -ους, n. *an end*. (τέλος. accus., *at last*.)

τέμνω, *I cut*; fut. τεμῶ, perf. τέτμηκα, 2 aor. ἔταμον.

τέταγμαι, perf. pass. of τάττω.

τέταμαι, perf. pass. of τείνω.

τέταρτος, -η, -ον, *fourth*.

τετρακίς-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *four-thousand*.

τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *four-hundred*.

τέτρωμαι, perf. pass. of τιτρώσκω.

τετταράκοντα, *forty*.

τέτταρες, -α, *four*.

τέχνη, -ης, f. *art, contrivance.*

τεχνικῶς, (adv.) *artfully, skilfully.*

(τέχνη, art.)

τήκω, *I melt*; 1 aor. ἔτηξα, perf.

(intrans.) τέτηκα, *I am melted.*

Τηλεβόας, -ου, m. *the Teleboas, a river of Armenia (V. 88).*

τήμερον, (adv.) *to-day.*

Τιβάρηνοι, -ῶν, m. *the Tibarēni, a people in Pontus, west of the Chalybes.*

Τίγρης, -ητος, m. *the Tigris or Tigris, one of the great rivers of Assyria, east of the Euphrates. Within the last 700 years it has changed its course near its mouth, and joined the Euphrates.*

τίθημι, *I put, set, place*; fut. θήσω, perf. τέθεικα, 1 aor. ἔθηκα, plur. from 2 aor. ἔθεμεν, etc. (τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα, *to ground arms, i. e. halt, or take up a position.*)

Τιμασίων, -ωνος, m. *Timasion, a native of Dardanus, and an officer in the Greek army (VI. 159).*

τιμᾶω, *I honour, esteem, value*; fut. τιμήσω. (τιμή, *honour.*)

τιμή, -ῆς, f. *honour, price, estimation.*

τίμιος, -α, -ον, *valuable.* (τιμή, *price.*)

τιμωρέω, (Act.) *I avenge, with dat. of person*; (Mid.) *I avenge myself on, punish, with acc., fut. -ήσω.*

Τιρίβαζος, -ου, m. *Tiribazus, a satrap of Western Armenia (V. 89).*

τις, τι, gen. τινός, (indef. pron.) *one, a certain one, some.* (εἴ τις, *if anyone*; ποῖός τις; *what sort of person?* τι, *at all*: lit. 'in anything'.)

τίς, τί, (interrog. pron.) *who? what?* (τί, *why?* lit. 'for what?')

Τισσαφέρνης, -ους, m. *Tissaphernes, the wildest of the Persians. He was at first satrap of Lydia, Ionia, and Caria, but had to give over the Ionian towns to Cyrus; hence he was a bitter enemy of Cyrus and his army. The king gave*

him his daughter in marriage as a reward for his services, but he was eventually executed through the influence of Parysatis, the queen-mother, in revenge for the death of Cyrus, her favourite son (B.C. 395.)

τιτρώσκω, *I wound*; fut. τρώσω, perf. pass. τέτρωμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐτρώζην.

τοί, *in truth, verily, assuredly.*

τοίνυν, *therefore, then.*

τοιόσδε, τοιαῦδε, τοιόνδε, *of such kind, such.*

τοιούτος, τοιαύτη, τοιοῦτο, *such, (strengthened form of τοῖος, and not compounded with οὗτος).*

τολμάω, *I dare venture, have the courage*; fut. -ήσω, perf. τετόλμηκα. (τόλμη, *daring.*)

τόξευμα, *an arrow*, lit. 'that which is shot from a bow.' (τοξεύω.)

τοξεύω, *I shoot with a bow.* (τόξον, *a bow.*)

τοξότης, -ου, m. *a bowman, archer.* (τόξον, *a bow.*)

τόπος, -ου, m. *a place, spot, locality.*

τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο, *so great, of such a size.* τοσοῦτω, with comparative, *by so much*; (lengthened form of τόσος, not compounded with οὗτος).

τότε, (adv.) *then, at that time.* (τοτέ μέν . . τοτέ δέ, *at one time . . at another.*)

τράπεζα, -ης, f. *a table.*

Τραπεζοῦς, -οῦντος, m. and f. *Trapezus, a town in Pontus, on the Euxine, now Trebisonde.*

τράχηλος, -ου, m. *the neck.*

τραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ, *rough, rugged; harsh.*

τρεῖς, τρία, *three.* (Lat. tres.)

τρέπω, *I turn, put to flight, rout*; fut.

τρέψω, 1 aor. ἔτρεψα, perf. pass.

τέτραμμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐτρέφθην,

2 aor. pass. ἐτρέπην.

τρέφω, *I nourish, rear, support*; fut.

θρέψω, perf. pass. τέθραμμαι, 2 aor.

pass. ἐτρέφην.

τρέχω, *I run*; fut. δραμοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔδραμον, perf. δεδράμηκα.

τριάκοντα, *thirty*.

τριακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *three-hundred*.

τριήρης, -ους, f. (sc. ναῦς) *a trireme*; lit. a ship with three banks of oars.

τριηρίτης, -ου, m. *a trireme-man, sailor*.

τριπλάσιος, -α, -ον, *thrice as much*.

τρίπους, -πουν, (gen. -ποδος) *having three feet, a three-legged table* (sc. τράπεζα).

τρίς, (adv.) *three times, thrice*.

τρεις-ἄσμενος = τρίς ἄσμενος, *very glad*; lit. 'thrice-pleased.'

τρεις-χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *three-thousand*.

τρίτος, -η, -ον, *third*. (τὸ τρίτον, *for the third time*.)

τριχῇ, (adv.) *in three divisions, three-fold*.

τρι-χολνίκος, -ον, *containing three choenices, or quarts*. A quart of flour, or quartern loaf, was a man's daily allowance.

τρόπαιον, -ου, n. *a trophy*.

τροπή, -ῆς, f. *a rout, defeat*; lit. 'a turning to flight.' (See τρέπω.)

τρόπος, -ου, m. *means, manner*; disposition, character. (τόνδε τὸν τρόπον, *in this way*.)

τροφή, -ῆς, f. *nourishment, food, support*. (τρέφω, *I nourish*.)

Τρωάς, -άδος, f. *Troas, or the Troad*, the district round Troy in Mysia.

τυγχάνω, *I hit, get, obtain* (with gen.); fut. τεύξομαι, perf. τετύχηκα, 2 aor. ἔτυχον; (with part.) *I happen, am at the time* (doing), as τυγχάνω ὦν, *I happen to be*.

Τυριαῖον, -ου, n. *Tyriaeum, a town in Phrygia* (I. 66).

τυρός, -οῦ, m. *cheese*.

τύρσις, -εως, f. *a tower*. (Lat. turris.)

τύχη, -ης, f. *fortune, chance*.

Υ.

ὕβριζω, *I act insolently, or brutally*; 1 aor. ὕβρισα, perf. pass. ὕβρισμαι. (ὕβρις; *insolence*.)

ὕβριστός, -ή, -όν, *brutal, insolent, vicious*. (ὕβρις, *insolence*.)

ὕγρότης, -τητος, f. *suppleness*. (ὕγρός, *moist, hence supple*.)

ὕδρο-φορέω, *I carry water*.

ὕδρο-φόρος, -ου, m. and f. *a water-carrier*. (ὕδωρ, *water*, φέρω, *I carry*.)

ὔδωρ, ὕδατος, n. *water*.

υἱός, -οῦ, m. *a son*.

ὔλη, -ης, f. *a wood, forest*. (Lat. silva.)

ὕμέτερος, -α, -ον, *your, yours*, (poss. adj. from ὑμεῖς.)

ὕπ-άγω, *I lead on slowly*; fut. -άξω, 2 aor. -ήγαγον, perf. pass. -ἤγμαι.

ὕπ-αίθριος, -ον, and -α, -ον, *in the open air*. (ὕπό, *beneath*, αἰθήρ, *sky*.)

ὕπ-αντιάζω, *I come, or go to meet*.

ὕπ-αρχος, -ου, m. *one commanding under another*; i.e. a lieutenant governor.

ὕπ-άρχω, (1) *I am at the beginning, am to start with*. (2) with dat. *I am on the side of*. (τὰ ὑπάρχοντα, *one's means*.)

ὕπ-ασπιστής, -οῦ, m. *a shield-bearer*. (ὕπό, and ἀσπίς, lit. 'under a shield'.)

ὕπέρ, prep., with gen. and acc. (root meaning *over*, Lat. super). I. with gen. i. *over, above, beyond*; ii. *in behalf of, for, in the name of*. II. with acc. i. *of motion, over, or beyond*; ii. *of numbers, beyond, more than*. In Composition, *over, overmuch*.

ὕπερ-βαίνω, *I cross over*; fut. -βήσομαι, 2 aor. -έβην.

ὕπερ-βάλλω, (intrans.) *I go or pass over*; fut. -βαλῶ, 2 aor. -έβαλον.

ὕπερ-βολή, -ῆς, f. *a crossing, pass*. (ὕπέρ, βάλλω.)

ὕπερ-ἥμισυς, -υ, *above half, more than half*.

ὕπερ-ύψηλος, -ον, *exceeding high*. (See ὑπέρ in Composition.)

ὕπ-εσχόμην, 2 aor. of ὑπ-ισχνέομαι.

ὑπ-έχω, *I undergo, submit to*; fut. ὑφ-έξω, or ὑπο-σχήσω, 2 aor. ὑπ-εσχον.

ὑπ-ήκοος, -ον, *obedient, subject*; lit. 'giving ear to' (from ὑπό, and ἀκούω),

ὑπ-ηρετέω, *I assist* (with dat.). (ὑπηρέτης, *an assistant*; lit. 'an under-rower,' from ἐρέτης, *a rower*.)

ὑπ-ισχνέομαι, *I promise, undertake*; fut. ὑπο-σχήσομαι, perf. ὑπ-έσχημαι, 2 aor. ὑπ-εσχόμην.

ὑπνος, -ου, m. *sleep*.

ὑπό, prep. with gen., dat., and acc. (same word as Lat. *sub*). I. with gen. i. *under*, hence ii. *by*, of the agent after passive verbs; so of things, *by reason of, from*, as ὑπὸ φόβου, *from fear*. II. with dat., *under*, hence *subject to*, as ὑπὸ βασιλεῖ. III. with acc. i. of motion, *under*, *close to*; ii. of time, *towards*, as ὑπὸ νύκτα, *towards night, at nightfall*. (Lat. *sub noctem*.) In Composition, *under*, also *secretly, gradually*.

ὑπο-δέχομαι, *I receive, welcome*; fut. -δέξομαι.

ὑπο-δέω, *I bind or tie under*. (ὑποδεδεμένοι, *with their shoes on*, lit. 'having their [shoes] bound under [their feet].')

ὑπό-δημα, -ατος, n. *a sandal*, lit. 'something bound under [the feet].'

ὑπο-ζύγιον, -ου, n. lit. 'under the yoke,' i.e. *a beast of burden, baggage-animal*.

ὑπο-λείπω, (Act.) *I leave behind*, (Mid.) *I lag behind*; 2 aor. ὑπ-έλιπον.

ὑπο-λύω, *I loosen, unfasten*; fut. -λύσω.

ὑπο-μένω, *I stay behind*; fut. -μενῶ.

ὑπ-οπτεύω, *I suspect*, Lat. *suspicio*. (ὑπό, and ὄψις, *sight*.)

ὑπο-στρέφω, *I turn back, return*; fut. -στρέψω, 2 aor. pass. ὑπ-εστράφη.

ὑπ-οψία, -ας, f. *suspicion*. (ὑπό, and ὄψις, *sight*.)

ὑστεραίος, -α, -ον, *the day after*. τῇ

ὑστεραίᾳ, sc. ἡμέρᾳ, *on the next day*. (ὑστερος.)

ὑστερος, -α, -ον, *later, after, behind*.

ὑστερον, (adv.) *afterwards*.

ὑφ-ιέμην, imperf. mid. of ὑφ-ίημι.

ὑφ-ίημι, (Act.) *I send or put under*; (Mid.) *I grant, yield, submit*; fut.

ὑφ-ήσω, perf. pass. -εῖμαι.

ὑφ-ίστημι, (trans.) *I place under*, (intrans.) 2 aor. ὑπέστην and pass. *I undertake, withstand, face the enemy, stand my ground*.

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν, *high, lofty*.

ὑψος, -ους, n. *height*.

Φ.

φαγεῖν, 2 aor. with pres. ἐσθίω.

φαίνω, (Act.) *I show*; (Mid.) *I appear*; fut. φανῶ, 1 aor. ἔφηνα, perf. pass. πέφασμαι, 2 aor. pass. ἐφάνην. φαίνεται εἶναι, *he seems to be*; but φαίνεται ὦν, *he clearly is*.

φάλαγξ, -αγγος, f. *a phalanx, line of battle*, (as opp. to *column*).

Φαλῖνος, -ου, m. *Phalῖnus*, a Greek from Zacynthus, now Zante, one of the Ionian islands.

φανερός, -ά, -όν, *manifest, visible, clear*. (φαίνω.)

φανερῶς, (adv.) *clearly, evidently*.

φάρμακον, -ου, n. *medicine, drug*, hence *poison*.

Φαρνάβαζος, -ου, m. *Pharnabazus*, satrap of Phrygia and Bithynia (VIII. 1).

Φασιανοί, -ῶν, pl. m. *the Phasiani*. (1) an Armenian tribe dwelling on the Araxes, which Xenophon calls the Phasis (V. 178). (2) a tribe dwelling on the Colchian Phasis (VI. 211).

φασί, 3 pl. pres. ind. of φημί.

Φᾶσις, -ιδος, m. *the Phasis*. (1) a river in Armenia, flowing into the Caspian Sea, properly called the Araxes (V. 176). (2) a river in Colchis, flowing westwards into the Euxine (VI. 210).

φάσκω, *I say, assert*, only used in part. φάσκων and imperf. ἔφασκον: see φημί.

φέρω, *I bear, bring, carry; lead* (of a road); fut. οἴσω, perf. ἐνήνοχα, perf. pass. ἐνήνεγμαι, 1 aor. ἤνεγκα, 2 aor. (in 1 pers. sing.) ἤνεγκον. (χαλεπῶς φέρω, *I take it ill, am annoyed.*)

φεύγω, *I flee; am banished*, hence ὁ φεύγων, *an exile*; fut. φεύξομαι, perf. πέφευγα, 2 aor. ἔφυγον.

φημί, *I say*; fut. φήσω, 2 aor. ἔφην and εἶπον, perf. εἶρηκα, perf. pass. εἶρημαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐρήθην. The part. is often φάσκων, and the imperf. ἔφασκον. See φάσκω. (οὐ φημί, *I say no, i.e. I deny, refuse.*)

φθάνω, *I get before, anticipate, overtake*; fut. φθήσομαι, 1 aor. ἔφθασα.

φθέγγομαι, *I utter a word, shout, cry, sound* (of a trumpet); fut. φθέγξομαι, 1 aor. ἐφθεγξάμην.

φθονέω, *I envy, grudge*, (with dat.), fut. -ήσω.

φιάλη, -ης, f. *a cup, goblet*, (hence *phial*.)

φιλέω, *I love*; fut. φιλήσω. (φίλος, *dear*.)

φιλία, -as, f. *friendship*. (φίλος, *dear*.)

φιλικός, -ή, -όν, *friendly*.

φιλικῶς, (adv.) *on friendly terms*.

φίλιος, -α, -ον, *friendly*.

Φιλόξενος, -ου, m. *Philoxēnus*, a brave Greek from Pellēne in Achaia.

φιλο-πόλεμος, -ον, *fond of war*. (φίλος, and πόλεμος, *war*.)

φίλος, -η, -ον, *dear, beloved*, hence φίλος, -ου, m. *a friend*.

φιλο-στρατιώτης, -ου, m. *a soldiers' friend*. (φίλος, and στρατιώτης, *a soldier*.)

Φλιάσιος, -α, -ον, *Phliasian*, or inhabitant of Phlius, a town in Argolis.

φοβερός, -ά, -όν, *fearful, dreadful*. (φόβος, *fear*.)

φοβέω, (Act.) *I frighten*; (Mid.) *I fear*; fut. φοβήσω.

φόβος, -ου, m. *fear, alarm, fright*.

Φοινίκη, -ης, f. *Phoenicia*, the coast of Syria from the river Orontes on the north to Mount Carmel in the south. Its two chief towns were Tyre and Sidon, (lit. 'the palm-country,' from φοίνιξ, *a palm-tree*.)

φοινίκιος, -α, -ον, *red, purple*. (φοίνιξ, *purple*.)

φοίνιξ, -ῖκος, m. *the palm-tree*, (also *purple*.)

Φοίνιξ, -ῖκος, *a Phoenician* (I. 66).

φράζω, *I say, tell*; fut. φράσω, perf. πέφρακα.

φρέαρ, -ᾱτος, n. *a well*.

φρονίμως, (adv.) *prudently, sensibly*, (adv. of φρόνιμος, *prudent*.)

φρουρός, -οῦ, m. *a guard*.

φρύγᾱνον, -ου, n. *a faggot*, in pl. *firewood*.

Φρυγία, -as, f. *Phrygia*, originally the whole interior of the western half of Asia Minor, but extending on the North-west to the Hellespont and Propontis. In Xenophon's time this latter district was known as *Phrygia Minor*, or *Phrygia* on the Hellespont, while the interior province was called *Phrygia Major*, or simply *Phrygia*.

φυγᾱς, -ᾱδος, m. *an exile*. (φεύγω, *I flee*.)

φυγή, -ῆς, f. *flight, banishment*.

φυλακή, -ῆς, f. *watch, guard*. (φυλάκας φυλάττειν, *to keep watch*.)

φύλαξ, -ᾱκος, m. *a guard, sentinel*.

φυλάττω, fut. φυλάξω, perf. pass. πεφύλαγμαι, (Act.) *I guard*; (Mid.) *I am on my guard, am ware of*.

φυσάω, *I blow up, inflate*; fut. φυσήσω, 1 aor. pass. ἐφυσήθην.

φύω, *I produce, beget*; fut. φύσω, (intrans.) pf. πέφῡκα, 2 aor. ἔφυν, *I am born, am by nature*.

φωνή, -ῆς, f. *a voice, speech*.

φῶς, φωτός, n. (contr. from φάος), *light*.

X.

χαίρω, *I rejoice, am glad*; fut. χαίρῃσω, perf. κεχάρηκα, 2 aor. pass. ἐχάρην.

χαλεπαίνω, *I am angry, am provoked*, (with dat.)

χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, *hard, difficult*, (of character) *harsh*.

χαλεπῶς, (adv.) *with difficulty*. (χαλεπῶς φέρειν, *to take it ill*.)

χάλκεος, -α, -ον, (contr.) χαλκοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν, *made of bronze or copper*. (χαλκός.)

χαλκός, -οῦ, m. *copper, bronze*.

Χάλυβες, -ων, pl. m. *the Chalybes*, a people in Pontus, north of Armenia, famed for their iron mines (V. 177).

χαράδρα, -ας, f. *a gully, ravine*.

χαρίεις, -εσσα, -εν, *graceful, neat, clever*. (χάρις, *grace*.)

χαρίζομαι, *I gratify, favour, oblige*; 1 aor. ἐχαρισάμην, perf. κεχάρισμαι.

χάρις, -ιτος, f. *favour, thanks, gratitude*. ἀποδιδόναι χάριν, *to return a favour*; ἔχειν χάριν, *to feel grateful*.

Χαρμῖνος, -ου, m. *Charmīnus*, a Lacedaemonian envoy (VII. 328).

χειμών, -ῶνος, m. (1) *winter*. (2) *wintry weather, a storm*. (Lat. hiems.)

χείρ, χειρός, f. *a hand*; dat. pl. χερσί.

Χειρίσοφος, -ου, m. *Cheirisophus*, a Spartan general under Cyrus.

χείρων, -ον, used as comp. of κακός, *worse, inferior*. (χείρῳ for χείρωνα, acc. sing. or neut. pl., χείρους for χείρονες or χείρονας.)

Χερρόνησος, or Χερσόνησος, f. *the Chersonese*, in Thrace (I. 26, note).

χηλή, -ῆς, f. *a pier, breakwater*, (shaped like a *claw*).

χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *a thousand*.

χιλός, -οῦ, m. *fodder, grass*.

χιτών, -ῶνος, m. *an under garment, shirt, tunic*. (Lat. tunica.)

χιών, -όνος, f. *snow*.

χλαμύς, -ῦδος, f. *a cloak*.

χόρτος, -ου, m. *grass, provender*.

χράομαι, *I use, employ, treat, deal with*, (with dat.); fut. χρήσομαι, perf. κέχρημαι, 1 aor. ἐχρησάμην.

χρή, (impers.) *it is necessary, one must, one ought*; fut. χρήσει, imperf. ἐχρήν.

χρήμα, -ατος, n. lit. 'that which may be used'; generally in plural χρήματα, *property, money*. (χράομαι, *I use*.)

χρηματιστικός, -ή, -όν, (of an omen) *portending gain*. (χρήματα, *money*.)

χρήναι, infin. of χρή.

χρήσθαι, pres. infin. of χράομαι.

χρήσιμος, -ον, *useful, serviceable*, (χράομαι, *I use*.)

χρόνος, -ου, m. *time*; πολλὸν χρόνον, *for a long time*.

χρύσεος, -α, -ον, (contr.) χρυσοῦς, -ῆ, -οῦν, *golden*. (χρυσός.)

χρυσίον, -ον, n. *gold-money*, (dimin. of χρυσός.)

Χρυσόπολις, -εως, f. *Chrysopolis*, a city of Bithynia on the Bosporus, now Scutari. (Lit. 'the golden city'.)

χρυσός, -οῦ, m. *gold*.

χώρα, -ας, f. *a country, district, territory*; also *place, position*.

χωρέω, *I go, march, proceed*; fut. χωρήσω.

χωρίον, -ον, n. *a place*, especially *fortified place, fort, position*; also *space of ground*, (dimin. of χώρα).

χωρίς, (adv.) *apart, separately*.

Ψ.

ψέλιον, -ου, n. *a bracelet*.

ψεύδω, (Act.) *I deceive*; (Mid.) *I lie, play any one false*; fut. ψεύσω, perf. pass. ἐψευσμαι, 1 aor. pass. ἐψεύσθην.

ψηφίζομαι, *I vote*; 1 aor. ἐψηφισάμην. (ψηφός, *a pebble for voting*.)

ψιλός, -ή, -όν, *bare*; *light-armed*.

ψοφέω, *I make a noise, clash* (of a shield). (ψόφος, noise.)
 ψυχή, -ῆς, f. *the soul, life*.
 ψῦχος, -ους, n. *cold*.

Ω.

Ω, sign of the vocative.
 ὤδε, (adv.) *thus, as follows* (introducing a speech).
 ὠδή, -ῆς, f. *a song*, (contr. from αἰοδή, from αἰδῶ, ἄδω, *I sing*.)
 ὠήθην, 1 aor. pass. of οἶομαι.
 ὠθέω, *I push*; fut. ὠσω, perf. ἔωκα, 1 aor. ἔωσα.
 ὠθισμός, -οῦ, m. *a pushing, jostling*.
 ὠκουν, imperf. of οἰκέω.
 ὠλεσα, 1 aor. act. of ὀλλυμι.
 ὠλλύμην, imperf. mid. of ὀλλυμι.
 ὠλόμην, 2 aor. mid. of ὀλλυμι.
 ὠμός, -ή, -όν, *raw*; (of character) *savage, cruel*.
 ὠμος, -ου, m. *the shoulder*. (Lat. *umerus*.)
 ὠμοσα, 1 aor. act. of ὀμνυμι.
 ὠνέομαι, *I buy*; fut. ὠνήσομαι, 2 aor. ἐπριάμην. (See πρίασθαι.)

ὠνιος, -α, -ον, *for sale*. τὰ ὠνια, *commodities*.
 ὠόμην, imperf. of οἶομαι.
 ὠρα, -ας, f. *a season, hour, time*. (Lat. *hora*.)
 ὠρμησα, 1 aor. act. of ὀρμάω.
 ὠρμημαι, perf. pass. of ὀρμάω.
 ὠρμουν, imperf. act. of ὀρμέω.
 ὠρμώμην, imperf. mid. of ὀρμάω.
 ὠρωρύγμην, pluperf. pass. of ὀρύττω.
 ὥς, (conj.) (1) *how, as, as if*; with infin. *so as to*. (2) *that, in order that*. (3) *since, because*. With numerals, *about, as* ὥς ἑκατόν, *about a hundred*. With superlatives, *as* ὥς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*.
 ὥσαύτως, (adv.) *in like manner*.
 ὥσπερ, *just as if, just as*.
 ὥστε, (with Ind.) *so that*, (with Infin.) *so as to*.
 ὠτίς, -ίδος, f. *a bustard*.
 ὠτός, gen. of οὖς.
 ὠφελέω, *I aid, help, benefit*; imperf. ὠφέλουν, fut. -ήσω. (Distinguish from ὠφελον, 2 aor. of ὀφείλω.)
 ὠφέλιμος, -η, -ον, *profitable, useful*. (ὠφελέω.)
 ὠχόμην, imperf. of οἴχομαι.

GRAMMATICAL REGISTER.

The references are in all cases to the Notes; the more important are distinguished by a difference of type.

Article.

Article distinguishing subject from predicate, iii. 206; iv. 269; viii. 319.

— possessive use of, i. 15; iii. 170; iv. 93; viii. 160.

— separated from its noun by intervening words, i. 109; iv. 124; viii. 141, 163.

— with infinitive, see *Mood*.

— with participle, iv. 94; vi. 133, 202; viii. 356.

— with *πᾶς*, iii. 112; vi. 137.

— with *πολύς*, v. 82; vi. 158.

Pronoun.

αὐτή and *αὐτή*, v. 116.

αὐτὸς ὁ and *ὁ αὐτός*, i. 209; iv. 190; vii. 69, 254.

εἰσιν οἱ, vi. 45.

ἐκεῖνος, v. 62.

ἦ, ἦ, ἦ and *ἦ, ἦ, ἦ*, vi. 268; vii. 201.

ὅστις in indirect questions, iv. 233.

οὗτοςί, i. 248.

ταῦτα and *ταῦτά*, i. 275.

ταῦτόν, i. 198.

τίς with accent thrown back from following word, viii. 161, 510.

Substantive.

Declension of *οἷς*, *βοῦς*, etc., vii. 34.

Distinguish between:—

ἄριστον, *ἄριστον*, iii. 15; vii. 168.

βασιλείᾱ, *βασιλείᾱ*, i. 9.

ἐθέλοντας, *ἐθελοντάς*, vi. 295.

οἵκοι, *οἵκοι*, i. 298.

ὄρος, *ὄρος*, v. 182.

φυλακάς, *φύλακας*, vi. 4.

Meanings of:—

ὄπλα = *ὀπλῖται*, vii. 47.

τὰ ὄπλα, ‘quarters,’ iv. 4; vii. 162.

πελτασταί and *ψιλοί*, vi. 50.

προβολή, vii. 206.

φάλαγξ, v. 306; vii. 202; viii. 268.

Verbal nouns in *-σις* and in *-μα*, iv. 236.

CASE.

Attraction of relative, i. 290; vii. 196; viii. 314.

— of nominative into relative clause, viii. 526.

Nominative with infinitive, iv. 286; vii. 283; vii. 31, 249.

Accusative, cognate, vi. 288.

— double, viii. 383.

— of respect, i. 262; iii. 98; v. 126; vi. 345; viii. 136, 364.

— of time, iv. 73.

Genitive, absolute, iv. 101.

— of respect, v. 129.

— of time, iv. 255; v. 280; vii. 101, 163.

— partitive, iv. 127; v. 66, 319; viii. 110.

Dative, as complement in apposition, iv. 81; viii. 51.

— *commodi*, v. 9.

— instrumental, iii. 135; vii. 147.

ταύτη, *ἦ*, as local adverbs, v. 22, 71.

NUMBER.

- Dual for emphasis, v. 17; viii. 355.
 Dual subject with plural verb, iv. 134;
 v. 17.
 Dual adjective with plural noun, i. 1;
 iv. 279; viii. 135.

GENDER.

- τῷ as feminine dual, vi. 347.

Adjectives.

- ἄλλος, vii. 122.
 αὐτόματος, v. 9.
 δεινός, v. 208; viii. 207.
 μέσος, iv. 172; v. 34.
 πολλοῦ ἄξιος, ii. 135.
 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, etc., with noun omitted,
 i. 327.

Prepositions.

- ἀνά, distributive, iv. 178.
 — in composition, i. 7; v. 322.
 ἀνὰ κράτος, ii. 5.
 ἀπό, in composition, vii. 273; viii.
 145, 221.
 διά, in composition, iv. 309; v. 10,
 100; vi. 271; viii. 88, 184.
 — with gen. *versus* acc., vii. 277;
 viii. 478.
 εἰς, with numerals, vii. 140.
 ἐκ, of time or consequence, i. 85, 179;
 viii. 146, 498.
 — ‘pregnant’ use of, i. 88.
 ἐκ παίδων, iv. 201.
 ἐν, of time, vi. 15, 72, 174.
 ἐπί, with gen. ‘on a base of,’ i. 71.
 — with dative:—
 — purpose, i. 276; vi. 15; vii. 133,
 303.
 — condition, iv. 350; vi. 201.
 — with acc.:—
 — extent, vii. 120.
 — object or aim, iv. 209; vi. 16;
 vii. 153, 237; viii. 423.
 — in composition, iv. 232.
 κατά, with gen., vii. 230.
 — with acc. (distributive force), iv.
 231; viii. 100.
 κατὰ κράτος, ii. 53; viii. 518.

- μετά, with acc. *versus* gen., i. 128;
 viii. 229.
 παρά, with dat., iv. 286.
 — with acc.:—
 — ‘beside,’ i. 322; motion to, iv.
 318; ‘along,’ vii. 82.
 — comparison, viii. 405.
 — ‘contrary to,’ iii. 75; iv. 76; vii.
 290.
 — in composition, vii. 200, 207; viii.
 108.
 περί, with acc., of behaviour ‘to,’ viii.
 413.
 οἱ περί, with acc., viii. 290.
 πρὸς, with gen., v. 56.
 πρὸς θεῶν, viii. 72.
 — with dat. *versus* acc., viii. 389.
 σύν, iv. 128.
 ὑπό, in comp., iv. 219.

Verbs.

- Compound verbs in -έω, iii. 22; in
 -όω, iii. 187.
 Transitive and Intransitive:—
 ἔχω, iv. 2; vii. 147.
 ἵστημι, i. 205; ii. 99; v. 330.
 πράττω, iv. 19; vii. 80.
 Passive supplied by other verbs:—
 αἰρέω, ἀλίσκομαι, vii. 5, 271.
 ἀποκτείνω, ἀποθνήσκω, vii. 223;
 viii. 284.
 διαβιβάζω, διαβαίνω, viii. 111.
 ἐκβάλλω, ἐκπίπτω, vi. 57; viii. 139.
 πάσχω, ποιέω, viii. 198.
 τίθημι, μέμμαι (and compounds), iii.
 207; vii. 221; viii. 59.
 Peculiar meanings:—
 ἀναγιγνώσκω, i. 237; vi. 267.
 ἀποβλέπω, viii. 145.
 διαβάλλω, i. 12.
 διαφέρωμαι, viii. 97.
 δοκέω, iii. 75.
 ἐπιτίθεμαι, vii. 20.
 καίω, viii. 274.
 κάμνω, vi. 268.
 παρρεγγυάω, vii. 186.
 προπίνω, viii. 218.
 συσκευάζομαι, viii. 176.
 ὑπάρχω, vi. 172.

Phrases:—*ἔχειν αἰτίαν*, viii. 368;
ἔχειν πράγματα, vi. 131; *δίκην*
δοῦναι, vi. 252; *δίκην ἐπιθεῖναι*,
 i. 134; *δίκην ἔχειν*, viii. 308.

θεῖν δρόμῳ, ii. 54; vii. 206.

θέσθαι ὄπλα, i. 242; v. 54; vi.
 63; vii. 172; viii. 55.

ποιεῖν λόχον, vi. 36.

προβαλέσθαι τὰ ὄπλα, i. 82.

Construction of *ἀκούω*, with gen., ii.
 43; iii. 13; vi. 101.

χράομαι, with dat., vi. 228.

Distinguish between:—

ἄγνυμι, *ἄγω* (in certain tenses), iv.
 350.

αἶρω, *αἰρέω*, i. 203.

αἰτέω, *αἰτιάομαι*, iv. 21, 273.

αἰτέω, *ἐρωτάω*, iii. 42.

ἀποδιδράσκω, *ἀποφεύγω*, i. 172.

δοκέω, *φαίνομαι*, vi. 226.

εἰμί, *γίγνομαι*, iv. 125; viii. 16.

εἶπον, *εἰπόμεν*, ii. 158.

εἶργω, *ἐργάζομαι*, vii. 77.

ἐπίσταμαι, *ἐφίστημι*, iv. 69, 148.

ἔστασαν, *ἔστησαν*, i. 196.

ἦκα, *ἦκον*, v. 150.

ἦκω, *ἔρχομαι*, viii. 91.

ἡρόμην, *ἡρούμην*, i. 314; iv. 24;
 viii. 136.

ἦσθην, *ἦσθόμην*, ii. 91; vi. 13.

ἦχθην, *ἦχθόμην*, vii. 135.

λέγω, *λήγω*, iv. 31.

οἶδα, *γιγνώσκω*, v. 190; vi. 194.

ὀρμάω, *ὀρμέω*, i. 161; iv. 204.

ᾤκουν, *ᾤχόμην*, i. 169; v. 234.

VOICE.

Active and Middle (difference of):—

αἰρέω, iv. 64; vii. 251, 271.

ἀμύνω, iii. 55.

ἀποδίδωμι, viii. 99.

λαμβάνω, v. 265.

πορεύω, iii. 141.

συμβουλεύω, iv. 14; viii. 499.

τιμωρέω, i. 151; viii. 306.

φοβέω, v. 145.

φυλάττω, i. 273; iii. 91.

Perf. passive in middle sense, v. 132;
 vi. 39, 40; vii. 88.

MOOD.

Indicative for Optative in reported
 speech, ii. 5, 125; viii. 32.

Subjunctive after compounds of *άν*, iii.
 67; v. 242; vii. 28, 310; viii.
 243, 418.

Optative in reported speech, vi. 8;
 viii. 304, 461.

— = past subjunctive, iv. 12; vi. 108.

— deliberative, viii. 223, 379, 525.

— in indefinite or uncertain state-
 ment, vi. 181; vii. 92, 235.

— indirect question, iv. 282; viii.
 214, 342.

— statement, viii. 344.

— for fut. indicative, viii. 463.

Fut. Opt. in reported speech, iv. 289.

Forms in *-οῖην*, *-όην*, iii. 133; vi.
 281.

Infinitive with article, i. 24; iii. 196;
 iv. 97; vi. 301; vii. 153.

— with *άν*, i. 117.

— of purpose, v. 158; vii. 90, 115,
 265; viii. 227.

Participle with *αἰσχύνομαι*, i. 215; iv.
 38.

λανθάνω, viii. 251.

τυγχάνω, iv. 5, 330.

οἶδα, etc., i. 119; ii. 108; vii. 269;
 viii. 377.

— = conjunction and verb, i. 261;
 viii. 81.

— Imperfect, viii. 38, 101; Future,
 vii. 16; viii. 71, 79, 360.

ἔξόν, iv. 55; *ἐχόμενος*, ii. 24 *ἔχων*,
 iv. 260; *φερόμενος*, v. 273.

Verbal adjective, iv. 142; v. 238; vii.
 185.

TENSE.

Present historical, i. 1; ii. 79; v.
 296.

— nasalised, i. 187; vi. 214.

— with *πάλαί*, v. 310.

Imperfect, general force, iii. 28; iv.
 175; v. 98; vi. 289; vii. 5, 74;
 viii. 210, 272, 545.

— *versus* Aorist, vii. 212, 274, 312.

Aorist rendered by pluperfect, i. 254;

ii. 118; v. 40.

Paulo-post Future, iii. 77.

Tenses of λέγω = 'speak,' and 'gather,'
v. 6.

Augment in ἐκαθεζόμεν, etc., iv. 60;
v. 141; viii. 223.

Conjunctions.

Combined with ἄν, see *Subjunctive*.

εἰ, ἐάν (forms of conditional sentence),
iv. 113; viii. 52, 148, 155, 409.

ἐπεὶ, v. 173; ἐπειδὴ, vi. 367; viii.
16.

ἔστω, iv. 221.

ἕως, with pres. and aor., vi. 321; vii.
205.

ἵνα, viii. 184.

ὁπότε, with opt., v. 219.

ὅπως, iv. 54.

πρίν, with opt., viii. 484.

— in sentence with πρόσθεν, iv. 121.

ὥς, with fut. part., ii. 70; v. 2; viii.
115.

— with superlative, v. 185; vi. 361.

— with numerals, iv. 293; viii. 534.

— = 'as if,' viii. 15.

ὥσπερ, v. 20.

ὥστε, with indic., v. 93; vi. 47; with
infin., viii. 522.

Adverbs.

ἀεί, iv. 127; v. 287.

αὐτοῦ, vii. 174.

ἐγγύς, comparison of, viii. 521.

ἤδη, viii. 255, 497.

οὐδαμῇ, πολλαχῇ, etc., viii. 186.

πλησίον, i. 109; viii. 524.

Distinguish between:—

ὅμως, ὁμοίως, iv. 37.

ποι, που, vii. 85.

Adverbs in -θεν, vi. 229; in -ξ, vi.
304, 354.

Particles.

ἀλλά, iii. 131; v. 217; vi. 258, 270;
vii. 300.

ἀλλὰ μὴν, vi. 258, 317.

ἀλλὰ . . . μὲν, viii. 367.

ἄν, with relative pron., i. 175.

— with past indic. } See forms of con-
— optative. } ditional sentence,
iv. 113.

— with infin., iv. 123; vii. 141.

ἀτάρ, v. 199.

γέ, vi. 246; viii. 372, 387.

δή, iii. 210; iv. 8, 263, 355; vii.
229; viii. 419.

ἦ μὴν, iii. 60.

καί, senses of, i. 21; iii. 32; iv. 84;
vii. 305; viii. 320.

— = 'or,' v. 223; vi. 71.

καὶ θάρ, vi. 285; vii. 135.

καί . . . δέ, iv. 217; v. 196.

καὶ δὴ, iii. 180; vi. 241.

καὶ μὴν, i. 300.

καὶ πῶς, v. 216.

μὲν . . . δέ, iv. 45; vii. 161, 190;
viii. 294.

μὲν δὴ, iv. 8.

μὲν οὖν, ii. 83; iii. 129; vi. 144;
viii. 346.

μέντοι, v. 207; vii. 19, 271; viii.
427.

οὖν, i. 6.

τε . . . καί, viii. 358.

Negatives.

μή, after verbs of hindering, etc., iv.
242; v. 310.

— with participle, v. 123.

μή versus οὐ, v. 202; vi. 91, 240;
viii. 121.

οὐδέ, vi. 265; vii. 145.

οὐ μὴν, viii. 420.

οὐκ-ἐθέλω, i. 127.

οὐ-φημι, iv. 278; vii. 141.

Multiplied negatives, i. 141; ii. 59.



ROUTE OF THE
TEN THOUSAND

English Miles

0 50 100 150 200

The March to Babylon and the subsequent Retreat
of the Ten Thousand are shewn thus

112 -

[illegible]

13920

Xenophon

Author

Easy Selections from

Title

Xenophon

Preliminary Part

Clarendon Press 1888

PA4494 A25

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME

APR-2 '41

John F. Cass/E

APR 13 '42

R. McNeill 39

MAY 22 '51

40

APR 23 1975

SHEREE S BRANDT
7134 MOHAWK DR
INDIANAPOLIS IN

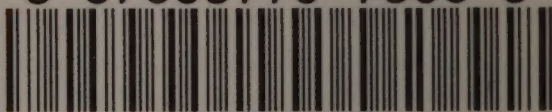
8 77

2051 Comm Ave

DATE DUE

BORROWER'S NAME

3 9031 01138948 3



BOSTON COLLEGE

13920

J. M. Blocker
 M. Quinn
 T. B. Wilson

BOSTON COLLEGE



3 9031 01138948 3

Driscoll Prov.

R. I.

A. Malone Brooklyn N. Y.

PA 4494. A 25

Xenophon

BOSTON COLLEGE LIBRARY

UNIVERSITY HEIGHTS

CHESTNUT HILL, MASS.

Books may be kept for two weeks and may be renewed for the same period, unless reserved.

Two cents a day is charged for each book kept overtime.

If you cannot find what you want, ask the Librarian who will be glad to help you.

The borrower is responsible for books drawn on his card and for all fines accruing on the same.



